TRADING TECHNOLOGIES

TT User Setup User Manual

VERSION 7.X

DOCUMENT VERSION 7.17.0.DV1 3/5/14

LEGAL

This document and all related computer programs, example programs, and all TT source code are the exclusive property of Trading Technologies International, Inc. (“TT”), and are protected by licensing agreements, copyright law and international treaties. Unauthorized possession, reproduction, duplication, or dissemination of this document, or any portion of it, is illegal and may result in severe civil and criminal penalties.

Unauthorized reproduction of any TT software or proprietary information may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.

Information in this document is subject to change without notice. Companies, names, and data used in examples herein are fictitious unless otherwise noted. No part of this document may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, for any purpose, without the express written permission of TT.

All trademarks displayed in this document are subject to the trademark rights of TT, or are used under agreement by TT. These trademarks include, but are not limited to, service brand names, slogans and logos and emblems including but not limited to: Trading Technologies®, the Trading Technologies Logo, TT™, X_TRADER®, X_RISK®, MD Trader®, Autospreader®, X_STUDY®, TT_TRADER®, TT CVD®, ADL®, Autotrader™, TT Trainer™, Back Office Bridge™, TTNET™. All other referenced companies, individuals and trademarks retain their rights. All trademarks are the property of their respective owners. The unauthorized use of any trademark displayed in this document is strictly prohibited.

Copyright © 2004-2014 Trading Technologies International, Inc.
All rights reserved.

User Administration: X_TRADER or X_RISK Users 69

Creating and Editing X_TRADER or X_RISK Users 69
Applying Basic User Properties 69
Applying X_TRADER Properties 72
Applying X_RISK Properties 73
Creating and Managing X_TRADER Customer Defaults 73
Configuring X_STUDY and FMDS 80
Creating a New Gateway Login through the Users Window 82
Generating a Gateway Login for all Gateways 83
Assigning Gateway Logins to a User Through the Users Window 83
Allowing or Blocking Product Groups 84

User Administration: Administrative Users 85

Creating and Editing Administrative Users 85
Creating a Super Administrator 85
Creating a Group Administrator 86
Creating a Gateway Login Administrator 88
Creating a Password Administrator 89
Creating a View Only User 91
Creating a Collect Log Files Only User 92
Configuring the Outgoing Email Settings 93

User Administration: FIX Adapter 95

TT FIX Adapter and TT User Setup Overview 95
Setting Up a TT FIX Adapter Server 96
Setting Up a FIX Adapter Client User 100
Setting Up an Account Default 104
Assigning TT FIX Adapter Client(s) to a FIX Adapter Server 110
Allowing or Blocking Product Groups for a FIX Adapter User 112

User Maintenance 113

How to Maintain Users 113
Resetting a User Password 113
Auto Generating and Emailing a User's Password 114
Unlocking Users 114
Forcing a User Logoff 115
Activating and Deactivating Users 116
Configuring and Running Diagnostic Checks 116
Allowing or Blocking Product Groups for Specific Markets 119
Updating the Supported Product Groups List 120

Gateway Login Administration Basics 121

Gateway Logins Overview 121
Assign to Available Users Window Field Descriptions 121
Available Users list 121
Selected Users list 121
Login Attributes 121

Gateway Login Window Field Descriptions . . . 123
Customizing the Gateway Logins Window . . . 131

Creating Gateway Logins . . . 135

Creating a New Gateway Login . . . 135
Assigning the MemberGroupTrader ID . . . 135
Disabling Start-of-Day Records . . . 136
Assigning Gateways to Gateway Logins . . . 137
Mapping a TTORD to an Exchange Trader . . . 138
Adding Gateways to Existing TTORDs . . . 140
Assigning Accounts . . . 141
Configuring Risk . . . 143
Assigning Users to a Gateway Login . . . 144
Editing a User's Gateway Login Attributes . . . 146
Assigning Gateways to Multiple Gateway Logins . . . 150

Account Administration . . . 153

Account Administration Overview . . . 153
Creating Accounts . . . 154
Assigning One or More Accounts to an Account Group . . . 156

Account Group Administration . . . 159

Account Group Administration Overview . . . 159
Creating Account Groups . . . 160
Assigning Accounts to an Account Group . . . 162

Gateway Login Risk Administration . . . 165

Risk and Administration Overview . . . 165
Gateway Login Level Risk . . . 165
Account and Account Group Level Risk . . . 165
User Level Risk . . . 165
Product Limits Overview . . . 166
Configuring Gateway Login Risk . . . 166
Creating Product Limits for Gateway Logins . . . 168
Copying Product Limits to Additional Gateways or Gateway Logins . . . 172

Account and Account Group Risk Administration . . . 175

Adding Account-Level Risk Checking . . . 175
Adding Account Group-Level Risk Checking . . . 176
Creating Product Limits for Accounts and Account Groups . . . 176
Creating Margin Limits for Accounts and Account Groups . . . 180
Copying Product Limits to Additional Accounts or Account Groups . . . 181
Copying Account-Based Product Limits to Additional Gateways . . . 182

User Level Risk Checking . . . 185

Adding User-Level Risk Checking . . . 185
Setting Pre-Trade Price Controls . . . 187

Price Controls Overview . . . 187
Price Checking Overview . . . 188
Example: Static Price Range Control . . . 188
Example: Directional Price Range Control . . . 189
Enabling and Setting the Pre-trade Price Controls . . . 190
Setting Order Throughput Controls . . . 191
Order Throughput Controls Overview . . . 191
Order Rejection Overview . . . 192
Example: Order Throughput Control . . . 192
Enabling and Setting the Order Throughput Controls . . . 193
Overriding the Order Throughput Controls . . . 194

User Group Administration . . . 195

User Group Administration Overview . . . 195
Creating User Groups . . . 195
Creating User Groups for Order Passing . . . 197
Assigning Users to a User Group . . . 199
Assigning User Groups to Gateway Logins . . . 200
Assigning User Groups to a Gateway Login . . . 201
Assigning Gateway Logins to a User Group . . . 202
Assigning User Groups to an Account . . . 203

Publishing to Guardian . . . 205

Publishing to Guardian . . . 205
Displaying Detailed Differences . . . 206
Understanding Publish Warnings . . . 208

Server Administration . . . 209

Collecting Log Files . . . 209
Using Version Control Rules . . . 210
Resetting the Guardian Exchange Tree . . . 212
Editing the Currency Exchange Rates . . . 212
Adding and Deleting Currencies . . . 214
Editing Product Margins . . . 215
Viewing and Clearing Product Margin Conflicts . . . 217
Viewing and Publishing Licenses . . . 219
Viewing Licenses . . . 219
Loading and Publishing Licenses . . . 221
Migrating Users to a New Gateway . . . 222
Understanding Server Messages . . . 225
System Settings . . . 226
Introducing System Settings . . . 226
Configuring Concurrent Login Rules . . . 227
Configuring Password Locking Rules . . . 228
Customizing the Failed Login Attempt Message . . . 229
Configuring Password Rules . . . 230
Automatic Diagnostics . . . 232

Enabling and Configuring X_STUDY and FMDS System Settings 233

Reports 237

Displaying and Exporting Reports. 237
Displaying a Report 238
Exporting a Report as HTML or CSV 238
Tracking the TT Product Version Number 239
Using Audit Trail to Track Database Updates. 241
Displaying Logged in Users 243
Viewing Server Messages 246
Displaying Running Servers 247
Viewing Server Status 248
Generating an ICE Product Groups Report 248

Tutorials 251

How to Setup a New User Who Will Trade Using a TTORD Gateway Login. 251
How to Map an Additional Gateway Login to an Existing TTORD User 260
How to Set Up an Administrator Who Uses Both X_RISK and TT User Setup. 263
How to Set Up a Third-party Risk Administrator 267
Creating the Gateway Login Group 268
Creating the Third-party Gateway Login Administrator 268
Assigning Users to the Third-party Gateway Logins 269
How to Create a New User by Copying an Existing User. 269
How to Assign Existing Product Limits to Other Gateway Login IDs Simultaneously 274
How to Change Multiple Product Limit Values Simultaneously 276
How to Set Up Customer Defaults 277
How to Update Customer Defaults Across Multiple Users Simultaneously. 281
How to Review Changes Prior to Publishing to Guardian 285
How to Change the Message Users Receive When Their Logins Fail 288
How to Use Wildcard Characters in Filters. 290
How to Set Up a Tiered Administrator 291
How to Set Up a Drop Copy TT FIX Adapter Server and Corresponding FIX Adapter Clients . 296
Creating TT FIX Adapter Servers 297
Creating TT FIX Adapter Client Users 301
How to Set Up an Order Routing TT FIX Adapter Server and Corresponding FIX Adapter Clients 308
Creating TT FIX Adapter Servers 308
Creating TT FIX Adapter Client users 312
How to Set up a User for Autospreader SE or Synthetic SE. 319
Creating TT SIM Credit Limits and Product Limits 322
Allowing a User to Log onto X_TRADER using TT SIM mode 322
Configuring TT SIM Credit Limits 323
Configuring TT SIM Product Limits 324

Appendix 327

Field Descriptions 327

Context Menus 344
Users Window 344
Gateway Logins Window 345
Product Limits Window 346
X_TRADER Customer Defaults Window 347
Product Group Permissions Window 348
User's Gateway Login Attributes Window 349
Accounts Window 349
User Groups Window 350
FIX Adapter Account Defaults 351
Unlock Users/Reset Passwords Window 352
Audit Trail, Environment Server Status, Reports, TT User Setup Servers, and View Connected Clients Windows 353
Shortcut Keys 353
File Menu 353
User Admin Menu 354
Server Admin Menu 354
Reports Menu 355
Help Menu 355
TT User Setup Feature and TT Product Compatibility 356

Getting Started

What's New in TT User Setup 7.X

7.4.40 Enhancements

This release adds support for the Order Passing feature, which allows members of one user group to pass one or more orders to members of another user group. For more information about Order Passing in X_TRADER, refer to the X_TRADER Help. For information about configuring user groups to pass orders, refer to the User Group Administration topic.

Also, this release supports TT Update, which provides software updates to supported TT applications (currently X_TRADER® 7.17.10, X_RISK® 7.17.10, TT User Setup 7.4.40, and TT User Setup 7.17.20 and higher). This eliminates the need for customers to repackage client software when new versions of the supported applications are released.

Once end users have installed TT Update on their X_TRADER or X_RISK workstations, TT User Setup administrators can create version rules that determine which TT software updates are available to their users. Once TT User Setup administrators have installed TT Update on their TT User Setup client workstations, TT Update also automatically updates TT User Setup clients to a version that matches the TT User Setup server. For more information about TT Update, refer to the TT Update Help in the online Help Library. For information about setting Version Rules, refer to “Using Version Control Rules”.

7.4.12 Enhancements

This release adds the ability to override the user-level Orders per second limit (which applies to all gateways) with settings that can be configured for individual gateways. To override the user-level **Per TT Gateway, prevent more than X orders per second** setting, open the Users' Gateway Login Attributes window, edit a Gateway Login attribute, and set **Prevent more than X orders per second** to a value that applies to this gateway. This value overrides the user-level setting.

You can also set this override from the User's **Gateway Login** tab and when assigning a gateway to a user. For more details, refer to “Editing a User's Gateway Login Attributes”, and “Assigning Users to a Gateway Login”.

7.4.11 Enhancements

This release introduces additional price reasonability controls that allow a TT User Setup administrator to restrict how far off the market an order can be placed. This is configurable per product and at an account or account group level.

7.4.9 Enhancements

As of TT User Setup 7.4.9, the **Manual Fill (MF) access allowed** and **Start of Day (SOD) access allowed** options are a single option called **Manual Fill (MF) and Start of Day (SOD) access allowed**.

When upgrading to TT User Setup 7.4.9 or later, TT User Setup automatically checks the new combined option for any users that had either of the old options checked.

7.4.8 Enhancements

- **Account Groups**: TT User Setup administrators can now place multiple account numbers into a single account group for the purpose of risk checking. TT Gateways check new orders against any configured limits for the account group, based on the combined positions and working orders of each account in the group. For more information about account groups, refer to the "Account Administration Overview" topic.
- **Account-Based and Account Group-Based Risk Checking**: Administrators can now configure risk limits for a particular account or place multiple account numbers into a single account group and configure risk checking for the group as a whole. This includes controlling the maximum order size of a single order, the worst-case maximum long or short positions that can be attained per product and/or contract, and the worst-case sum of all long and short contracts per product. Per account or account group, administrators can also define margin limits that apply to individual TT Gateways.

  When a client submits an order that includes an account, the TT Gateway checks the order against the limits of the account. If the account belongs to an account group, the TT Gateway risk checks based on the combined positions and working orders of all the accounts in the group.

  Additionally, per account or account group, administrators can:

  - Enable or disable risk checking.
  - Enable or disable trading per product.

  For more information refer to the "Adding Account-Level Risk Checking" and "Adding Account Group-Level Risk Checking" topics.

  Note: No account or account group risk checking will take place until risk checking is enabled and the gateways have been upgraded to 7.16.8. This will allow administrators to configure new limits without impacting their current setups.

- **Preventing the Use of Undefined Accounts**: Administrators can determine whether or not to allow an order to be submitted with an account number that is not defined in TT User Setup. For more information refer to the "Applying Basic User Properties" topic.
- **Allowing Traders to Change Accounts on Fills**: Administrators can determine whether or not to allow traders to update the account number on a fill. For more information refer to the "Applying Basic User Properties" topic.
- **Disabling Start-of-Day Records**: Per Gateway Login (MGT), you can configure whether a Gateway should automatically generate Start-of-Day records. When the **Disable "Auto-Calculate-SOD"** option is checked, gateways will not generate Start-of-Day records for the configured Gateway Login. For more information refer to the "Disabling Start-of-Day Records" topic.
- **Specifying the Accounts Allowed for Manual Fill and Start-of-Day Publishing**: If a TT User Setup administrator has given a user the ability to publish manual fills or SODs, the administrator can allow the user to publish SOD records and/or Manual Fills for any account number, or the administrator can limit the user to specific accounts. For more information refer to the "Applying X_RISK Properties" topic.

7.4.7 Enhancements

Operator ID: The new **Operator ID** field is used to identify the trader or operator to the exchange. The field is accessible from a user's Gateway Login tab (as a column in the Gateway Login table), when assigning a Gateway Login to a user (refer to the "Assigning Users to a Gateway Login" topic), and from the **User's Gateway Login Attributes** window (refer to the "Editing a User's Gateway Login Attributes" topic).

Note: You can assign the same Operator ID to multiple users from the **User's Gateway Login Attributes** window or the **Assign to users** window.

7.4.6 Enhancements

- **Price controls**: TT User Setup allows you to restrict the price band in which orders can be entered for a given user to a pre-determined number of ticks above or below the current market price. For more information, refer to the "Setting Pre-Trade Price Controls" topic.
- **Order throughput controls**: TT User Setup allows you to limit the rate at which orders can be submitted. For more information, refer to the "Setting Order Throughput Controls" topic.
- **GTC/GTDate order controls**: TT User Setup allows you to prevent GTC and GTDate orders per user. For more information, refer to the "Applying Basic User Properties" topic.

7.4.5 Enhancements

There are no new user features in this release.

7.4.4/7.4.3 Enhancements

- **Machine Gun Order Support**: TT User Setup allows you to enable or disable the X_TRADER **Machine Gun** option (for versions of X_TRADER that support the **Machine Gun** option). For more information, refer to the "New User and Edit User Window Fields" topic.
- **Eurex Persist Order Support**: TT User Setup allows you to configure whether Eurex orders sent from X_TRADER automatically persist (supported in X_TRADER 7.12 and later). For more information, refer to the **X_TRADER Properties** section of the "New User and Edit User Window Fields" topic.

7.4.2 Enhancements

- **TT SIM Support**: TT User Setup supports TT SIM mode trading using existing gateway logins and user profiles. If needed, you can also configure credit limits and product limits that apply only to TT SIM trades, and you can configure a user to only trade in TT SIM mode. For more information, refer to the "Creating TT SIM Credit Limits and Product Limits" topic.
- **Copying User Enhancements**: TT User Setup now provides additional options when copying users, including copying admin gateway logins, customer defaults, and account defaults. The Copy User feature continues to support copying direct trader gateway logins as well as copying TTORD gateway logins. For more information, refer to the "Copying Users" topic.
- **Replacing Account Numbers in Customer Default Records**: You can replace one or more customer default account numbers with similar account numbers based on selected pattern-matching rules. For example, you can append or prefix the existing account numbers with addi-

tional characters, or replace the first or last n characters with other characters. This is useful for making slight modifications to many accounts at once, for example, if multiple users have similar account numbers that only differ slightly because of the current restriction that TTORDs must be assigned unique accounts. For more information, refer to the "Creating and Managing X_TRADER Customer Defaults" topic.

- **Collect Log Files Only Permissions**: TT User Setup includes a new permission type, **Collect Log Files Only**. A user with this permission type will be able to collect any log files in the trading environment, including log files containing sensitive trading information. This user cannot view or edit any user or system settings. For more information, refer to the "Creating a Collect Log Files Only User" topic.
- **Add and Delete Currencies**: Super administrators can now set the primary currency and add and delete currencies from within TT User Setup. The administrator publishes any changes to Guardian. For more information refer to the "Adding and Deleting Currencies" topic.
- **Viewing and Publishing Licenses**: Super administrators can now view, load, and publish licenses from within TT User Setup. Previously this functionality was only available from Guardian. For more information refer to the "Viewing and Publishing Licenses" topic.
- **Editing Product Margins**: Super administrators can edit the product margins, per market, from within TT User Setup. This functionality was previously only available in Guardian. For more information refer to the "Editing Product Margins" and "Viewing and Clearing Product Margin Conflicts" topics.
- **Viewing Logged in Users**: The logged in users report has been expanded to display a list of logged in users based on gateway connection, product license, and product license per number of markets. Viewing the logged in users report allows you to determine how your licenses are currently being used and how many licenses you have available. For more information refer to the "Displaying Logged in Users" topic.
- **Migrating Users to a New Gateway**: TT User Setup now includes a tool to migrate users from one gateway to another. This is useful when you are adding another flavor of a gateway to your environment (i.e. adding a CME-B Gateway as a backup in an environment that contains a CME-A Gateway), or if a gateway is rebranded (i.e. migrating users that connect to a CBOT-A Gateway to a CME-A Gateway). For more information refer to the "Migrating Users to a New Gateway" topic.
- **Collect Log Files**: When collecting Log files you can now select the IP address from a list of usernames. For more information refer to the "Collecting Log Files" topic.

7.4.1 Enhancements

- **Adding gateways to multiple gateway logins**: Added a **Mass Add Gateways** button to the **Gateway Logins** window. This allows you to add gateways to multiple gateway logins at once. For more information, refer to the "Assigning Gateways to Multiple Gateway Logins" topic.
- **Copying multiple product limits to a gateway**: Added a **Mass Copy to Other Gateway** button to the Product Limits window. This allows you copy any selected product limits from one gateway to another. For more information, refer to the "Copying Product Limits to Additional Gateways or Gateway Logins" topic.
- **Using the P&L risk algorithm**: Added the **Use P&L risk algorithm** option to the **User** window's Risk Check section. If **Use P&L risk algorithm** is checked, the P&L risk algorithm is used for risk checking, and the **P/L based on** setting in X_TRADER defaults to *Risk Algorithm*. If **Use P&L risk algorithm** is unchecked, the Last Traded Price is used for risk checking. For more information, refer to the "Adding User-Level Risk Checking" topic.

- **Resetting the Guardian exchange tree**: Added the **Reset Guardian Exchange Tree** feature to the **Server Admin** menu. This feature removes any exchanges and IP addresses where there are no running services, for all Guardians in the environment. It is identical to the **Reset Exchange Tree** feature on the Guardian **Tools** menu. For more information, refer to the "Resetting the Guardian Exchange Tree" topic.
- **Editing currency exchange rates**: Added the **Edit Currency Exchange Rates** feature to the **Server Admin** menu. This feature allows you to edit the exchange rates listed in Guardian. These exchange rates are used in P&L and risk calculations in TT client applications, such as X_TRADER. For more information, refer to the "Editing the Currency Exchange Rates" topic.
- **Creating a gateway login that automatically applies to all gateways**: Added the **Generate Admin Gateway Logins for all gateways** option to the **User** window's **Gateway Logins** tab. Checking this option allows you to create a gateway login that can log into all available gateways. This is especially useful if setting up a Universal Login for Historical Fill Servers, for example, so that fills are always captured for all gateways. For more information, refer to the "Generating a Gateway Login for all Gateways" topic.
- **Configuring Product Group Permissions for CME**: Added product filtering for CME product groups. CME product groups automatically appear on the **Product Group Permissions** tab and are allowed by default. For more information, refer to the "Allowing or Blocking Product Groups" topic.

7.4 Enhancements

- **Product Group Permissions:** Added **Product Group Permissions** settings that administrators use to allow or block user access to product groups in supported markets (also referred to as Product Filtering). For example, an administrator can allow a trader to trade and access market data for ICE US Futures, but prevent a trader from trading or accessing market data for OTC GAS products. For more information, refer to the "Allowing or Blocking Product Groups" topic.

  Note: The following TT software versions (and later) support Product Group Permissions: FIX Adapter 7.6.1, X_TRADER 7.9.0, X_RISK 7.5, X_TRADER API 7.7.0, TT API 7.2.0, and ICE Gateway 7.14.1.

- **ICE Compliance Reports**: Added the **ICE Compliance report** to the **Reports** menu (renamed to **Ice Product Group Report** in 7.4.1). The report lists users with ICE credentials (exchange trader MGTs), users with blocked ICE product groups, ICE live Gateways, ICE Gateway connections, and the versions of recently used TT products. Administrators generate and send the report to ICE to show that only the allowed users can access market data for the specified product groups. For more information, refer to the "Generating an ICE Product Groups Report" topic.
- **TT API allowed:** Added the **TT API allowed** option to the user settings. Check this option to give the user permission to access the TT API. **TT API allowed** is unchecked by default and is only applicable to TTNET customers.
- **Staged order and DMA order permissions**: Added staged order and Direct Market Access (DMA) order settings for **X_TRADER** and FIX Adapter client users. Administrators can allow or prevent staged order creation, staged order management, and DMA order creation. Staged order and DMA order permissions are compatible with X_TRADER 7.9, FIX Adapter 7.7, and Synthetic SE 7.2. For more information refer to the "New User and Edit User Window Fields" and FIX Adapter (client role) tab descriptions in the "New User and Edit User Window Fields" topic.

- **Server Messages window enhancement**: Added a **Show only Warnings and Errors** checkbox to the **Server Messages** window. Check this option to display only warnings and errors in the **Server Messages** window. for this TT User Setup Client. For more information refer to the "Understanding Server Messages" topic.

7.3 Enhancements

- **Tiered administration enhancement:** Added two TT User Setup user types: a View Only Administrator (has read only privileges) and a Gateway Login Administrator (can manage gateway logins and risk, but who cannot create users).
- **Diagnostic checks tool:** Added an option to run diagnostic checks that list potential setup issues.
- **Copying Users:** Added the ability to copy a user's TTORD IDs and non-TTORD IDs when copying a user.
- **Forced logoff:** Added functionality that allows an administrator to shut down a user's running **X_TRADER** application to reclaim the **X_TRADER** license.
- **User-Level Risk:** Added risk functionality to the user properties **Main** tab that allows an administrator to determine whether a user can log in and actively trade, how much credit is available for placing orders, and in what currency any filled orders will be calculated. This enhancement is especially helpful for users who are assigned to multiple Direct Trader Logins as it allows an administrator to set one limit for the user, as opposed to several.
- **FIX Adapter Server and Client users:** Added the ability to configure TT FIX Adapter servers and corresponding FIX client users. The **New User** and **Edit User** windows contain new FIX Adapter tabs, and the **User Admin** menu contains a new **FIX Adapter Account Defaults** menu item.
- **Views:** Added a **View** or **New User View** drop-down-list to the **Users**, **New User**, and **Edit User** windows that allows an administrator to show only the tabs that are applicable to the type of user being created. For example, when creating a FIX Adapter server user, the administrator selects the **FIX Adapter Server View** to show only FIX Adapter server tabs.
- **X_STUDY/FMDS configuration enhancement**: Added a tab to the **System Settings** window that allows an administrator to enable or disable X_STUDY and FMDS at a system level, and to configure the primary and secondary X_STUDY/FMDS server settings for the entire system. When **X_STUDY** and FMDS are enabled at the system level, the administrator can enable or disable **X_STUDY** and FMDS on a per user basis, and can also override the FMDS server settings if needed.

If you have questions, suggestions, or other information to share about features and functionality, please visit the TT™ online user forum at http://forums.tradingtechnologies.com.

Introduction to TT User Setup

TT User Setup serves as the central location for managing all TT Users, their gateway login information, their risk, and more.

User Administration

Administrators create new usernames and passwords and configure various contact information, user login properties, X_RISK permissions, **X_TRADER** customer defaults, product limits, and product group permissions. Administrators also assign usernames to gateway logins as needed. Users then log into TT applications with this username.

Gateway Login Administration

Gateway logins consist of Member, Group, and Trader IDs (MGTs) and the corresponding gateways. These MGTs can be used to log into a gateway/exchange.

Administrators assign usernames created in TT User Setup to gateway logins (MGTs and associated gateways). Users log into TT applications (such as **X_TRADER**) with the unique username and password created by the Administrator.

Risk administration allows you to set limits on maximum order quantity, additional margin, maximum position, etc., as well as establish parameters for credit, ignoring P&L, allowing trading, currency, etc.

Account/Account Group Administration

Administrators create accounts, which they can assign to an account group. Per account or account group, administrators can determine which products are tradable, specify various limits on maximum order size and position per product, and configure additional margin per product.

Tiered Administration

TT User Setup supports several levels of Administrator permissions:

- **Super Administrator:** Provides complete access to TT User Setup functionality.
- **Group Administrator:** Provides permission to view, edit, and create users, gateway logins, and accounts that exist in one of the user groups the administrator is designated to manage. Also provides the option to prevent a group administrator from creating or editing direct trader gateway logins, as well as from assigning those logins directly to traders.
- **Gateway Login Administrator:** Provides permission to assign gateway logins and gateway login attributes to users in the user groups the administrator is designated to manage.
- **Password Administrator:** Provides permission to unlock users and reset passwords for some user groups or all user groups.
- **View Only:** Provides permission to view users, gateway logins, and accounts that exist in one of the user groups the administrator is designated to view. View-only Administrators can also view system settings, and relevant diagnostic checks.
- **Collect Log Files Only**: Provides permission to collect any log files in the trading environment, including log files containing sensitive trading information. This user cannot view or edit any user or system settings.

Server Administration

From the **System Settings** window, administrators can configure the login rules, set password rules and restrictions, set the default behavior for newly added product groups, configure automatic diagnostics, and enable and configure FMDS for the system.

From the **Version Rules** window, administrators can create and manage rules that reject logins or warn users when the users is attempting to connect to TT User Setup with a specific version of **X_TRADER** or **X_RISK**

Administrators can also **Collect Log Files** from other machines on their gateway, reset the Guardian exchange tree, and edit currency tables.

FIX Adapter Administration

Administrators can create TT FIX Adapter Order Routing Servers, FIX Adapter Drop Copy Servers, and their corresponding FIX Adapter client users. Administrators also assign FIX Adapter servers and clients login information, contact information, gateway logins, and FIX Adapter account defaults.

Reports

Administrators can view the list of users that are connected in an environment, an audit trail of the changes to the database, and various additional reports that list user and system information. These reports can all be exported to CSV or HTML.

Users (either logged in or not) can also monitor Server activity and status using the **Server Messages**, **TT User Setup Servers** and **Environment Server Status** windows, which provide updates on login attempts, server up/downs, error conditions, active servers in your environment, etc.

Logging Into TT User Setup

Use the **TT Login** window to log into TT User Setup. To log in successfully, a TT User Setup Server must be running as a Master server. For a detailed description on the role of a Master server, refer to the **TT User Setup System Administration Manual**

Note: Without logging in, you can still access TT User Setup's **Server Messages**, **TT User Setup Servers**, and **Environment Server Status** windows.

To log into TT User Setup:

1. On your desktop, double-click the TT User Setup icon.

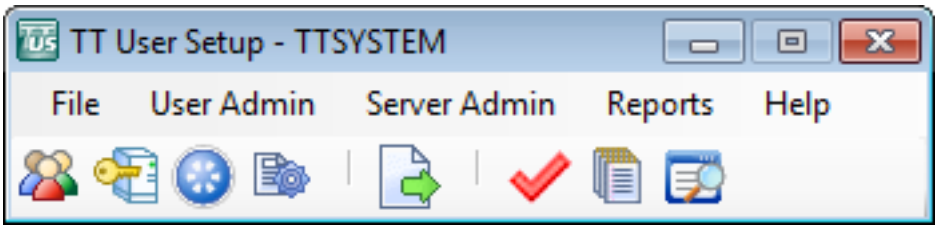
   The **TT Login** window appears.

2. In the **Username** and **Password** fields, enter a valid username and password.

   Note: For first-time logins, the default username is **TTSYSTEM** and the default password is **12345678**. TT Recommends that you change this password by clicking **Change Password**.

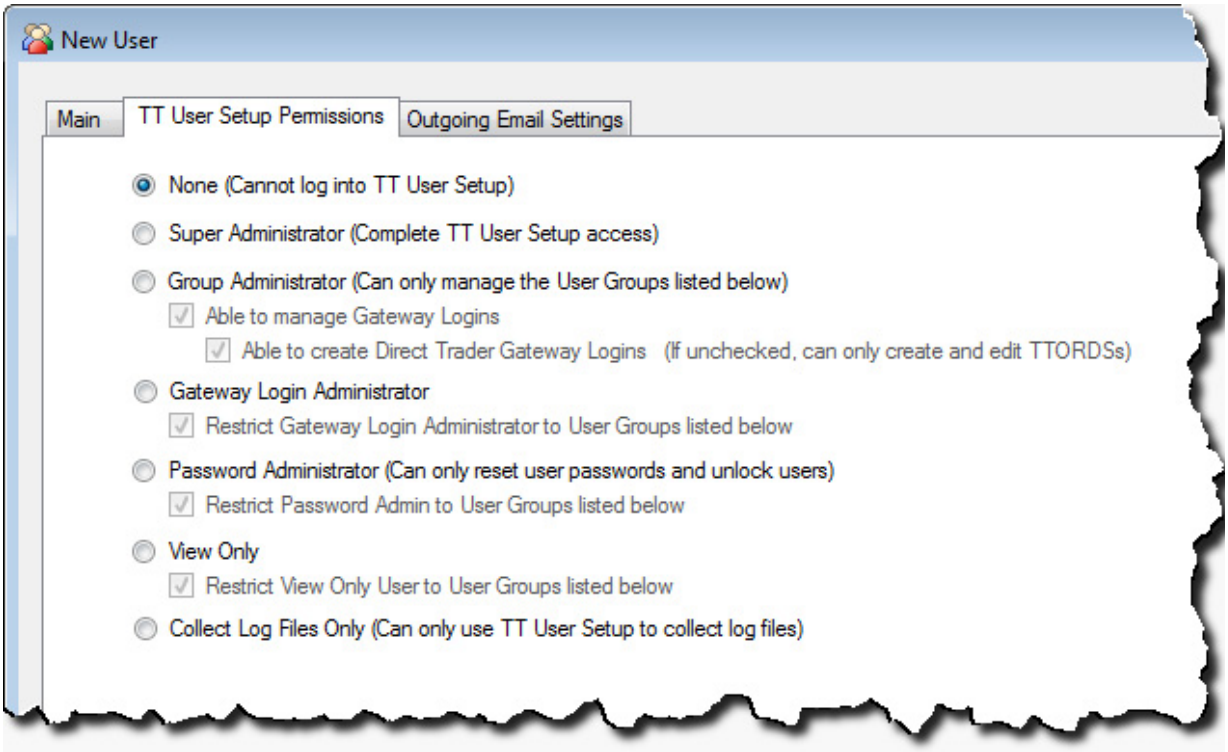
3. To populate the **Username** field automatically the next time you log in, check the **Remember my Username** option.
4. Click **Login**.

   If the login is successful, the TT User Setup Control Panel appears.



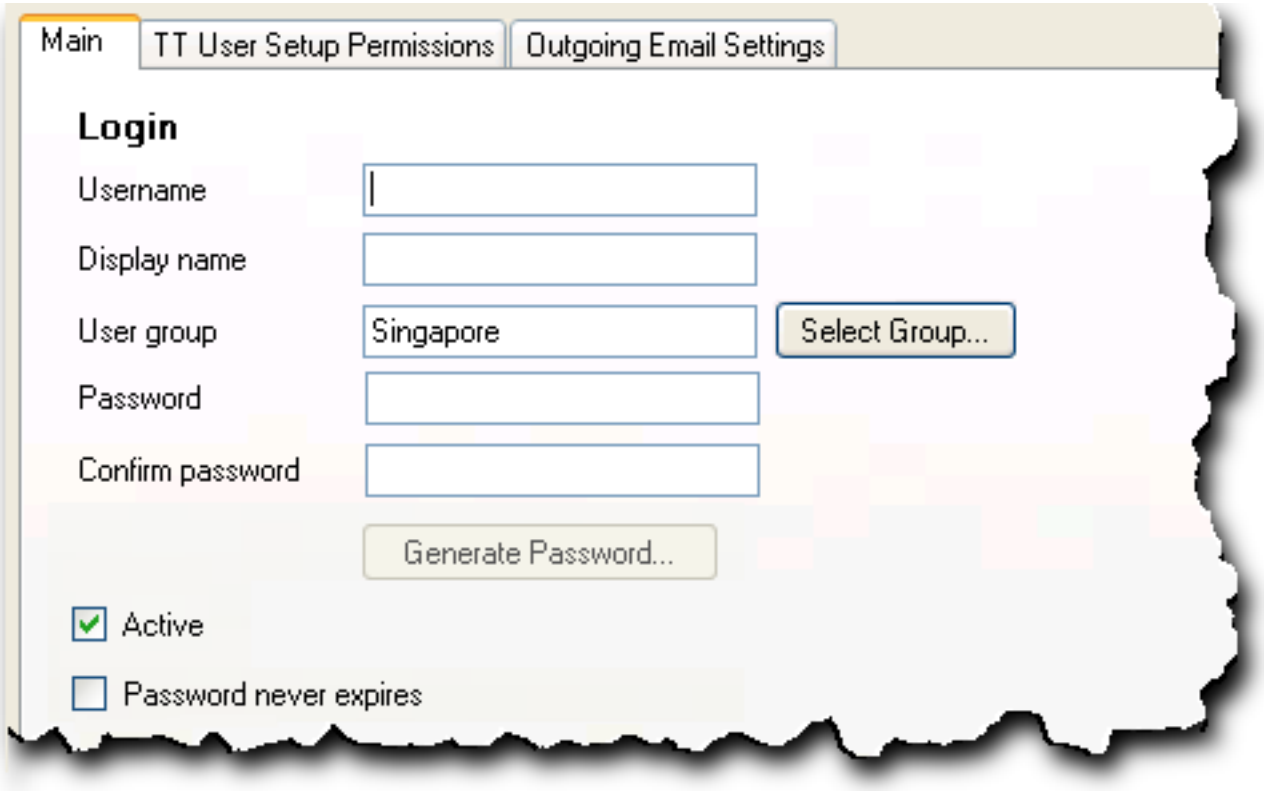
Additional Login Requirements

Before an administrator can log into TT User Setup, another administrator must grant them the appropriate TT User Setup permissions from the **New User** or **Edit User** window, as seen below.



Warning: Ensure that **None** is selected for users that are not allowed to log into TT User Setup.

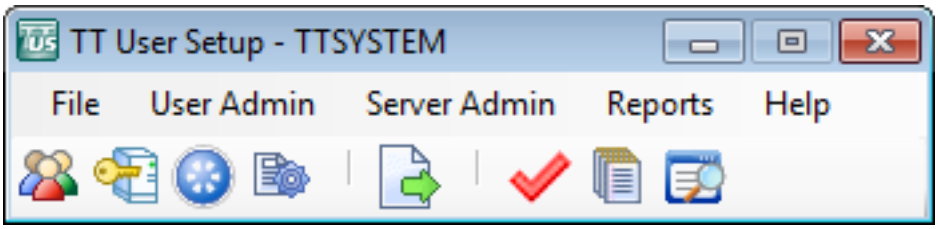
Additionally, only users with the **Active** option checked can log onto TT User Setup.



▶ To log out of TT User Setup without automatically closing the application:

From the TT User Setup Control Panel, open the **File** menu and select **Logout**.

Using the Control Panel



The TT User Setup **Control Panel** includes a **Toolbar** and a **Menu** bar.

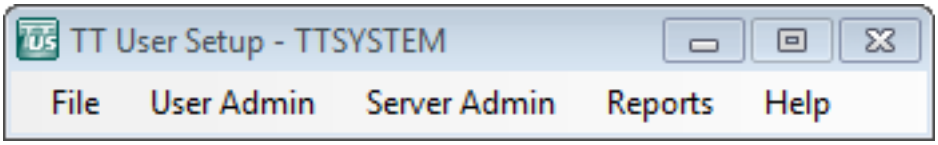
Note: Use the **Find Control Panel** option (available on most right-click menus) to bring the control panel into focus. This is useful when other screens have overlapped the control panel.

Use the **Toolbar** to access the various TT User Setup windows. The buttons that appear on the **Toolbar** are as follows:

Button	Function
	Opens the **Users** window, which allows you to set up new users and their login properties, contact, and password information.
	Opens the **Gateway Logins** window and allows you to configure a gateway login. A gateway login includes Member, Group, and Trader IDs, account numbers, and pre-trade risk parameters which traders use to log into gateways. **Note:** The **Gateway Logins** window in TT User Setup 7.1 - 7.4 is very similar to the **Trader Setup** window in Guardian. Even if you do not set up users for universal login, you can still manage your Guardian trader and risk setup from this window.
	Opens the **Product Limits**window, which allows you to view and edit all product limits across all traders.
	Opens the **X_TRADER Customer Defaults** window, which allows you to view and edit customer defaults used in **X_TRADER**.

Button	Function
	Opens the **Publish to Guardian** window, which allows you to publish risk data and order routing to Guardian.
	Note: The publish icon changes from a gray and green icon to a yellow and green icon when TT User Setup and Guardian are out-of-sync. This occurs when a change is made to TT User Setup or Guardian, but not both. You must publish the changes to bring TT User Setup and Guardian back in synch.
	Note: If **DisableProductLimitPublishing-Mode** is on, then only order routing data is published to Guardian (refer to the *TT User Setup System Administration Manual* for more information about the **DisableProductLimit-PublishingMode** parameter).
	Opens the **Diagnostic Checks** window, which lists potential set up issues.
	Opens the **Reports** window, from which you can run various user and system reports.
	Opens the **Audit Trail** window, which tracks updates made to the database.

Using the Menu Options



Use the **Menu** bar to access various TT User Setup functions and windows.

Note: TT User Setup permits only one primary window to be open at any given time. For example, if you have a **Users** window open and you want to access the **Gateway Logins** window, you must first close the **Users** window. TT User Setup disables certain **Control Panel** and **Menu** options when a primary window is open.

Note: Use the **Find Control Panel** option (available on most right-click menus)to bring the control panel into focus. This is useful when other screens have overlapped the control panel.

The following is a list of menu options:

- Use the **File** menu to access login and logout features.

  The options available from the **File** menu include:

Option	Function
Login	Opens the **TT Login** window.
Logout	Logs you out of TT User Setup without closing the application. The Login, Server Messages, and Server Status options remain available.
Publish to Guardian	Opens the **Publish to Guardian** window, from which you can publish risk and order routing data to Guardian. **Note:** If **DisableProductLimitPublishingMode** is on, then only order routing data is published to Guardian (refer to the TT User Setup System Administration Manual for more information about the **DisableProductLimitPublishingMode** parameter).
Exit	Closes the TT User Setup client.

- Use the **User Admin** menu to perform user and gateway login setup functions.

  The options available from the **User Admin** menu include:

Option	Function
Users	Opens the **Users** window, which allows you to create and manage users.
Gateway Logins	Opens the **Gateway Logins** window, which allows you to manage and create gateway logins. Gateway logins are the *Member-GroupTrader* IDs used to log into TT Gateways. Each gateway login can have different account numbers and risk limits. For a more complete list of gateway login functionality, refer to the topics in the **Gateway Logins** section of this Help system.
Accounts	Opens the **Accounts** window, which allows you to create and edit account numbers, assign accounts to an account group, and to edit account groups. Once you create an account, you can configure account-based risk.
Product Limits	Opens the **Product Limits** window, which allows you to view and edit all product limits across all traders.
X_TRADER Customer Defaults	Opens the **Customer Defaults** window, which allows you to configure customer defaults for **X_TRADER** users. Customer defaults determine order parameters, such as account number, that are to be applied to a trader's order.
Product Group Permissions	Opens the **Product Group Permissions** window, which allows you to allow or block user access to individual product groups in supported markets.
Users' Gateway Login Attributes	Opens the **Users' Gateway Login Attributes** window, which allows you to edit specific login attributes such as **Auto Login** and **Available to User** across all users.

Option	Function
User Groups	Opens the **User Groups** window, which allows you to create and edit user groups. You can configure TT User Setup Administrators to manage one, multiple, or all user groups.
Account Groups	Opens the **Account Groups** window, which allows you to create and edit account groups. Once you create an account group you can assign accounts to the group and configure account-group based risk.
FIX Adapter Account Defaults	Opens the **Account Default List** window, which allows you to create order values used by TT FIX Adapter when sending orders.
Unlock Users/Reset Passwords	Opens the **Unlock Users/Reset Passwords** window, which allows you to unlock any locked out users, as well as reset their passwords.
Diagnostic Checks	Opens the **Diagnostic Checks** window, which lists potential set up issues based on the information available in the TT User Setup database.

- Use the **Server Admin** menu to configure the system settings, manage version rules, and collect log files.

  The options available from the **Server Admin** menu include:

Option	Function
System Settings	Opens the **System Settings** window, which allows you to enable and set specific password rules and login properties, enable and disable automatic diagnostic checks, and configure the X_STUDY/FMDS settings.
Version Rules	Opens the **Version Rules** window, which allows you to create rules that allow or prevent users from logging in with specified versions of **X_TRADER** or X_RISK.
Collect Log Files	Opens the **Collect Log Files** window, which allows an administrator to collect remote log files.

Option	Function
Reset Exchange Tree	Resets the Guardian exchange tree for all Guardians in the environment. This removes any exchanges and IP addresses where there are no running services.
Currency Exchange Rates	Opens the **Currency Exchange Rates** window, which allows you to edit the exchange rates listed in Guardian. These exchange rates are used in P&L and risk calculations. **Note**: If you use TT User Setup to edit the currency exchange rates, do not edit currency rates with Guardian.
Add/Remove Currencies	Opens the **Currencies** window, which allows you to add currencies, delete currencies, and to set the primary currency.
Product Margins	Opens the **Product Margins** window, which allows you to edit product margins for available products and publish the changes to Guardian.
License Setup	Opens the **License Setup** window, which allows you to view the current environment license file, view other LMT files, and to publish the license to Guardian.
Migrate Users to New Gateway	Opens the **Migrate Users to New Gateway** window that allows you to migrate users to a new gateway, based on how they are configured for a current gateway. You can select whether or not to copy the source gateway's Gateway Login, FIX client, and automatic and mandatory login settings.

- Use the **Reports** menu to access user and server reports.

  The options available from the **Reports** menu include:

Options	Function
Logged in Users	Opens **Logged in Users** window, which allows you to view all users currently logged in and connected to TT servers.
Audit Trail	Opens the **Audit Trail** window, which tracks updates made to the data in TT User Setup.
Run Reports	Opens the **Reports** window, from which you can generate various reports that display user and system information.
Server Messages	Opens the **Server Messages** window, which allows you to monitor all TT User Setup server activity.
TT User Setup Servers	Opens the **TT User Setup Servers** window, which allows you monitor the status of each TT User Setup Server.
Environment Server Status	Opens the **Environment Server Status** window, which shows whether the servers in your environment are active.
ICE Product Groups Report	Creates an ICE Product Groups report that ICE uses to verify that only the allowed users can access market data for the specified product groups.

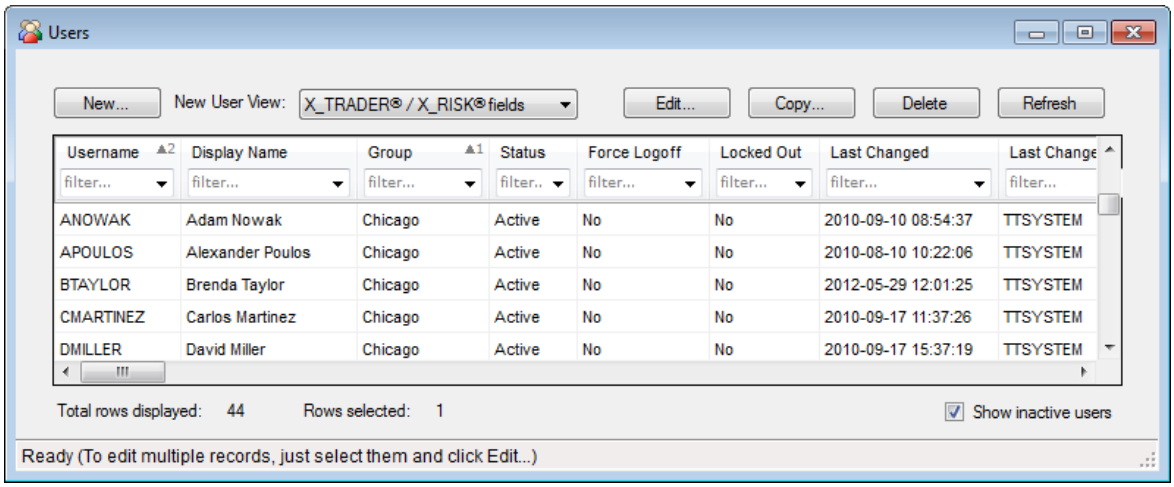
- Use the **Help** menu to access the Help System and version information.

  The options available from the **Help** menu include:

Option	Function
Help Topics	Accesses the TT User Setup Help System.
What's New	Accesses the What's New topic of the help system.
TT Remote Help Center	Launches a browser directed to the TT Remote Help Center.
About TT User Setup	Displays the version and copyright information for TT User Setup.

Data Grid Functionality

TT User Setup uses data grids to display collections of records. For example, the users that the logged in administrator can view are displayed in the data grid that appears on the **Users** window.



From most data grids you can complete the following tasks:

- "Creating, Editing, and Deleting Records"
- "Editing and Deleting Multiple Records (Mass Editing)"
- "Applying Filters"
- "Sorting by a Column"
- "Showing, Hiding, and Arranging Columns"
- "Generating an HTML or CSV Report from any Window"

Creating, Editing, and Deleting Records

Most of the TT User Setup windows allow you to create, edit, and delete records using similar methods.

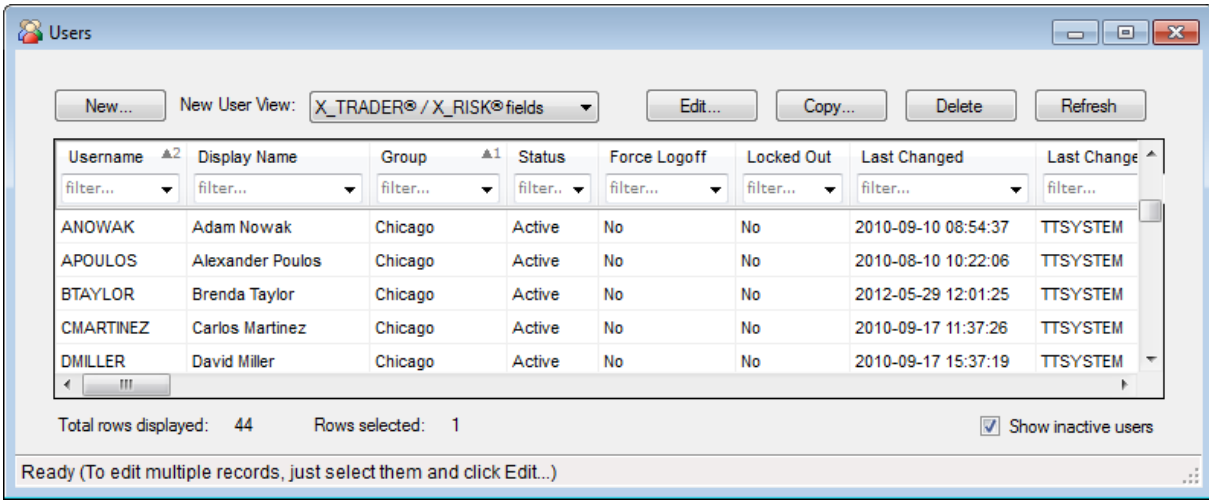
This topic describes those basic methods:

Creating a New Record

This procedure describes how to create a new user record from the **Users** window. The same techniques can be used to create records in the **Gateway Logins**, **Product Limits**, **Customer Defaults**, **Account Default List**, and **Version Rules** windows.

▶ To create a new record:

1. Open a data grid window, for example, **Users**.



Note: When creating a user, select a specific view from the **New User View** drop-down list. The view determines which tabs are on the **New User** window. For more information about this feature refer to the "Using Views" topic.

2. Do one of the following:
   - Click **New**.
   - Right-click the data grid and then click **New**.
   - Select a user and then click **Copy**, or right-click a user and select **Copy** from the context menu. Refer to the Copying a Record topic if needed.

The **New User** window appears with the **Main** tab selected.

Copying a Record

Copied records are pre-filled with most or all of the data from the original. You must change one or more values to make the record unique.

When copying a user, you have the option to copy Direct Trader gateway logins, Admin gateway logins, TTORD gateway logins, customer defaults and account defaults. You copy gateway logins, product limits, customer defaults, and account defaults, and you can also copy product limits from one gateway or gateway login to another.

To copy a gateway login, product limit, customer default, or account default record:

1. Open a data grid window. For example, **Gateway Logins**.
2. Select the record that you want to copy, and click **Copy**. You can also right-click the record and select **Copy** from the context menu.

3. Click **Copy**.
4. Enter or change any fields as needed and then click **Save**.

You have successfully created a new record by copying an existing record.

▶ To copy a user record:

Refer to “Copying Users”.

▶ To copy a product limit to a gateway or gateway login:

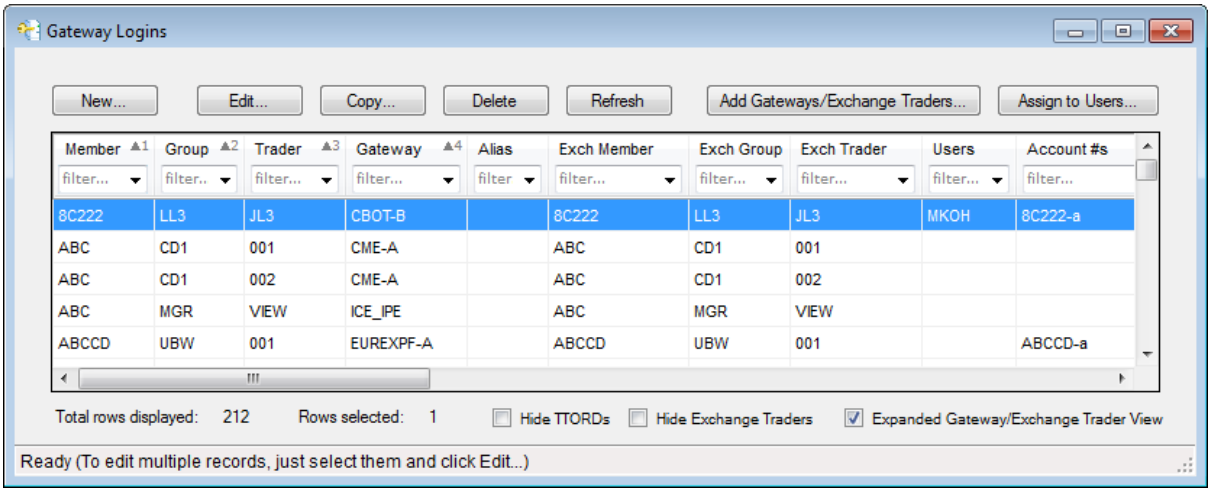
Refer to “Copying Product Limits to Additional Gateways or Gateway Logins”.

Editing a Record

This procedure describes how to edit an existing gateway login record from the **Gateway Logins** window. The same techniques can be used to edit records in the **Users**, **Product Limits**, **Customer Defaults**, **Account Default List**, and **Version Rules** windows.

▶ To edit a Gateway Login:

1. From the **User Admin** menu, select **Gateway Logins**.



Note: Use the **Refresh** button to refresh your window if the data becomes stale. The **Refresh** feature is useful, when for example, multiple administrators are updating records in TT User Setup.

2. Do one of the following:
   - Double-click the row for the gateway login you want to update
   - Select a gateway login row, and click **Edit** or right-click a gateway login row, and select **Edit** from the context menu.
   - Select multiple gateway logins and then click **Edit**, or right-click the selected gateway logins, and then click **Edit** from the context menu. Refer to the "Editing and Deleting Multiple Records (Mass Editing)" topic if needed.

   The **Edit Gateway Login** window appears with the **Gateway Login Info** tab selected.

   Note: Uneditable fields are disabled (grayed out).

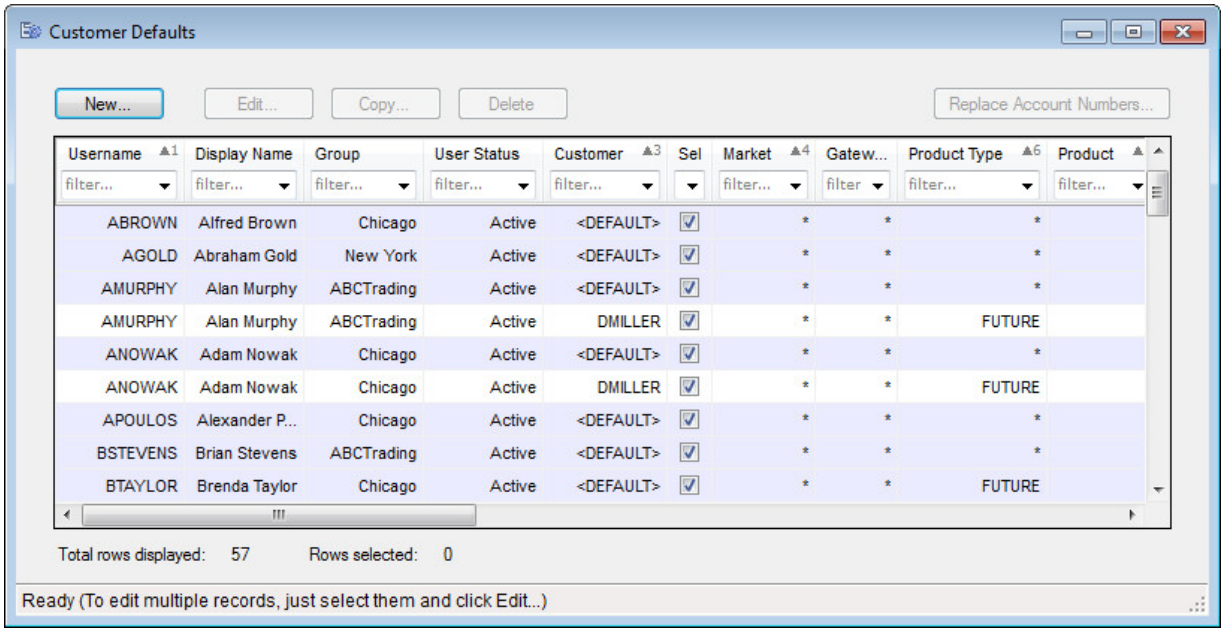
Deleting a Record

This procedure describes how to delete an **X_TRADER** customer default record from the **Customer Defaults** window. The same techniques can be used to delete records in the **Users**, **Product Limits**, **Gateway Login**, **Account Default List**, and **Version Rules** windows.

Note: TT User Setup permanently removes deleted users from the database.

To delete a customer default:

1. From the **User Admin** menu, select **X_TRADER Customer Defaults**.



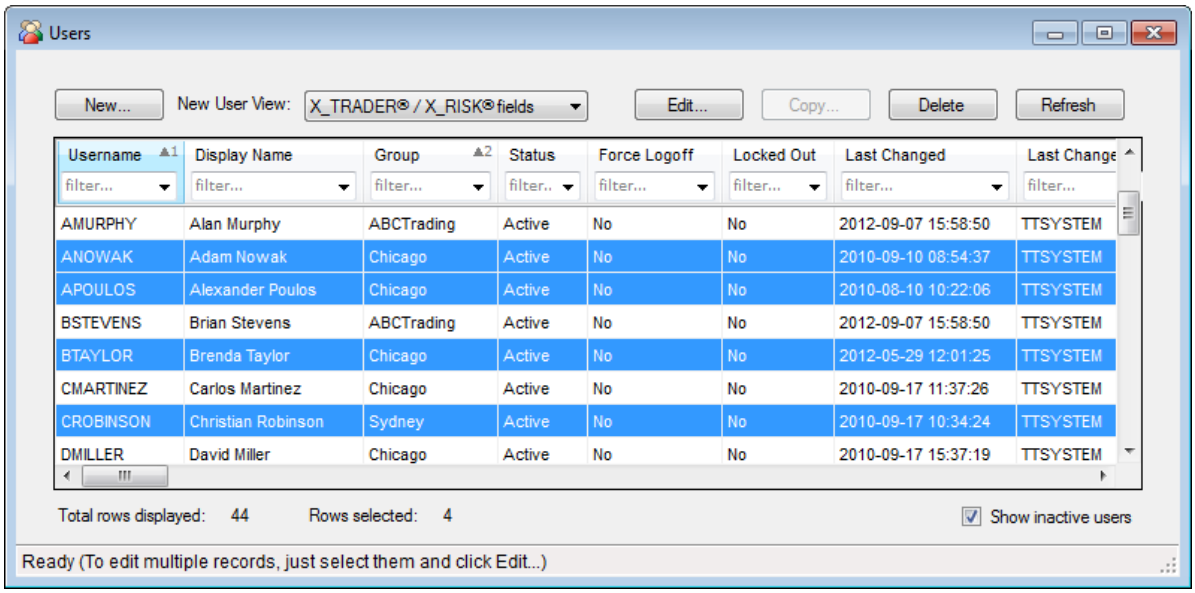
2. Do one of the following:
   - Click the row of the customer default you want to delete, and then click **Delete**.
   - Right-click the row of the customer default you want to delete, and then select **Delete** from the context menu.
   - Select multiple customer defaults, click or right-click the selected customer defaults, and then click **Delete**.
3. When prompted to confirm the deletion, click **OK**.

Editing and Deleting Multiple Records (Mass Editing)

Most data grids support editing and deleting multiple records at once (also referred to as mass-editing). The **Users**, **Gateway Logins**, **Product Limits**, **Customer Defaults**, **Account Default List**, **Users' Gateway Login Attributes**, and **Version Rules** windows support mass edits and mass deletions, while the **Accounts** and **User Groups** windows only support mass deletions.

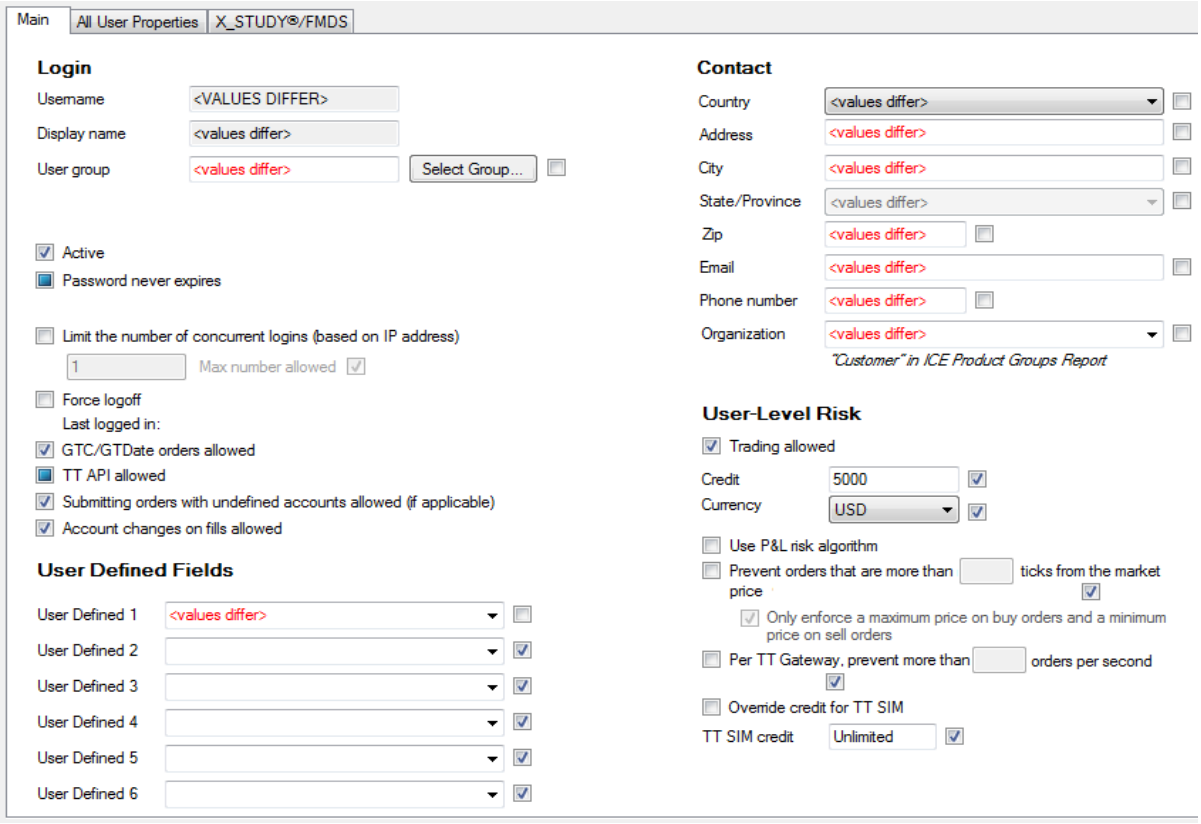
To edit multiple records:

1. Open a data grid window. For example, **Users**.
2. While pressing the Ctrl key, click the rows you want to edit. You can also press the Shift key.



3. Click **Edit**.
4. On the edit multiple logins warning message, click **OK**.

   A window appears that allows you to edit all the selected records. In this example, the **Edit Multiple Users** window appears. This window contains the most commonly mass-edited fields.



Note: Fields with different values display **<values differ>**; checkboxes with different values display as either shaded or shaded and checked, depending on your Windows Theme; fields with common values display those common values; and fields that cannot be edited are disabled (grayed-out).

5. Edit one or more fields as needed (e.g. change the **User group** field to London).
6. When you are finished editing, save your changes and close the window.

The data grid shows the updated user information.

You successfully edited multiple users' information.

To delete multiple records:

1. Open a data grid window.
2. Press the **Ctrl** or Shift keys, and select the rows you want to delete.
3. Click **Delete**.
4. On the delete confirmation warning message, click **OK**.

You have successfully deleted multiple users.

Applying Filters

Filters make it easier to locate specific data in data grids by displaying only the rows that match the column filter(s). Filters can be blank, non-blank, or a string (including wildcards) that you enter.

To filter a column:

1. From the **User Admin** menu or **Server Admin** menu, select any window with a grid display (e.g., the **Gateway Logins** window).

   The filter options are above each column in the column header row.

   Note: The available filter options vary based on the data displayed in the associated column's fields.

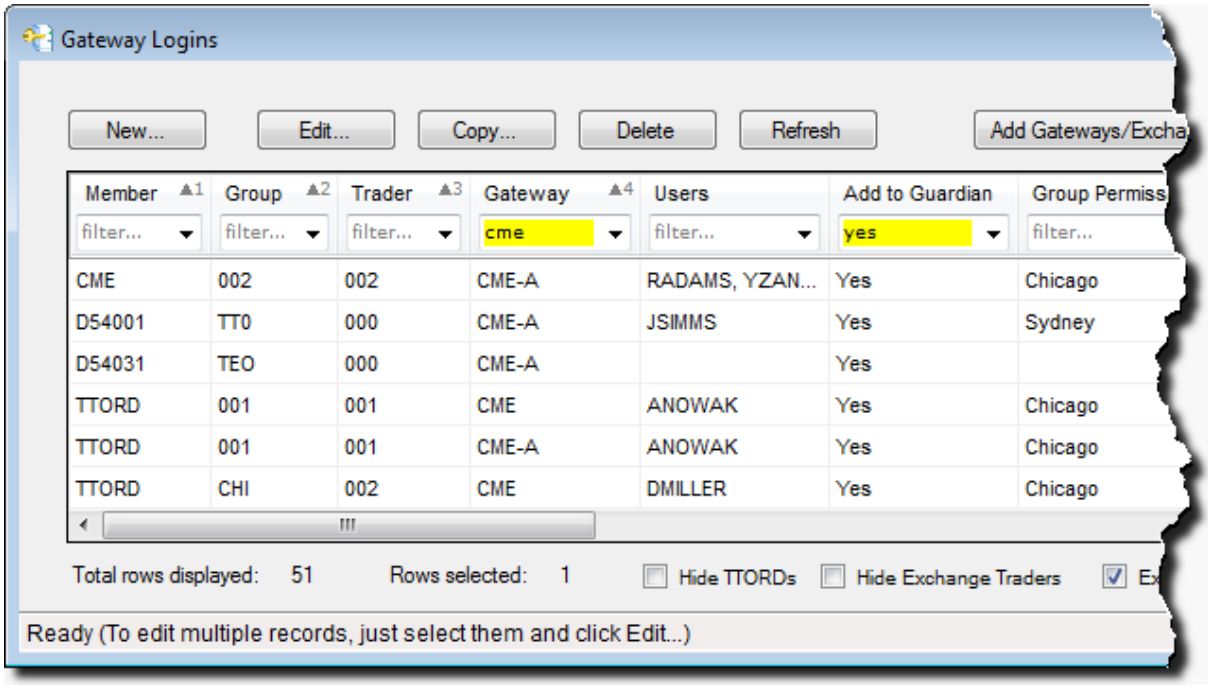
2. To display the available filters, select the column you want to filter and click the drop-down arrow.

   The filter options available in every applicable window include:

Filter	Function
[No Filter]	Removes the current filter.
[Blank]	Displays only login records with no data in the column.
[Non-Blank]	Displays only those records that contain data in the column.
<string>	Displays only those records that contain all or part of the string you entered. You can also enter the +, =, and ? wildcards to display partial or exact matches. Refer to **Using Wildcards** later in this section for more information.

3. For each column, enter or select a filter.

A filtered column's drop-down selection displays a yellow background.



Note: Partial filter matches are considered a match. For example, the TTDEMO1 filter matches TTDEMO1, TTDEMO10, TTDEMO100, etc.

You have successfully applied a filter to a column.

Filtering by an Exact Match

You use an = filter symbol to indicate that the text that follows the symbol must filter by an exact match. For example, if you enter =Eurex in a **Gateway** column filter, the data grid displays only Eurex (no flavor) Gateways.

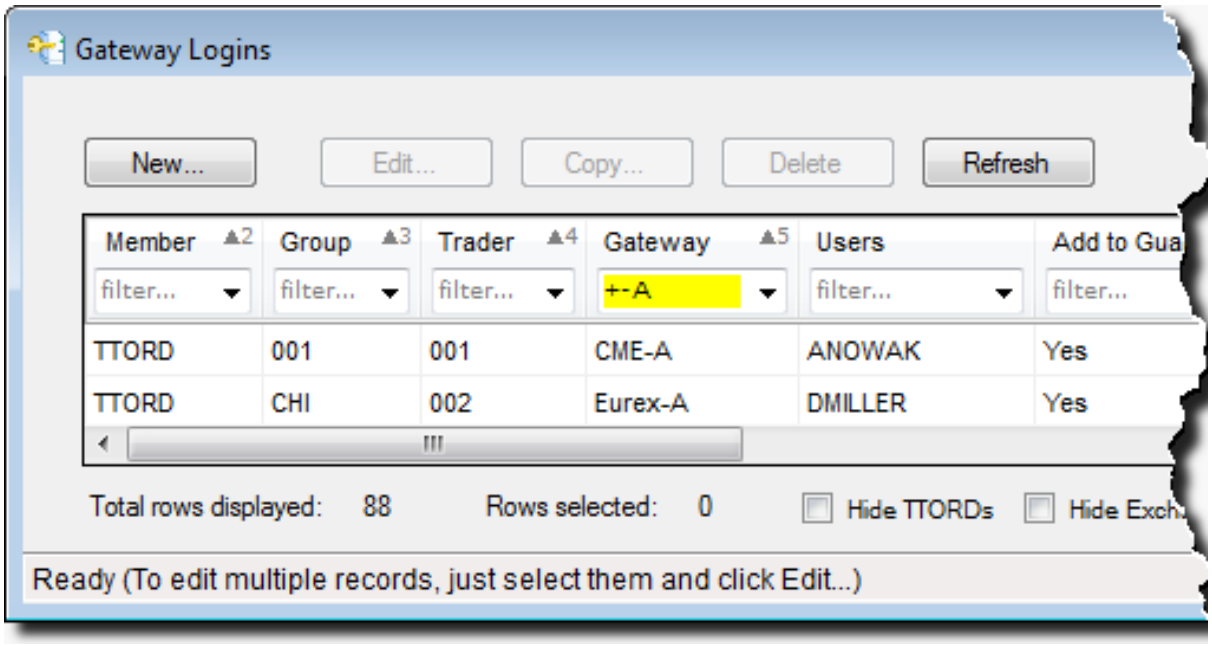
Auto Filter

The auto-filter feature also automatically adjusts the content of a column as you enter or delete text in a filter. As you begin typing, your column begins to filter. For example, typing the letter **B** in the Gateway filter will show only gateways that begin with the letter **B**. Every subsequent letter typed, further filters the column.

Using Wildcards

TT User Setup allows you to include wildcards with the filter text to further filter the display:

- + matches multiple characters. For example, type *+-A* in a **Gateway** column filter to display only A-flavored gateways, as shown:



- ? matches a single character. For example, type *?B* in a **Group** column filter to display groups such as ABC, MB9, NB8, etc,.

To view a brief description of the wildcards, place your mouse pointer in a column header.

Sorting by a Column

Use TT User Setup's column sorting function to control the display of data in various windows. You can sort by columns alphabetically (A-Z or Z-A) or numerically. For example, sort by the **Last Changed** column of the **Users** window to determine which users were most recently added or edited.

TT User Setup indicates sort order by placing a number in the header of a sorted column. The number one indicates the highest priority, the number two indicates the second-highest priority, and so on. A down arrow indicates the items are sorted in descending order and an up arrow indicates an ascending order.

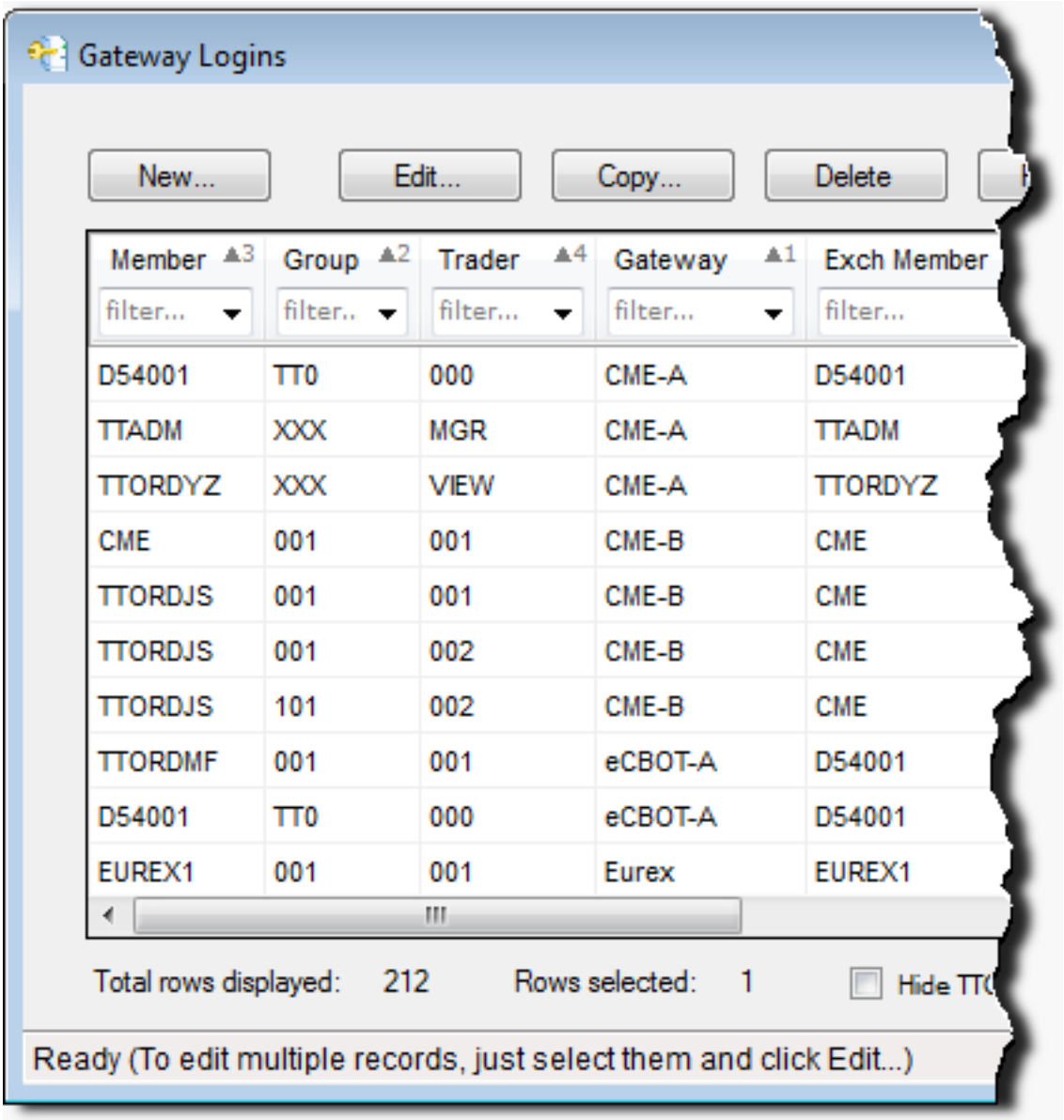
To sort the columns:

- From the data grid, click the column headers from the lowest priority to the highest priority. For more information refer to “Sorting from the Data Grid”
- Right-click the data grid and select **Specify sort criteria**. Set the sort order from the **Sort** dialog box. For more information refer to “Sorting from the Sort Dialog Box”.

Sorting from the Data Grid

To manually sort the columns from the data grid:

1. Open a data grid window, for example, **Gateway Logins**.
2. On the column header row, click one of the column titles.



Note: You can sort by more than one column by clicking on each column's title.

When clicking, for example, on the **Gateway Login** window's **Gateway** column title, the column sorts alphabetically.

3. To sort in descending order, click the column heading again.
4. When sorting multiple columns, click the lowest priority column first. TT User Setup assigns the highest priority to the column clicked last.

You have successfully sorted by a column.

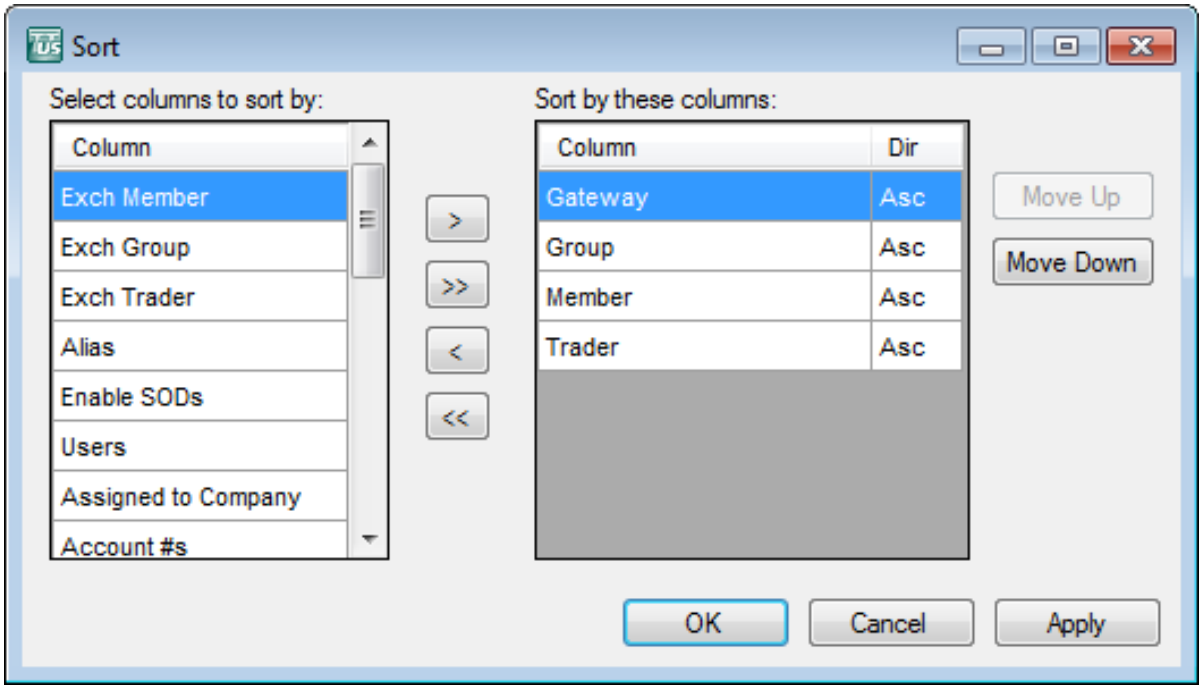
Sorting from the Sort Dialog Box

Use the **Sort** dialog box to specify the sort criteria for multiple columns of any window that contains a grid.

To set the sort order from the Sort dialog box:

1. Open a data grid window. For example, **Gateway Logins**.
2. Right-click in one of the columns, and on the context menu, select **Specify sort criteria**.

   The **Sort** dialog box appears.



3. Use the transfer buttons (<,<<,>>,>) to select the columns to sort.
4. In the **Sort by these columns** section, double-click any column to toggle between ascending (**Asc**) or descending (**Desc**) sort order.
5. Use the **Move Up** and **Move Down** buttons to assign a priority to each column. TT User Setup assigns the topmost column priority one.
6. Click **Apply** and then **OK**.

You have successfully sorted by a column.

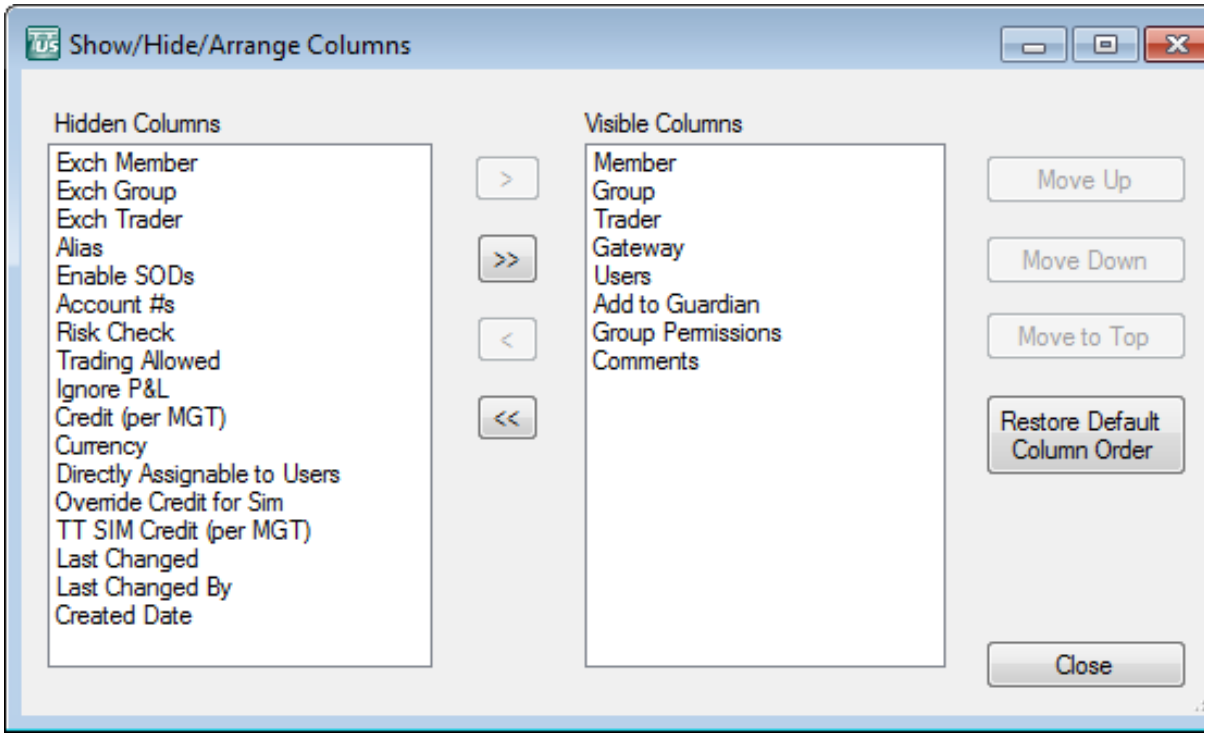
Showing, Hiding, and Arranging Columns

You access the **Show/Hide/Arrange Columns** dialog box from the context menu of any window that includes a data grid. Each window lists the visible and hidden columns and the order in which visible columns will appear. By default, TT User Setup displays all available columns in each window.

Note: For a list and description of the columns and fields available in each TT User Setup window, refer to the "Field Descriptions" topic.

To show or hide columns:

1. Open a data grid window. For example, **Users**.
2. Right-click in one of the columns, and on the context menu, select **Show/Hide/Arrange columns**.



3. In the **Visible Columns** section, click the column you want to hide.
4. Click the **<** transfer button to move the visible column to the **Hidden Columns** section.

   Note: You can transfer all columns by clicking the **<<** transfer button.

5. Use the **Move Up**, **Move Down**, and **Move to Top** buttons to arrange the columns in the order you prefer.

   Note: Use the **Restore Default Column Order** button to revert to the original column order.

6. Click **Close**.

Generating an HTML or CSV Report from any Window

Right-click in any data grid window to display a context menu that allows you to export to HTML and CSV files. These options allow you to view data in either an Internet browser or a spreadsheet application, to generate a report, or to save that data for future viewing. The content of the report depends on the sorting or filtering currently applied.

The following procedure describes generating an HTML or CSV report from the **Users** window.

To generate an HTML or CSV report from the Users window:

1. Open an applicable TT User Setup window (e.g. the **Users** window).
2. Right-click anywhere in the grid display.

   The context menu appears.

3. Click either the **Export to HTML** or **Export to CSV** option.

   The Windows **Save As** dialog box appears.

   Note: Any filters, sorting, or hidden columns applied to a window affect the content illustrated in a report.

4. Select the destination for the.html or .csv report file, and assign a file name.

   The .html file report opens automatically after saving.

5. To display the CSV report, double-click the .csv file.

The report displays in a spreadsheet application.

You have successfully exported HTML or CSV data and generated a report.

User Administration Basics

User Administration Basics

From the **Users** window (accessed from the **User Admin** menu) you can create or edit all of the user types needed in TT User Setup. This includes

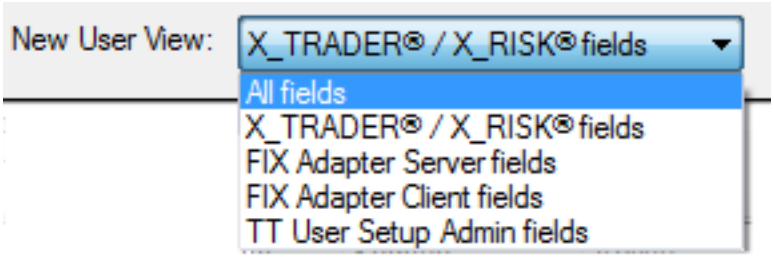
- Administrative users (refer to “Creating and Editing Administrative Users” on page 85)
- X_TRADER or X_RISK users (refer to “Creating and Editing X_TRADER or X_RISK Users” on page 69)
- FIX Adapter clients (refer to “Setting Up a FIX Adapter Client User” on page 100)
- FIX Adapter servers (refer to “Setting Up a TT FIX Adapter Server” on page 96)

Note: The **Users** window is a standard data grid with the exception of the **New User View** menu. Refer to the “Data Grid Functionality” on page 25 and “Using Views” on page 39 topics. For a list of all the fields on all the user administration windows refer to the “New User and Edit User Window Fields” on page 41 topic.

Note: You can create a new user by copying an existing user record. Refer to the “Copying Users” on page 64 topic as needed.

Using Views

The **New User** and **Edit User** windows contain all the fields needed to create any type of user. However, some fields apply only to **X_TRADER**/X_RISK users, while others apply only to FIX Adapter Servers, FIX Adapter Clients, or TT User Setup administrators. Selecting the appropriate view from the **View** or **New User View** drop-down determines what the **New User** or **Edit User** window displays.

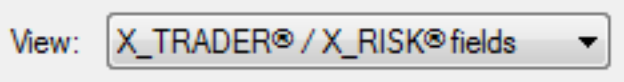


The View and New User View options are:

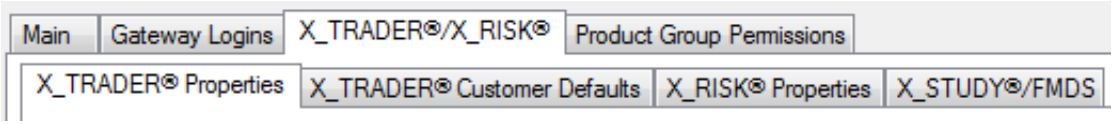
- “X_TRADER/X_RISK Fields” on page 39
- “FIX Adapter Server Fields” on page 40
- “FIX Adapter Client Fields” on page 40
- “TT User Setup Admin Fields” on page 41

X_TRADER/X_RISK Fields

To create an **X_TRADER** or X_RISK user, select **X_TRADER/X_RISK fields** as the **View**.

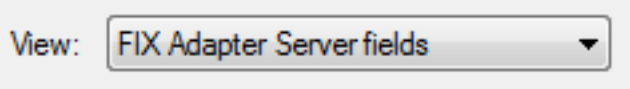


When you create or edit a user, the **New User** or **Edit User** window includes the following tabs:

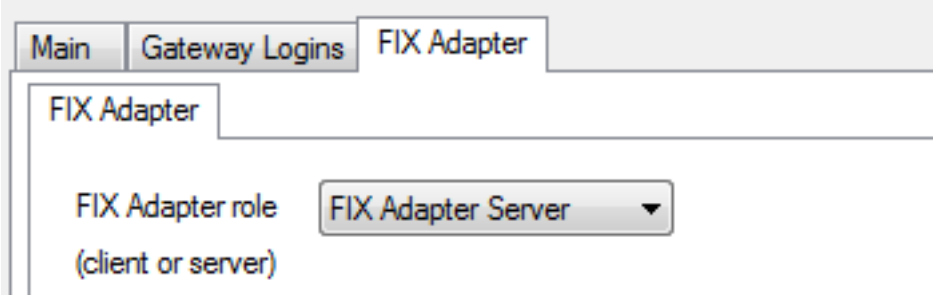


FIX Adapter Server Fields

To create a FIX Adapter Server user, select **FIX Adapter Server fields** as the **View** .

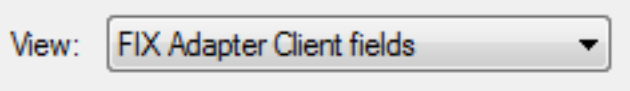


When you create or edit a user, the **New User** or **Edit User** window includes the following tabs:

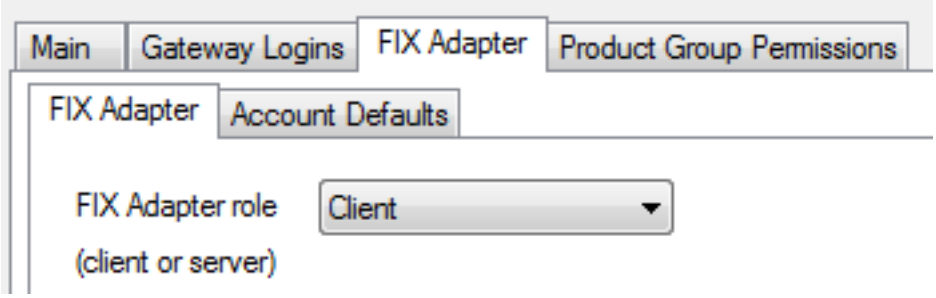


FIX Adapter Client Fields

To create a FIX Adapter Client user, select **FIX Adapter Client fields** as the **View** .

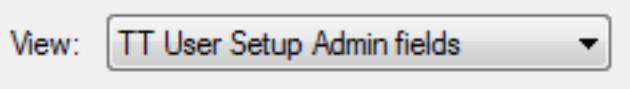


When you create or edit a user, the **New User** or **Edit User** window includes the following tabs:

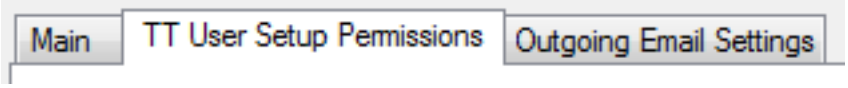


TT User Setup Admin Fields

To create a Super Administrator, Group Administrator, Gateway Login Administrator, Password Administrator, or view-only user, select **TT User Setup Admin fields** as the **View** .



When you create or edit a user, the **New User** or **Edit User** window includes the following tabs:



New User and Edit User Window Fields

This topic describes all of the **New User** and **Edit User** window tabs, buttons, and fields. The available tabs and associated windows include the following:

- “Main” on page 42
- “Gateway Logins” on page 46
- “X_TRADER/X_RISK” on page 48
- “FIX Adapter” on page 58
- “TT User Setup Permissions” on page 61
- “Outgoing Email Settings” on page 63
- “Product Group Permissions Settings” on page 64

Main

The **Main** tab contains the user's basic information. This tab is appears for all user types.

Fields	Description
Username	A Universal Login ID used to log into a TT application (e.g., JDOE) **Note:** Usernames are limited to 11 characters.
Display name	An identifier whereby you easily recognize the user (e.g., John Doe).
User group (optional)	An identifier used to categorize users (e.g., Chicago). You can use it to group traders in the X_RISK **Position** window. **Note:** The user group also determines which TT User Setup administrators can manage which users.
Password / Confirm password	The user's login password (e.g., 12345678). **Note:** Password fields only appear in the **New User** window before a user has been saved.
Active	Enables a user's login. If this field is unchecked, the user is considered "inactive". Inactive users cannot log in.

Fields	Description
Password never expires	Sets the user's password to never expire.
Locked out	Indicates whether the user is currently locked out.
Limit the number of concurrent logins	Allows you to restrict the number of times a single user's login can be in use simultaneously. You must also enforce the Concurrent Logins rules at the system level for this field to have affect. Refer to “Configuring Concurrent Login Rules” on page 227 if needed.
Force logoff	Allows you to shut down a user's running **X_TRADER** application to reclaim the **X_TRADER** license. The user cannot log back in until **Force logoff** is unchecked.
TT API allowed	Enables a user's ability to access the TT API. This option is unchecked by default and is only applicable to TTNET customers.
GTC/GTDate orders allowed	Determines whether a user can place Good Till Cancel and Good Till Date orders.
User Defined Fields	Stores optional information, such as MGT, account number, etc.
Contact fields	Stores the user's Country, Address, City, State, Zip, Email, and Phone Number.
Trading allowed	Enables a user's ability to trade. The **Trading allowed** option is visible only after saving a new user; it is checked by default. **Note**: The **Trading Allowed** option must be checked for any user that will add, modify, or delete orders. This means that non-tradable administrator logins (e.g. TTADMXXX100 or TTORDTSXXXMGR) must have the **Trading Allowed** option checked to delete orders, even though they are unable to trade.

Fields	Description
Credit	Determines the overall dollar amount a trader can lose during a given trading session. Enter 0 to reset the credit to **unlimited**.
Currency	Determines the currency of the credit value above.
Use P&L risk algorithm	Determines if the P&L risk algorithm is used to risk check this user. If **Use P&L risk algorithm** is checked, the P&L risk algorithm is used for risk checking. Additionally, the **P/L based on** setting in X_TRADER defaults to *Risk Algorithm*. If **Use P&L risk algorithm** is unchecked, the Last Traded Price is used for risk checking. The **P/L based on** X_TRADER setting remains editable.
Prevent orders that are more than X ticks from the market price	Determines how far from the market price a user may enter an order (in ticks). Check the **Only enforce a maximum price on buy orders and a minimum price on sell orders** option to allow traders to sell above the specified range and to buy below it .For more information about pre-trade price controls, refer to “Setting Pre-Trade Price Controls” on page 187.
Per TT Gateway, prevent more than X orders per second	Limits the number of orders per second, per TT Gateway. This setting applies to all Gateways that a user logs in to. For more information about pre-trade order throughput controls on a per user basis, refer to “Setting Order Throughput Controls” on page 191.

Fields	Description
Override credit for TT SIM	Determines if this user has a different credit limit for TT SIM trading. Enter 0 to reset the credit to **unlimited**. When **Override credit for TT SIM** is checked, the user's credit limit while trading on TT SIM is set to the value in the **TT SIM credit** field. If **Override credit for TT SIM** is not checked, the user's credit limit applies to both TT SIM and non TT SIM trading.
Submitting orders with undefined accounts allowed (if applicable)	Determines if orders submitted by this user will be rejected if they are sent with an account that is not defined in TT User Setup. When **Submitting orders with undefined accounts allowed** is checked, the user can submit an order with any account number unless restricted by customer defaults or their TTORD. If **Submitting orders with undefined accounts allowed** is not checked, then TT Gateways will reject orders from this user that are sent with an account that is not defined in TT User Setup.

Fields	Description
Account changes on fills allowed	Determines if this user should be allowed to update the account number on a fill. When **Account changes on fills allowed** is checked, the user can change the account number on a fill. If the users customer defaults are restricted, then only accounts that are pre-defined in the customer defaults are available. **Note:** When applying account-based risk checking, TT does not recommend checking the **Account changes on fills allowed option** until this user is using X_TRADER 7.17 or later. If a user with a pre-7.17 version of X_TRADER is allowed to change an account on a fill, the account number on the fill will not be updated in all TT products (including the gateways where account-based risk checking is done). This could lead to discrepancies between what is displayed in client applications and how risk is actually being calculated. **Note:** When the **Account changes on fills** allowed option is checked, users with X_TRADER 7.17 or later can modify the account on a fill, and this update will be processed as a part of account-based risk on the gateways. Note that no risk check actually takes place on the modification; therefore changing the account could cause an account to go over its limits. However, any subsequent orders will be risk checked based on the modified fills.

Gateway Logins

Use the **Gateway Logins** tab to assign gateway logins or to view or edit product limits. This tab appears for **X_TRADER**, X_RISK, and FIX Adapter users.

Buttons/Fields	Description
New /Edit	Creates a new gateway login. Refer the "Creating a New Gateway Login through the Users Window" on page 82 topic for more information.
Remove	Removes the selected gateway login(s).
Assign Existing Logins	Assigns existing gateway logins to the user. Refer to the "Assigning Gateway Logins to a User Through the Users Window" on page 83 topic for more information.
View/Edit Product Limits	Accesses all product limits for the given user. Refer to the "Creating Product Limits for Gateway Logins" on page 168 topic.
Generate Admin Gateway Logins for all gateways	Enables the Member/Group/Trader fields which allow you to configure an MGT that can log into all available gateways. This is especially useful if setting up a Universal Login for something like Historical Fill Server, for example. This way, you can ensure that HFS always logs into all gateways. For more information about administrator gateway logins, refer to the **Administrator Logins** section of the *TT User Login and Risk Administration* guide.
Avail to User*	Indicates whether a user has access to a given gateway login after performing a universal login.
Avail to FIX Client	Indicates whether a FIX Client has access to a given gateway login after performing a universal login.
Auto Login*	Specifies if a user of a specific gateway login will be automatically logged into the associated gateways.

Buttons/Fields	Description
Mandatory Login*	Specifies whether a user of a specific gateway login will be automatically logged into a given gateway.
Algo Deployment Allowed*	Indicates whether the user is allowed to deploy strategies to an Algo SE Server. This setting is only valid when the Gateway is an Algo SE Server.
Algo Sharing Allowed*	Indicates whether the user is allowed to share algorithms with other users on Algo SE servers. This setting is only valid when the Gateway is an Algo SE Server and when the **Algo deployment allowed option** is checked.
Default Account*	Specifies the default account type as defined by the exchange (**A1**-**A9**, **G1**, **G2**, **M1**-**M3**, **P1**-**P3**, or **U1**-**U3**.
Operator ID*	Specifies the Operator ID that is used to identify the trader or operator to the exchange.
Max Orders/Sec	The maximum rate of orders allowed per TT Gateway. This value overrides the user-level **Per TT Gateway, prevent more than X orders per second** setting. The value entered in the **Prevent more than X orders per second (overrides the User-Level setting)** field displays in **Max Orders/Sec.** You can edit the maximum orders per second in this column per TT Gateway for the selected user.

* These fields are available as columns in the Gateway Logins table. Use the Show/Hide/Arrange columns option to view any hidden columns.

X_TRADER/X_RISK

The **X_TRADER/X_RISK** tab applies to **X_TRADER** and X_RISK users. It contains the following sub tabs:

- "X_TRADER Properties" on page 49
- "X_TRADER Customer Defaults" on page 52

- "X_RISK Properties" on page 57
- "X_STUDY/FMDS" on page 57

X_TRADER Properties

The **X_TRADER Properties** tab has the following buttons:

Buttons/Fields	Description
X_TRADER mode	Determines whether **X_TRADER** starts up as **X_TRADER** or **X_TRADER** Pro.
TT SIM login allowed	Determines whether the user is allowed to log onto X_TRADER using TT SIM mode. This option is checked by default.
Live (non-TT SIM) login allowed	Determines whether the user is allowed log onto X_TRADER using non-TT SIM mode (production). This option is checked by default.
Avoid orders that cross	Determines whether the user can configure the **Avoid orders that cross** in X_TRADER. If you leave the **Avoid orders that cross** option unchecked in TT User Setup (which is the default), the user can configure the **Avoid orders that cross** option in X_TRADER as needed. If you check the **Avoid orders that cross** option, the user cannot edit the **Avoid orders that cross** option. You must also configure the default crossed order behavior **(Cancel resting** or **Reject new**) for the user. **Cancel resting** sends a cancel request on the working order and places the new order. **Reject new** rejects the new order.

Buttons/Fields	Description
	Determines whether the user can configure the **Quoting** option in X_TRADER.
Quoting/RFQ allowed	If you leave **Quoting/RFQ allowed** checked (which is the default setting), the user can turn the X_TRADER **Quoting** functionality on or off. Otherwise, the user cannot enable **Quoting** in X_TRADER. For information about X_TRADER's quoting functionality, refer to the X_TRADER Help.
	Determines whether the user can configure the **Wholesale Trades** option in **X_TRADER**.
Wholesale trades allowed	If you leave **Wholesale trades allowed** checked (which is the default setting), the user can turn **X_TRADER**'s **Wholesale Trades** option on or off. Otherwise, the user cannot enable **Wholesale Trades** in **X_TRADER**. For information about the **X_TRADER** wholesale trading functionality, refer to the **X_TRADER** Help.
Staged order creation allowed	Determines whether the user is allowed to create staged orders. This option is unchecked by default.
Staged order management allowed	Determines whether the user is allowed to claim and work staged orders. This option is unchecked by default.

Buttons/Fields	Description
Direct Market Access (DMA) order creation allowed	Determines whether the user is allowed to create DMA orders. This option is checked by default.
Machine gun orders allowed	Determines whether the user can configure the **Machine Gun** option on the **X_TRADER** Order Entry property tab. If you leave **Machine gun orders allowed** checked (which is the default setting), the user can turn **X_TRADER**'s **Machine Gun** option on or off. Otherwise, the user cannot enable the **Machine Gun** option in **X_TRADER**. For information about the **X_TRADER** machine gun order entry property, refer to the **X_TRADER** Help.

Buttons/Fields	Description
Eurex - Persist orders	Determines whether Eurex orders sent from X_TRADER are automatically set to persist, or whether the user can configure the **Persist orders** and **Only GTC** options in the **Eurex** section of the **X_TRADER** Order Entry property tab. • **User Controlled**: The user can turn **X_TRADER**'s Eurex **Persist Orders** and **Only GTC** options on or off as needed. This is the default setting. • **Persist all orders**: All Eurex orders sent from **X_TRADER** will be set to persist and the user will not be able to turn **X_TRADER**'s Eurex **Persist orders** option off. • **Persist all GTC orders**: Eurex GTC and TIF orders sent from **X_TRADER** will be set to persist and the user will not be able to turn **X_TRADER**'s Eurex **Only GTC** option off. For information about the **X_TRADER** Eurex order properties, refer to the **X_TRADER** Help.

X_TRADER Customer Defaults

The **X_TRADER Customer Defaults** tab has the following buttons and fields:

Buttons/Fields	Description
New/Edit	Creates a new customer default. Refer to the "Creating and Managing X_TRADER Customer Defaults" on page 73 topic for more information.
Copy	Copies the selected customer default.
Delete	Deletes the selected customer default(s).
Copy from User	Copies an existing customer default from another user within your environment.

Buttons/Fields	Description
Replace Account Numbers	Replaces one or more customer default account numbers with similar account numbers based on selected pattern-matching rules.
Restrict user from editing their local Customer Defaults	Forces the trader to use only these customer defaults.

The data grid has the following fields:

Fields	Description
Customer	Sets the name of the profile.
Selected	Determines whether the customer is added to the **X_TRADER Customer List** window so the user can trade for those customers.
Market	Lists available markets. Enter an asterisk (*) to apply the account and account type to all markets the trader is logged into.
Gateway	Specifies the market flavor a user is able to log into and trade on using the assigned gateway login (e.g. CME-A).
Product type	Lists product types, including: **Future**, **Spread**, **Option**, **Strategy**, **Stock**, **Bond**, **Swap**, **Energy**, **FOREX**, **NDF**, or **Warrant** . Enter an asterisk (*)to use all product types.

Fields	Description
Product	Specifies a specific product. Enter an asterisk (*) to apply the account and account type to all products in the exchange. You can include multiple products by entering each product type, separated with only a comma (no spaces in between). X_TRADER versions 7.8 and later support multiple **Products**. **X_TRADER** versions prior to 7.8 accept only the first product listed.
Account #	Specifies the customer account number. It associates the trade with a specific customer, and middle or back office may use the **Account #** as a sub account. Some exchanges (e.g., CME) require an account number. If the user's MGT is a TTORD that is risk managed in Guardian, the **Account #** must match one of the accounts.

Fields	Description
Account type	Indicates one of the following account types: • A1: First Agent Account (e.g., broker) • A2-A9: Second Agent Account - Ninth Agent Account • G1: Pre-Designated Giveup Trade • G2: Designated Giveup Trade • G3: Second Giveup Trade • M1: First Market Maker Account • M2: Second Market Maker Account • M3: Third Market Maker Account • P1: First Principal Account (e.g., proprietary trader) • P2: Second Principal Account • P3: Third Principal Account • U1-U3:Unallocated—for orders that have not been allocated to a customer.
Give up	Indicates the clearing member code. Used for Give-up trade accounts only.
FFT2 & FFT3	Used for annotation purposes by the trader or back office (sub-account). The back office manager usually dictates how to use these free-form text fields.
Time in force (TIF)*	Indicates the time the order is in force, including: • GTD (Good Till Day): Order is valid only for the current trading day. • GTC (Good Till Cancel): Order is valid until you cancel it or the contract expires. • GIS (Good in Session): Order is valid only for the current trading session. Some exchanges, like Euronext, have products with different trading sessions in one day.

Fields	Description
Order type*	Indicates the order type and determines whether the order is sent as a Limit or Market order. • Limit: Works at a specific price. • Mkt (Market): Works the inside market. • MTL (Market Limit): Sends a Market order with the condition that on a partial fill, the remaining quantity rests as a Limit order at the price that was just hit or taken. Available on TOCOM and SGX. • BL (Best Limit): Joins the best bid or offer without being required to enter a price. Available on TOCOM.
Order restriction*	Specifies if the user has an order restriction, such as FOK, IOC, or LSM. Note: Support and definitions for order restrictions are determined by each exchange. Refer to each exchange's market rules for additional information.
Open/Close*	Indicates the type of position the user can establish with the order: • Open: Opening a position. • Close: Closing a position. • FIFO: Handled in a first-in, first-out manner (TOCOM only).
Max order qty*	Specifies the maximum quantity allowed per trade for the specified account. This value is only used when **Enforce max order qty** is enabled. You can establish a high quantity that does not restrict normal trading, yet still provides security against an erroneous trade. The **Maximum Order Qty** field in Guardian overrides this setting.

Fields	Description
* Unavailable in **X_TRADER** 7.8 and later.	

X_RISK Properties

The **X_RISK** tab has the following fields:

Fields	Description
Contract Session Prices (CSP) access allowed	Determines whether the user can publish Contract Session Prices in X_RISK.
Instant Messages (IM) access allowed	Determines whether the user can send instant messages in X_RISK.
Manual Fill (MF) access allowed	Determines whether the user can publish manual fills in X_RISK.
Start of Day (SOD) access allowed	Determines whether the user can publish Start of Day records in X_RISK.
Restrict X_RISK administrator to publishing MF/SODs to accounts within the User Groups listed below	If **Manual Fill (MF) access allowed** or **Start of Day (SOD) access allowed** is checked, this option limits the X_RISK administrator to accounts in the specified user groups.

X_STUDY/FMDS

The **X_STUDY/FMDS** tab has the following fields:

Fields	Description
X_STUDY/FMDS allowed for this user	Determines if the user has X_STUDY/FMDS enabled. The option is only available when the **X_STUDY/FMDS Allowed** system setting is enabled. For a detailed description of FMDS and X_STUDY settings, refer to the “Enabling and Configuring X_STUDY and FMDS System Settings” on page 233 topic.

Fields	Description
Override system settings with user settings	Overrides the FMDS server system settings with settings for this user.
Primary FMDS Server settings/Secondary FMDS Server settings	Specifies the IP address, port, service, and timeout settings for the primary and secondary FMDS server.

FIX Adapter

The FIX Adapter tab applies to FIX Adapter Server and Client users. It contains the following tabs:

- "FIX Adapter (server role)" on page 58
- "FIX Adapter (client role)" on page 58
- "Account Defaults" on page 59

FIX Adapter (server role)

The **FIX Adapter** tab fields vary depending on the selected role (client or server). When you set the **FIX Adapter role** to *FIX Adapter Server*, you can create either an Order Routing server type or a Drop Copy server type.

Fields	Description
FIX Adapter role	Indicates that this user is a FIX Adapter server or FIX Adapter client. For more information about FIX Adapter server and client users, refer to the "TT FIX Adapter and TT User Setup Overview" on page 95 topic.
Order routing server/Drop copy server	Sets the FIX Adapter Server type.
Available FIX client users	Lists the available FIX client users.
The following FIX clients can connect to this FIX Adapter	Lists the clients that the FIX adapter will connect to the Gateways on behalf of.

FIX Adapter (client role)

The FIX Adapter tab fields vary depending on the selected role (client or server). When you set the **FIX Adapter role** to FIX Adapter Client, you can allow or prevent staged orders, enable debugging, and assign the client a FIX Adapter server.

Fields	Description
FIX Adapter role	Select FIX Adapter Server or FIX Adapter Client. For more information about FIX Adapter server and client users, refer to the “TT FIX Adapter and TT User Setup Overview” on page 95 topic.
Staged order creation allowed	Determines whether the user is allowed create staged orders. This option is unchecked by default.
Direct Market Access (DMA) order creation allowed	Determines whether the user is allowed to claim and work staged orders. This option is checked by default.
Enable debug logging for orders/Enable debug logging for prices	Adds debug messages generated by the Order Server/Price Server to the log files. **Note:** Because the log file size may increase significantly and performance may be affected, only enable these fields when troubleshooting the connection between FIX Adapter and either Server. **Note:**TT FIX Adapter 7.8 and later ignores the **Enable debug logging for orders** setting.
The FIX client user can connect to the following FIX Adapters	The client can connect to these FIX Adapter servers.

Account Defaults

The **Account Defaults** tab has the following buttons and fields:

Buttons/Fields	Description
New/Edit	Creates a new account default. Refer the "Setting Up an Account Default" on page 104 topic for more information.
Copy	Copies the selected account default.
Delete	Deletes the selected account default(s).
Copy from User	Copies an existing account default from another user within your environment.
Restrict user from overriding Account Defaults	Forces the trader to use only these account defaults.

The data grid has the following fields:

Fields	Description	Type
Priority		Key
Account #	The customer account number. Enter an asterisk (*) to match any account number.	Key
Market	The name of the market. Enter an asterisk (*) to match any market.	Key
Gateway	The name of the gateway. Enter an asterisk (*) to match any gateway.	Key

Fields	Description	Type
Product type	The product type (e.g. futures, options, spreads, etc.) associated with a security that a trader can trade. Enter an asterisk (*) to apply the account default to all product types.	Key
Account type	The type of account associated with the trader.	Value
Clearing account	Indicates the clearing member code. Used for Give-up trade accounts only.	Value
FFT2/FFT3	The freeform fields, often used for annotations by traders or back offices.	Value

TT User Setup Permissions

The TT User Setup permissions apply to Super Administrators, Group Administrators, Password Administrators, and users that cannot log into TT User Setup or have View only permissions.

Fields	Description
None	Prevents the user from logging into TT User Setup.
Super Administrator	Provides complete access to TT User Setup functionality. A user with Super Administrator permissions has no restrictions in TT User Setup.

Fields	Description
Group Administrator	Provides permission to view, edit, and create users, gateway logins, and accounts that exist in one of the user groups the administrator is designated to manage. A Group Administrator can manage multiple user groups, but can exist in a single user group only. The **Able to manage Gateway Logins** and **Able to Create Direct Trader Logins** options allow to you grant these permissions to the Group Administrator.
Gateway Login Administrator	Provides permission to manage one or more gateway logins. A user with gateway login Administrator permissions cannot edit users, but can assign gateway logins and gateway login attributes to users in a user group the administrator is designated to manage. Additionally, you can allow the gateway login administrator to manage only specific groups using the **Restrict Gateway Login Administrator** option.
Password Administrator	Provides permission to unlock users and reset passwords for some user groups or all user groups, depending on the restrictions applied. You can allow the administrator to only manage specific groups using the **Restrict Password Administrator** option.
View Only	Provides permission to view any TT User Setup data window. A user with View Only permissions cannot edit data in any accessible window. Additionally, you can allow the administrator to only manage specific groups using the **Restrict View Only user** option.

Fields	Description
Collect Log Files Only	Provides permission to collect any log files in the trading environment, including log files containing sensitive trading information. The user will not be able to view or edit any users or settings, but will be able to view the TT User Setup server messages, TT User Setup server status, and environment server status reports.

Outgoing Email Settings

The Outgoing Email Settings apply to Super Administrators, Group Administrators, and Password Administrators.

Fields	Description
Enable outgoing email settings	Enables the email settings for TT User Setup administrators who need to email user passwords.
SMTP server host or IP address	Specifies the email server used for sending email.
SMTP port	Specifies the port used for sending email (25 is standard for most ports).
SMTP server requires authentication	Enables SMTP server authentication. This is an optional setting that is only necessary if your email server requires authentication. When this option is enabled you must provide an SMTP server account name and password.
Use SSL	Enables SSL. This is an added security measure required by most servers.
From email address	Specifies the string that appears in the From field of the email sent to the recipient.
Email subject	Specifies the subject that appears in the password email.

Fields	Description
Additional message text	Specifies miscellaneous user instructions (optional).
Include username in message	Includes the email recipients username in the email.

Product Group Permissions Settings

Administrators can allow or block access to product groups in supported markets. For example, an administrator can allow trading on ICE US Futures, but prevent trading on ICE UK Futures.

Buttons	Description
Allow	Allows the user to access the selected product group(s).
Block	Prevents the user from accessing the selected product group(s)

The Product Groups data grid fields are:

Fields	Description
Product Group	Specifies the product group that supports the allow/block feature.
Allowed	Specifies whether the user can access the product group. You can also check or uncheck this option from within the table.
Market	Specifies the product group's market.

TT User Login and Risk Administration

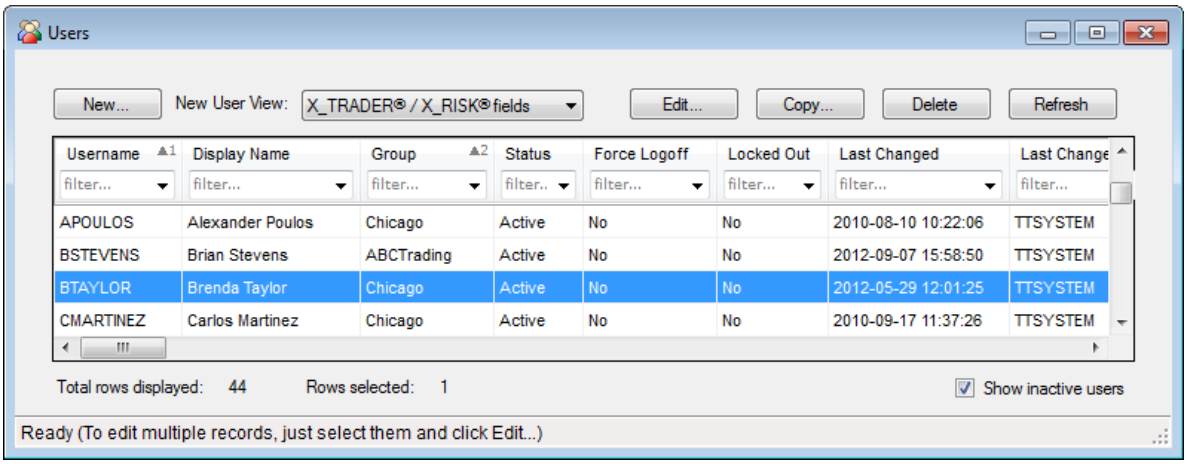
Copying Users

When copying a user, you can choose to copy only Direct Trader gateway logins, admin gateway logins, TTORD gateway logins, customer defaults, and account defaults. The available options depend on which settings are available in the user record being copied.

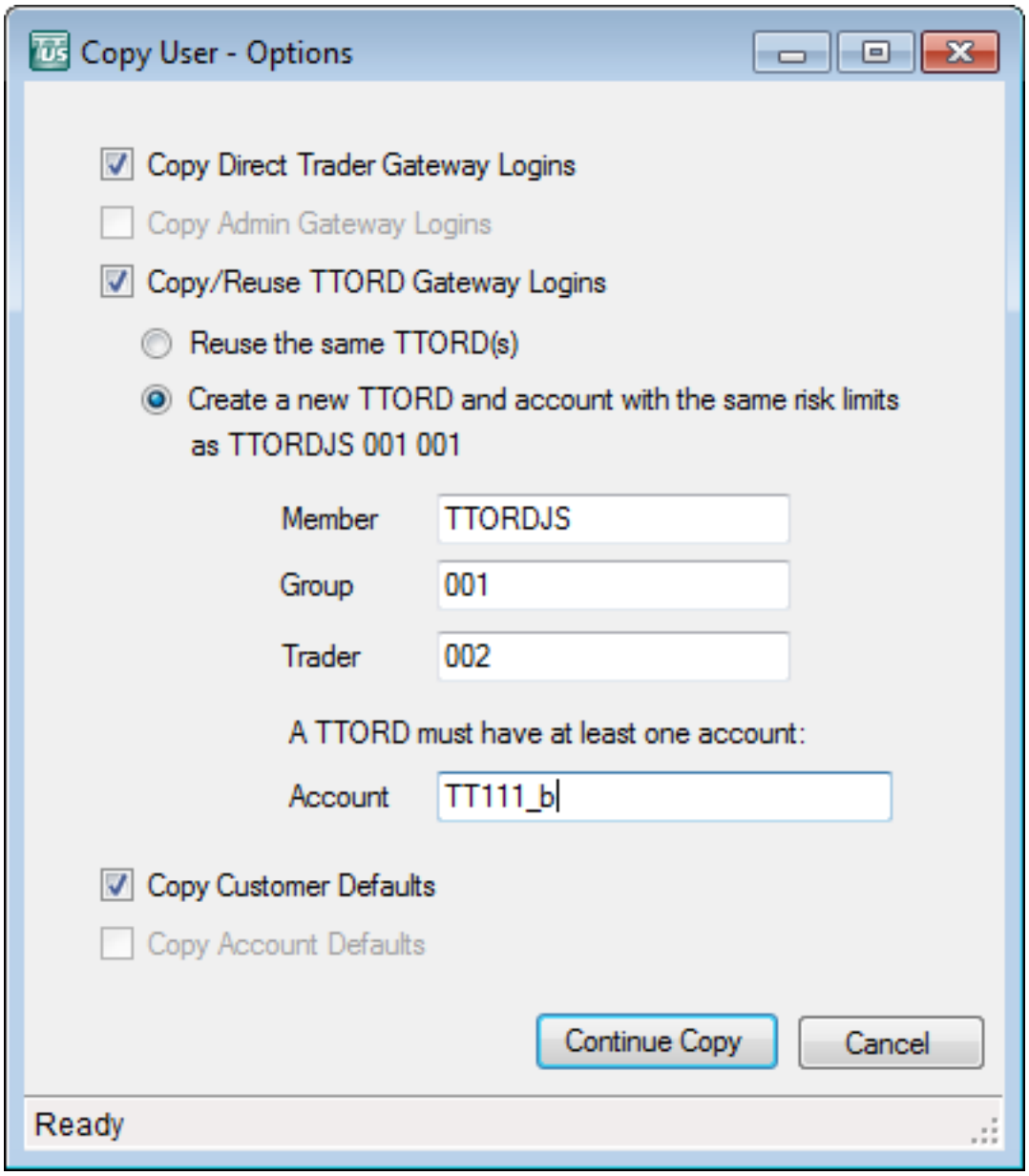
This topic describes how to copy a user record (including the TTORD).

To copy an existing user record:

1. Open a data grid window, for example, **Users**.
2. Select the record that you want to copy, and then click **Copy**. You can also right-click the record and select **Copy** from the context menu.



The **Copy User - Options** window appears. Any options that are not available for the currently selected user are disabled.



The **Copy User Options** are as follows:

- **Copy Direct Trader Gateway Logins**: If you are copying a user with direct trader gateway logins, check this option to copy the direct trader gateway logins.
- **Copy Admin Gateway Logins**: If you are copying a user with admin gateway logins, check this option to copy the admin gateway logins.
- **Copy TTORD Gateway Logins**: If you are copying a user with TTORD gateway logins, check this option to copy the TTORD gateway logins.

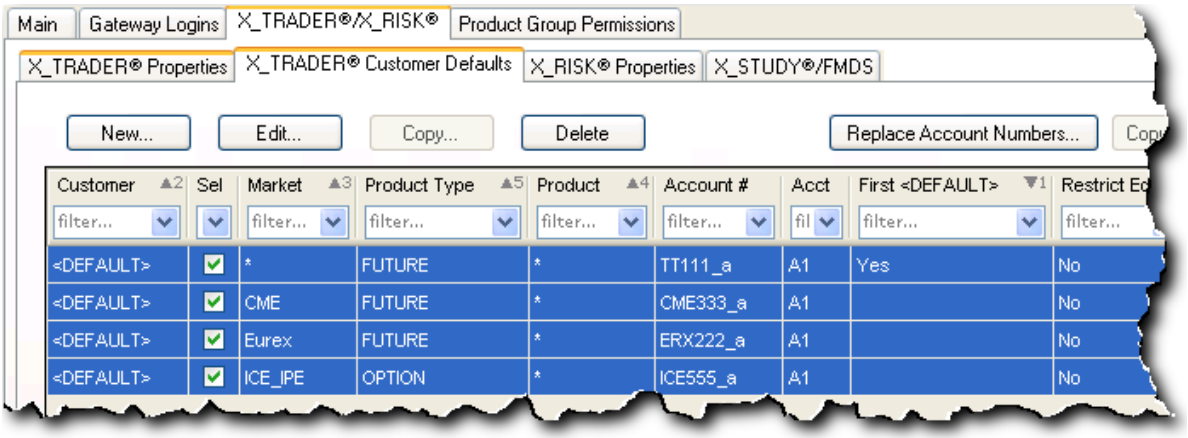
Note: If the user is assigned multiple TTORDs, you can copy the TTORDs as they are, but the option to create a new TTORD with the same credit and product limited is disabled.

  - To use the same TTORD, select **Copy TTORDs as they are**.
  - To create a new TTORD that has the same credit and product limits, select **Create a new TTORD with the same credit and Product Limits**, enter a new **Member**, **Group**, and **Trader**, and then enter new or unused **Account**.
- **Copy Customer Defaults**: Copy the customer defaults to the new user.
- **Copy Account Defaults**: Copy the account defaults to the new user.

3. Select the options as needed and then click **Continue Copy**.
4. TT User Setup copies the user based on the selected options and opens the **New User** window.

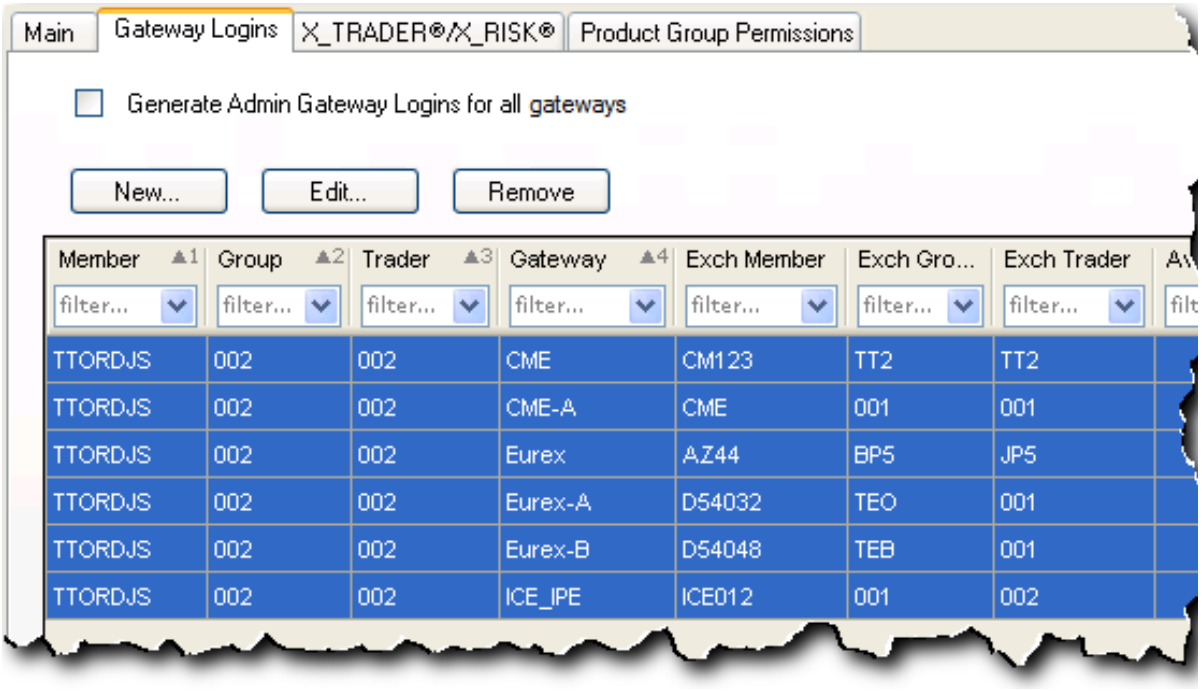
  - On the **Main** tab, enter **Login** information for the new user and edit any other user specific settings (like **Contact** and **User-Level Risk** settings).
  - The X_TRADER Customer Defaults tab is populated with any copied customer defaults.

If needed, use **the Replace Account Numbers** button to assign new account numbers to



the customer defaults. Refer to “Creating and Managing X_TRADER Customer Defaults” on page 73 if needed.

  - The **Gateway Login** tab is populated with any copied gateway logins.



Edit the gateway logins as needed.

Note: If you copied any TTORDs, remember to edit the gateway login and update the Account numbers if needed.

- Edit the settings on the remaining tabs as needed. When you are finished, click **Save**.

You have successfully created a new user by copying an existing user.

User Administration: X_TRADER or X_RISK Users

Creating and Editing X_TRADER or X_RISK Users

To create an X_TRADER or X_RISK user, complete the following topics:

- “Applying Basic User Properties” on page 69
- “Applying X_TRADER Properties” on page 72
- “Applying X_RISK Properties” on page 73
- “Creating and Managing X_TRADER Customer Defaults” on page 73
- “Configuring X_STUDY and FMDS” on page 80
- “Creating a New Gateway Login through the Users Window” on page 82
- “Generating a Gateway Login for all Gateways” on page 83
- “Assigning Gateway Logins to a User Through the Users Window” on page 83
- “Allowing or Blocking Product Groups” on page 84

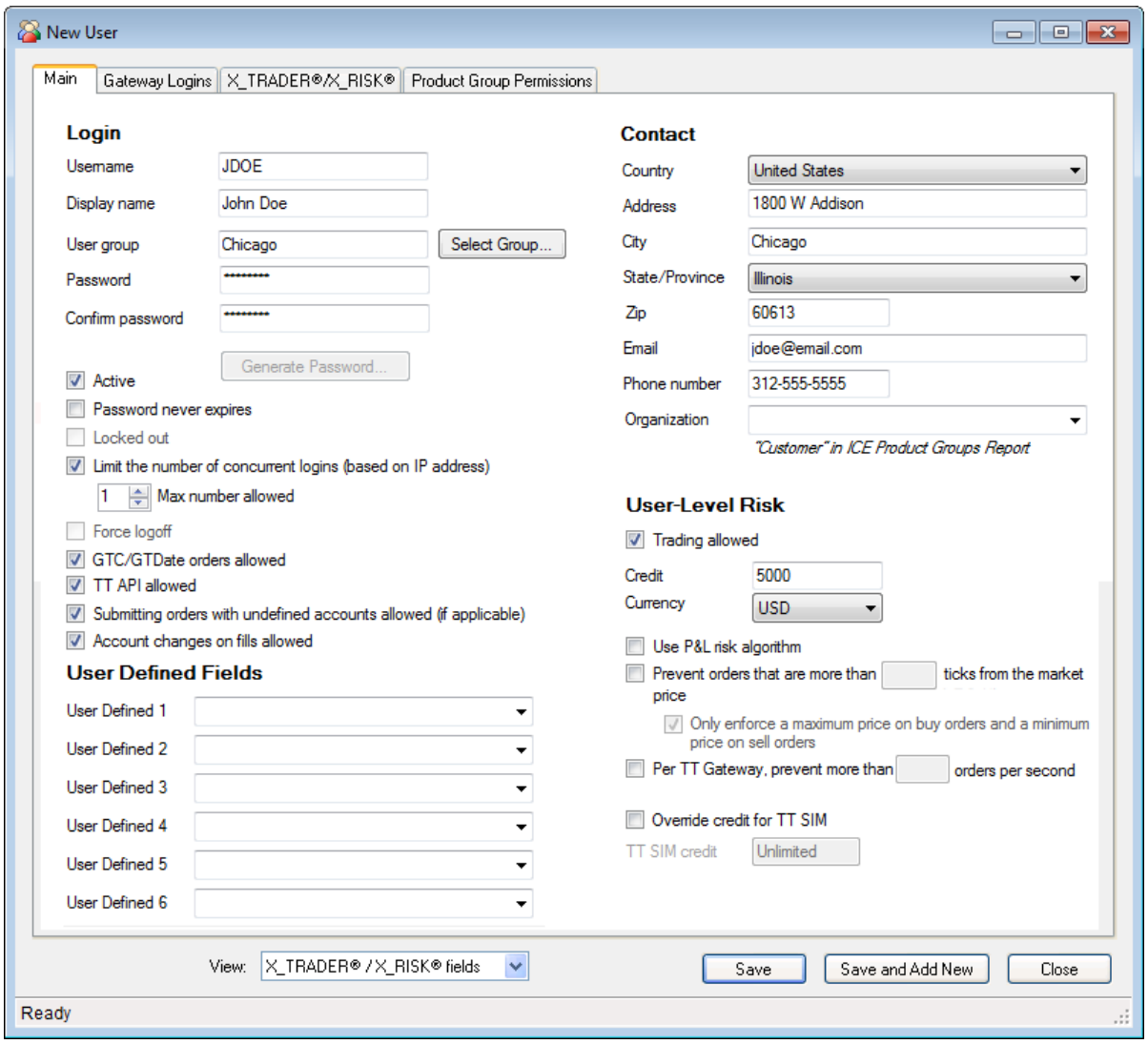
Applying Basic User Properties

Edit the user properties using the **Main** tab on the **New User** or **Edit User** window.

The procedures in this topic describe how to create a new **X_TRADER** or X_RISK user, but they apply to editing or copying existing users as well. Refer to the “Creating, Editing, and Deleting Records” on page 25 topic for other methods you can use to create or edit users.

To create an X_TRADER or X_RISK user and apply the general user properties:

1. From the **User Admin** menu, select **Users**.
2. Select **X_TRADER/X_RISK fields** from the **New User View** drop-down.
3. Click **New User**.
4. On the **Main** tab, enter the user's **Login** and **Contact** information as needed. Refer to the “New User and Edit User Window Fields” on page 41 topic for descriptions of each field.



Note: If TT User Setup lists a version number after a field (e.g., XT 7.8), then the field or feature only applies to that version and later of **X_TRADER** or FIX Adapter.

5. Leave the **Active** option checked if this user should be able to log in.
6. Set the password expiration and concurrent login settings as needed.
7. To allow Good Till Cancel and Good Till Date orders, leave the **GTC/GTDate orders allowed** setting enabled.
8. Configure whether or not the gateways will immediately reject orders submitted with an account that is not defined in TT User Setup, or whether the gateways will allow undefined accounts as long as it is permitted by the customer default settings. Check the **Submitting orders with undefined accounts allowed** option to allow undefined accounts, or uncheck the option to prohibit undefined accounts.

9. Leave the **Account changes on fills allowed** option unchecked to prevent the user from updating the account number on a fill. If the user should not be prevented from updating the account number on a fill, check the **Account changes on fills allowed** option.

   Note: When applying account-based risk checking, TT does not recommend checking the **Account changes on fills allowed option** until this user is using X_TRADER 7.17 or later. If a user with a pre-7.17 version of X_TRADER is allowed to change an account on a fill, the account number on the fill will not be updated in all TT products (including the gateways where account-based risk checking is done). This could lead to discrepancies between what is displayed in client applications and how risk is actually being calculated.

   Note: When the **Account changes on fills** allowed option is checked, users with X_TRADER 7.17 or later can modify the account on a fill, and this update will be processed as a part of account-based risk on the gateways. Note that no risk check actually takes place on the modification; therefore changing the account could cause an account to go over its limits. However, any subsequent orders will be risk checked based on the modified fills.

10. Enter any **User Defined** fields, as needed.
11. In the **User-Level Risk** section:
    1. Leave the **Trading allowed** option checked if the **X_TRADER** user should be able to trade. Additionally, set a **Credit** limit and the **Currency**. Enter 0 to reset the credit to **unlimited**.

       Note: The **Trading Allowed** option must be checked for any user that will add, modify, or delete orders. This means that non-tradable administrator logins (e.g. TTADMXXX100 or TTORDTSXXXMGR) must have **Trading Allowed** option checked to delete orders, even though they are unable to trade.

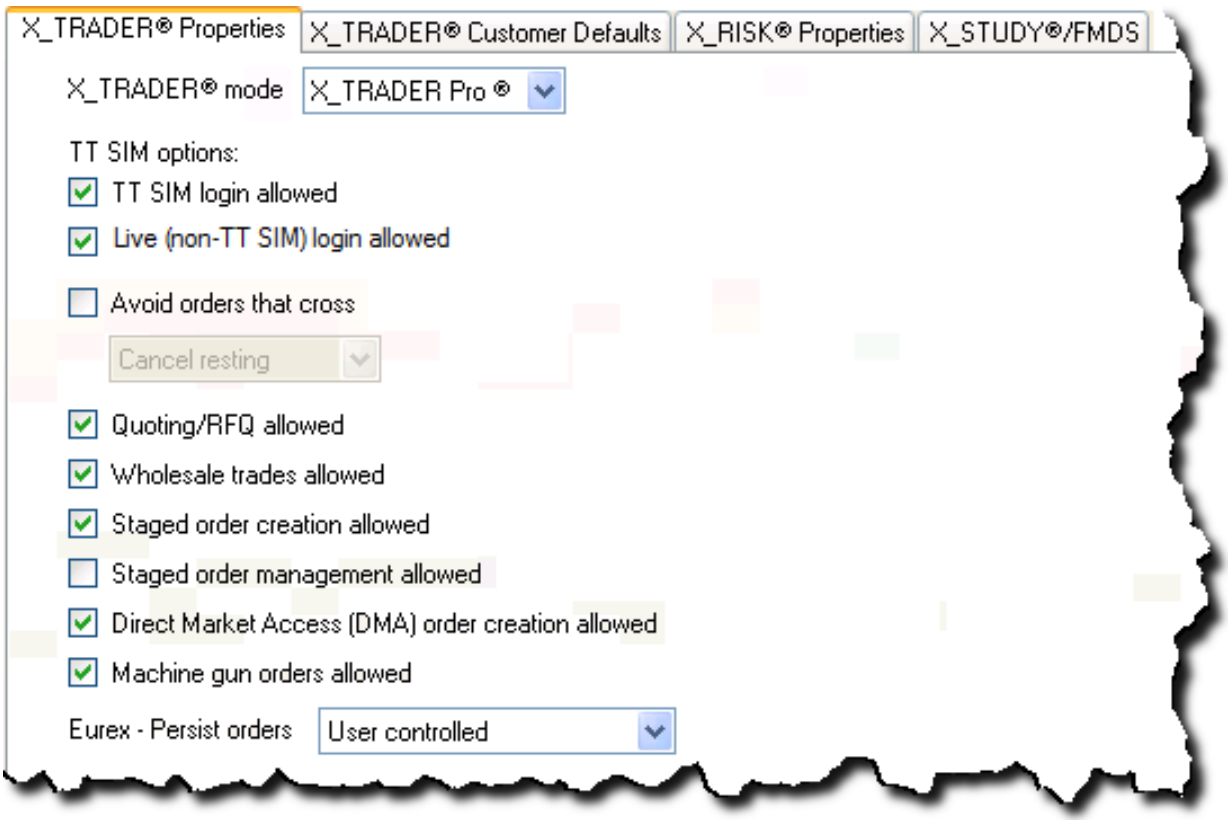
    2. To use the P&L risk algorithm to risk check this user, check the **Use P&L risk algorithm** option; the **P/L based on** setting in X_TRADER defaults to *Risk Algorithm* and is uneditable. To use the Last Traded Price for risk checking, uncheck the **Use P&L risk algorithm** option; the **P/L based on** setting in X_TRADER remains editable.
    3. To configure how far from the market price a user may enter an order (in ticks), check the **Prevent orders that are more than X ticks...** checkbox and enter the number of ticks. If you only want to enforce this setting for buy orders above the limit and sell orders below the market check the **Only enforce...** checkbox. For more information about pre-trade price controls, refer to “Setting Pre-Trade Price Controls” on page 187.
    4. To prevent more than a specific number of orders per second, check the **Per TT Gateway, prevent more than...** checkbox and enter the number of orders per second. For more information about pre-trade order throughput controls, refer to “Setting Order Throughput Controls” on page 191.
    5. To set a different user profile credit limit for TT SIM trading, check the **Override credit for TT SIM** checkbox and then enter a new credit limit in the **TT SIM credit** field. Enter 0 to reset the credit to **unlimited**.

12. Click **Save** and then continue to the next topic, “Applying X_TRADER Properties” on page 72.

Applying X_TRADER Properties

To apply X_TRADER Properties:

1. Click the **X_TRADER/X_RISK** tab and then click the **X_TRADER Properties** tab.



2. From the **X_TRADER mode** drop-down, select whether the user's **X_TRADER** application opens as **X_TRADER** or **X_TRADER** Pro.

   Note: When the trader is using TT SIM mode, TTUS always sends the X_TRADER mode as X_TRADER PRO.

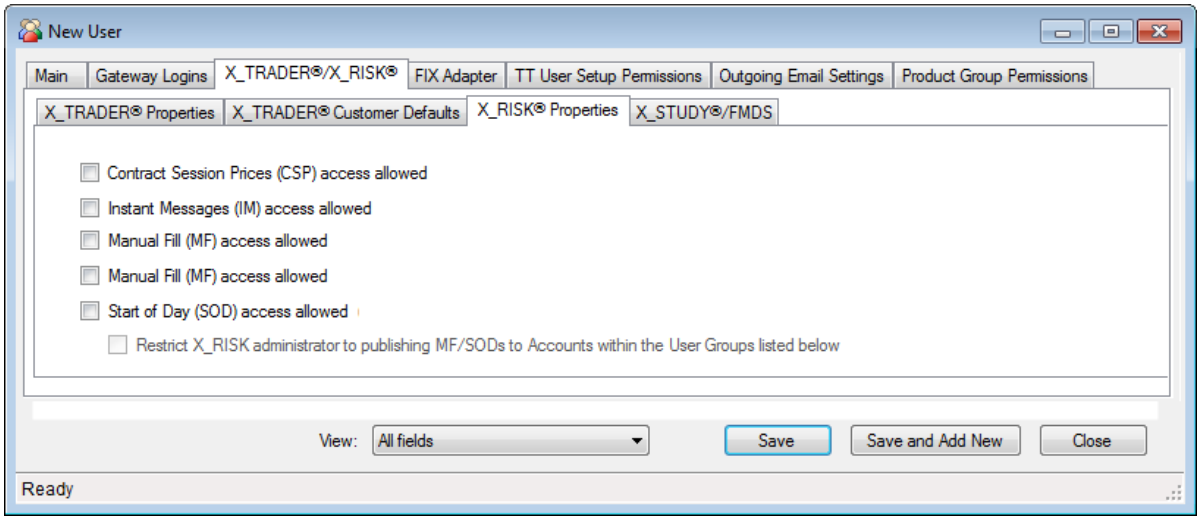
3. Use the remaining fields on this tab to specify behavior when orders cross, to allow access to the **X_TRADER**'s quoting functionality, to enable the wholesale trading functionality, and to specify the users permissions for creating staged orders, managing staged orders, and creating DMA orders. Refer to the “New User and Edit User Window Fields” on page 41 topic for descriptions of each field.
4. Click **Save** and then continue to the next procedure to apply X_RISK properties.

Applying X_RISK Properties

The X_RISK Properties determine whether to allow a user to use manual fill, start of day record, contract session price, and send message functionality in X_RISK.

To apply X_RISK Properties:

1. From the **X_TRADER/X_RISK** tab, click the **X_RISK Properties** tab.



   Note: This feature works only with compatible versions of X_RISK (7.4.2 or later).

2. Check the desired options. Refer to the X_RISK Help and the "New User and Edit User Window Fields" on page 41 topic for descriptions of each option.
3. Check the **Contract Session Prices (CSP) access allowed**, **Instant Messages (IM) access allowed**, **Manual Fill (MF) access allowed**, and **Start of Day (SOD) access allowed** options to enable CSP, IM, MF, and/or SOD access in X_RISK as needed.
4. If **Manual Fill (MF) access allowed** or **Start of Day (SOD) access allowed** is checked, you can check the **Restrict X_RISK administrator to publishing...** option to restrict the administrator to publishing to accounts in specified user groups.
5. Click **Save** and then continue to the next topic, "Creating and Managing X_TRADER Customer Defaults" on page 73.

Creating and Managing X_TRADER Customer Defaults

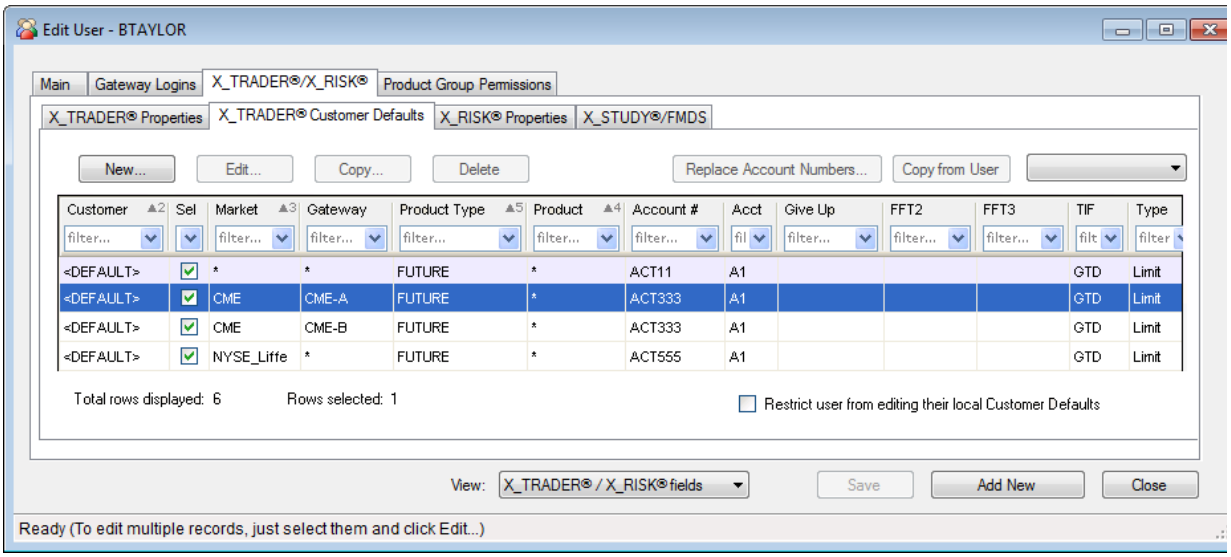
This section describes the following:

- "Customer Defaults Overview" on page 74
- "How Customer Defaults Appear in X_TRADER" on page 74
- "Creating a Customer Default" on page 75
- "Replacing an Account Number" on page 77

Customer Defaults Overview

Use the X_TRADER **Customer Defaults** window to create order templates **X_TRADER** applies to orders. By providing **X_TRADER** users with customer defaults, you limit the amount of data the traders have to enter to place a trade, thereby making the trading process faster and easier for the traders. You can create multiple customer default templates for each trader, and you can prevent traders from changing their own customer defaults.

You can access the **X_TRADER** customer defaults from the **X_TRADER** user's **X_TRADER/ X_RISK** tab, or by selecting **X_TRADER Customer Defaults** from the **User Admin** menu. Both options are similar, except that you can create and edit customer defaults for multiple users from the **Customer Defaults** window.



How Customer Defaults Appear in X_TRADER

A TT User Setup administrator can configure customer defaults for traders using **X_TRADER** 7.6 or later. **X_TRADER** receives the customer defaults, which the trader may be required to use, depending on the **Restrict user from editing their local Customer Defaults** setting.

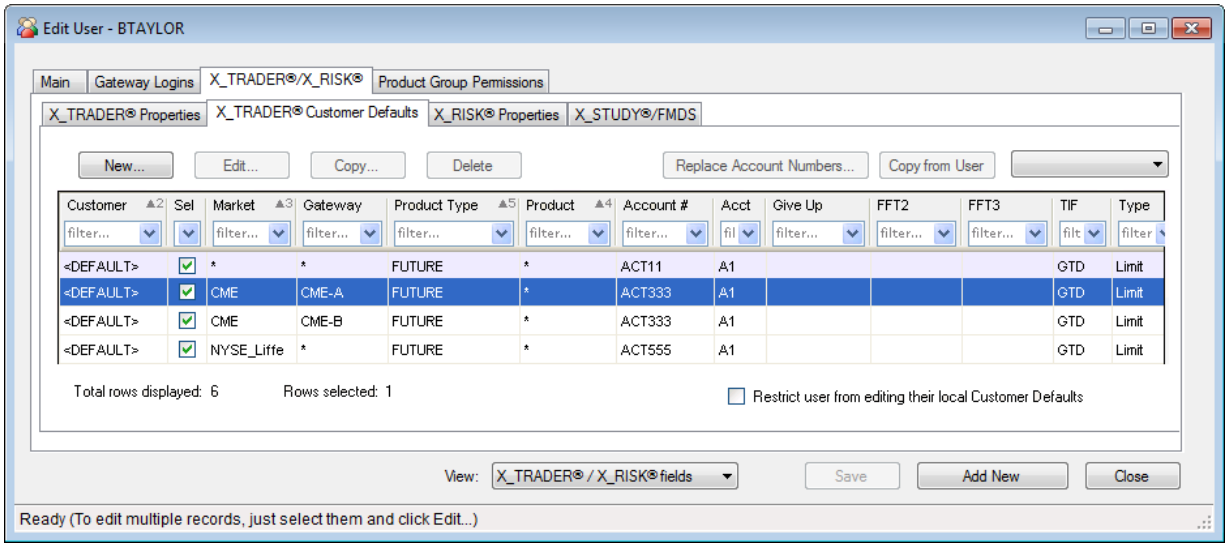
- When you check the **Restrict user from editing their local Customer Defaults** option, the trader must use the configured customer default(s).
- When you uncheck the **Restrict user from editing their local Customer Defaults** option, then the trader can choose to use the configured customer default(s) by checking the **Sel** option in the **X_TRADER Customer Defaults** window.

Note: TT User Setup automatically assigns users <DEFAULT> customer default entry in TT User Setup. If you do not edit the <DEFAULT>customer default record, and if you do not create any other customer defaults, **X_TRADER** does not use the TT User Setup's customer defaults for that user. If you

later edit the <DEFAULT>customer default or add a new customer default, **X_TRADER** begins picking up customer defaults from TT User Setup after it is restarted.

Assigned customer defaults determine the defaults applied to a trader's orders. For example, a selected user whose **Customer** = <DEFAULT>, **Market** = LIFFE, and **Account #** = ACT555 means that when the <DEFAULT> user trades on LIFFE and has only his <DEFAULT> Customer selected (that could be the only customer he has), the trader uses account number ACT555.

When one user has multiple customer default records with the same **Customer** value, **X_TRADER** uses the record that best matches a trader's transaction. In the following example, the user has five customer default records that all have the same **Customer** name and trade Futures **Product Types** in the CME **Market**. If the user trades on the CME-A flavored **Gateway**, the highlighted customer default row would be the best match and therefore only that record would be applied.



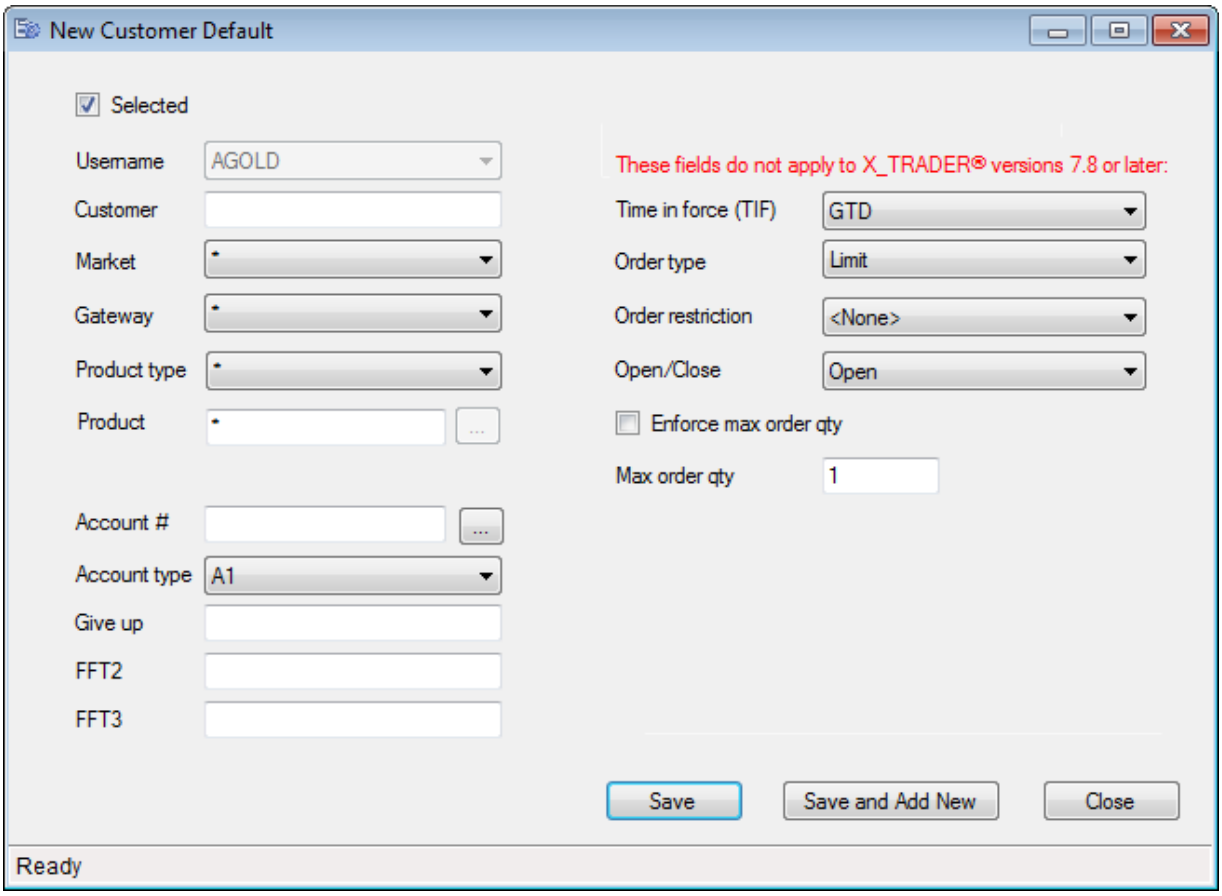
When one user has multiple customer default records with different customer names, **X_TRADER** allows the user to choose a customer before entering an order. After the user chooses a customer, **X_TRADER** chooses the best matching customer default per that customer. For the most control over a traders customer defaults, use the same customer setting for all of a trader's customer defaults and check the **Restrict user from editing their local Customer Defaults** option.

Creating a Customer Default

To create a customer default:

1. From the **X_TRADER Customer Defaults** tab or the **Customer Defaults** window, click **New**.

   The **New Customer Default** window appears.



2. Enter the **Customer** name for this default and select the **Market**, **Gateway**, **Product type**, and **Product** defaults that this customer default uses. These options together make up the key for this record. Two records cannot have the same key.
3. Enter an **Account** number or click the browse button to select an account number. If you enter an account that does not exist, TT User Setup creates it.
4. Select the **Account type** and then enter the **Give up** clearing member code and the free-form text fields (**FFT2** and **FFT3**) .
5. Select the **Time in force** for orders, the **Order type**, **Order restriction** (if any), and the type of position (**Open/Close/FIFO**).
6. If you want to set a maximum quantity allowed per trade, check the **Enforce max order qty** option and then enter an order quantity in the **Max order qty** field. **Max order qty** is typically used to prevent traders from accidentally entering too large of an order (e.g. 10000 instead of 1000).

   Note: the **Time in force**, **Order type**, **Order restriction**, **Open/Close**, **Enforce max order qty**, and **Max order qty** options are not available in the X_TRADER customer defaults starting with X_TRADER 7.8. These options are moved to the X_TRADER order options.

7. Click **Save** and then **Close**.

   The new customer default appears in both the **Edit User** and **Customer Default** windows.

   Note: Changes do not take affect until the trader starts X_TRADER.

8. Continue to the next procedure to configure X_STUDY and FMDS settings.

   Note: You can choose to lock down customer defaults and force a trader to use only the defaults set up by a TT User Setup administrator by checking the **Restrict user from editing their local Customer Defaults** option, which is available on the **Users** window's **X_TRADER Customer Defaults** tab.

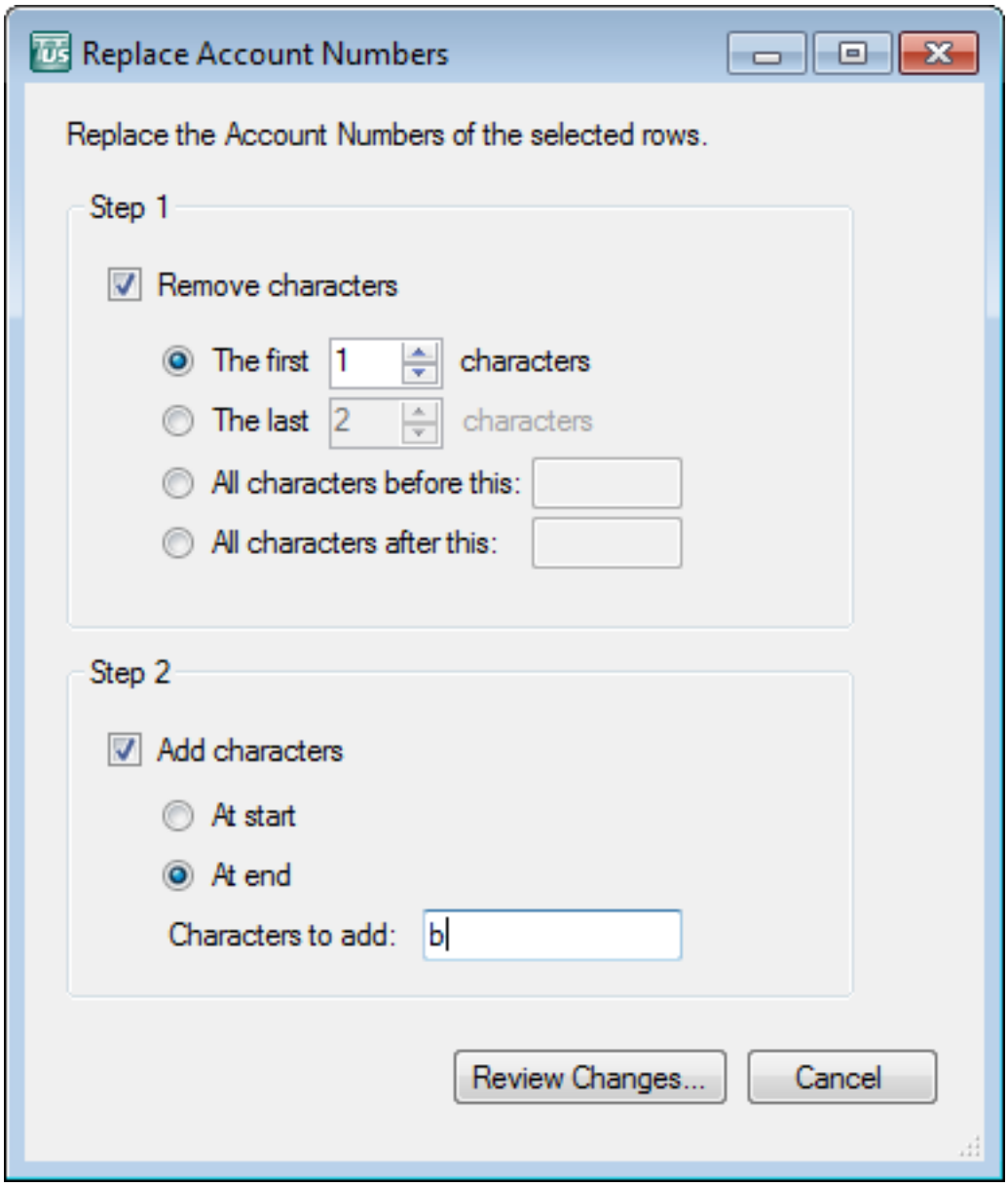
Replacing an Account Number

Use this procedure to assign a new account to one or more customer defaults. The old accounts are unassigned but not deleted, and then the new accounts are created (if needed) and assigned to the selected customer defaults.

To replace an account number in a customer default:

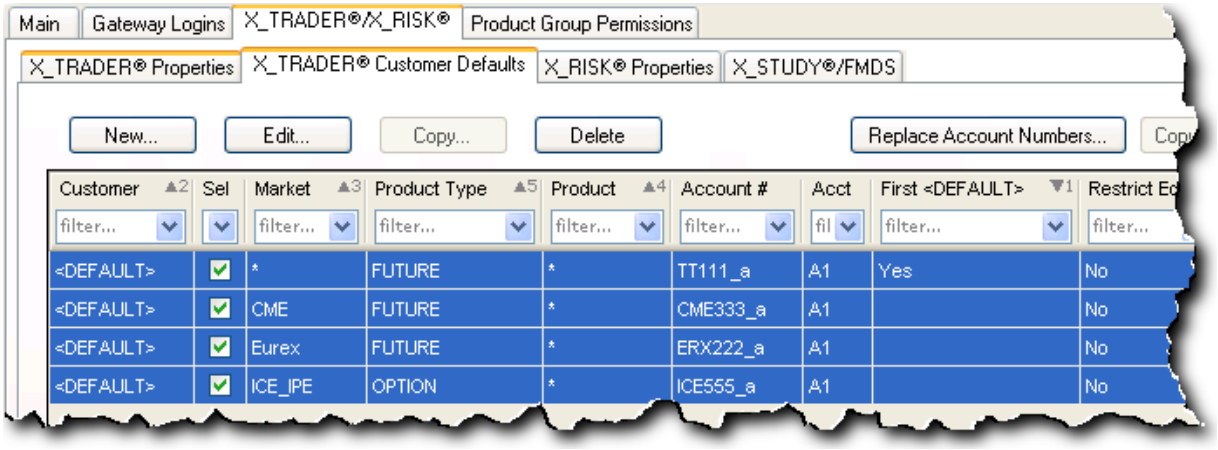
1. From the **Customer Defaults** window, click **Replace Account Numbers**.

   The **Replace Account Numbers** window appears.



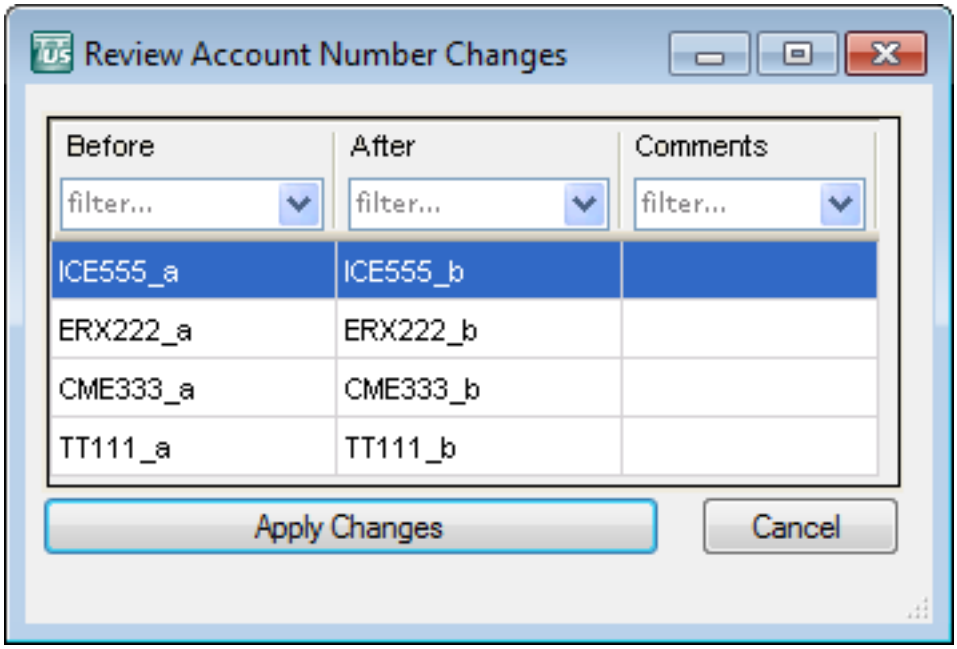
2. Configure the account replacement rules to determine how the existing account numbers will be replaced.
   - In the **Step 1**section, select the characters to remove, if any. You can remove the first n characters, the last n characters, or all characters before or after a specified set of characters.
   - In the **Step 2** section, enter the characters to add, if any. You can add characters to the start or end of the account.

   Example: When creating a new user by copying an existing user account (refer to “Copying Users” on page 64), the account numbers in the customer defaults are also copied.



However, the account numbers for the new user end in **_b** instead of **_a**.
In this case you would remove the last character and then add the letter **b** at the end.

3. Click **Review Changes**. The **Review Account Number Changes** window appears.



4. Click **Apply Changes**.

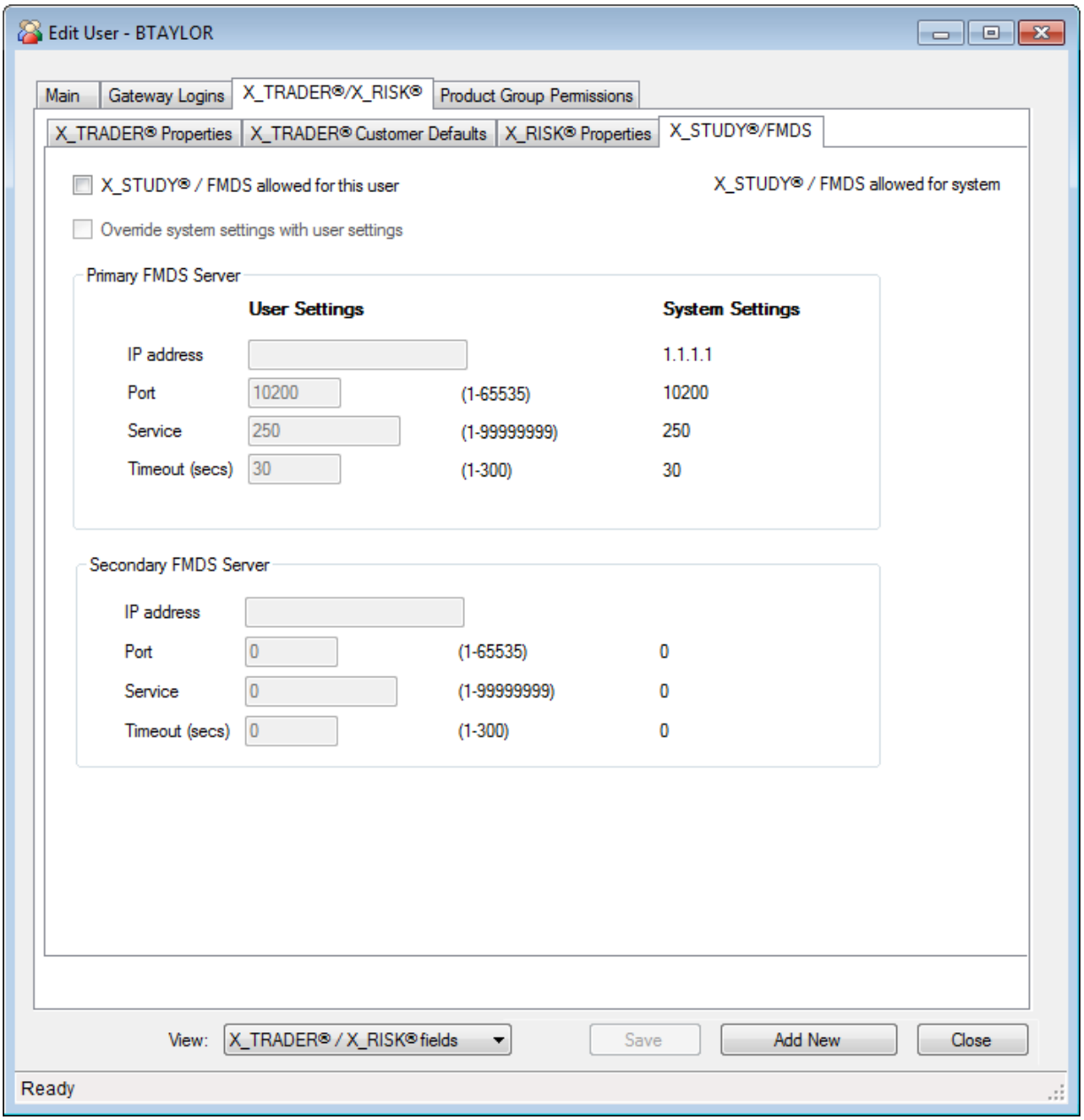
The account numbers are replaced.

Configuring X_STUDY and FMDS

This topic describes how to enable and configure the X_STUDY and FMDS settings per user. For information about enabling and configuring the X_STUDY and FMDS settings for the entire system, refer to “Enabling and Configuring X_STUDY and FMDS System Settings” on page 233.

To enable X_STUDY/FMDS functionality for a user:

1. From a user's **X_TRADER/X_RISK** tab, click the **X_STUDY/FMDS** tab.



Note: This feature works only with **X_TRADER** 7.7.3 / X_STUDY 7.3.0 or later.

2. If X_STUDY is allowed for the system, enable or disable X_STUDY/FMDS for this user. You can also select whether to override the FMDS system settings with settings you configure here. Refer to the "New User and Edit User Window Fields" on page 41 topic for descriptions of each field.

   Note: To enable X_STUDY/FMDS for the system, refer to the "Enabling and Configuring X_STUDY and FMDS System Settings" on page 233.

3. When you are finished, click **Save** and continue to the next topic, "Creating a New Gateway Login through the Users Window" on page 82.

Creating a New Gateway Login through the Users Window

Gateway logins are the *MemberGroupTrader* IDs used to log into TT Gateways. Each gateway login can have its own account numbers and risk limits.

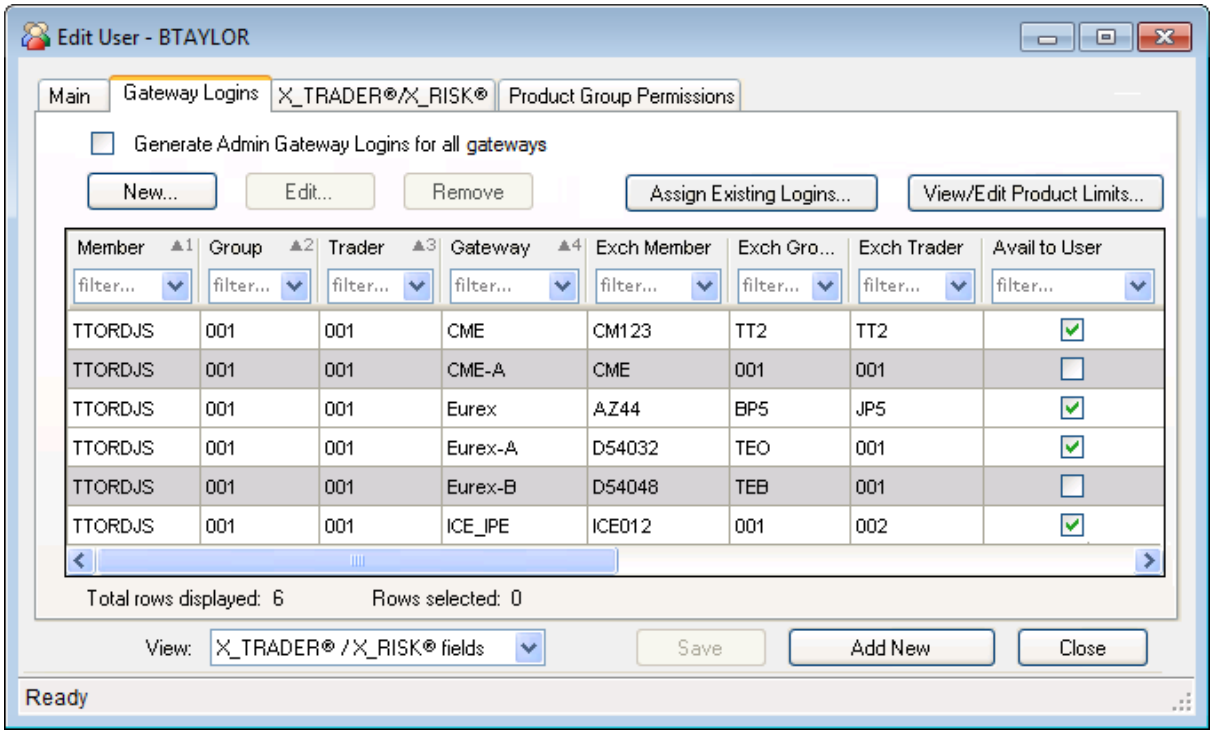
Note: For more information about configuring Gateways Logins, refer to the *User Login and Risk Administration Reference Manual*.

When creating a gateway login through the **Gateway Login** window, you must manually assign the gateway login to a user. However, when created via the **Users** window, the gateway login is automatically assigned to the user you are editing or creating.

Note: For a detailed description on creating a gateway login through the **Gateway Logins** window, refer to the "Creating a New Gateway Login" on page 135 topic.

To create a new gateway login using the Users window:

1. Access the **Gateway Logins** tab for an **X_TRADER** user.



2. Leave the **Generate Admin Gateway Logins for all gateways** option unchecked. To use this option, refer to "Generating a Gateway Login for all Gateways" on page 83.
3. To create a new gateway login, click **New**. You can also edit an existing login by selecting it and clicking **Edit**.
4. Follow the procedures in the "Assigning the MemberGroupTrader ID" on page 135 topic, starting with step 2.

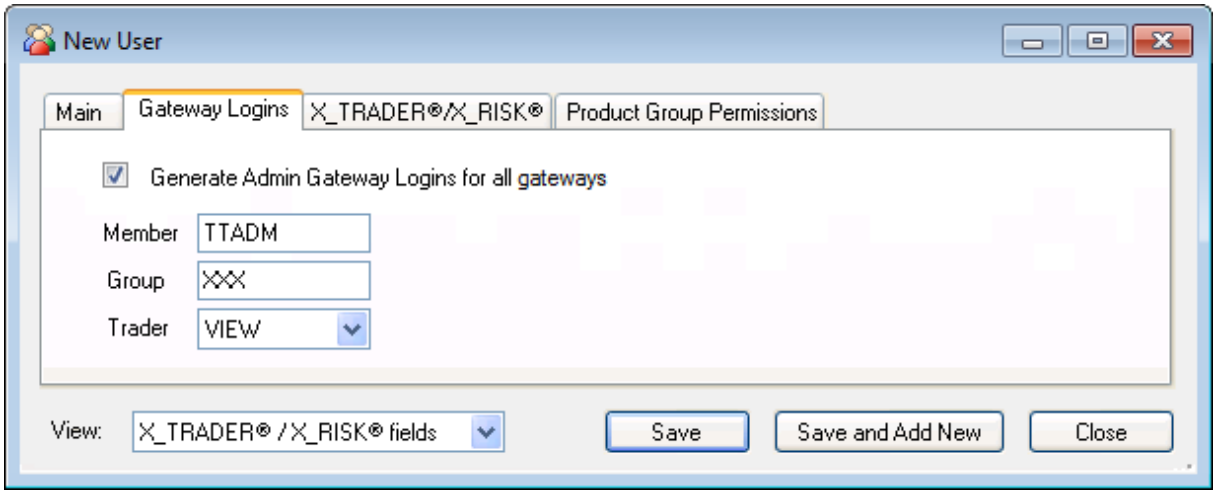
Generating a Gateway Login for all Gateways

In some instances, you may want to configure an admin user to connect to all gateways. To do this, you can create a gateway login for each gateway and assign the gateway logins to the admin user, or you can use the **Generate Admin Gateway Logins for all gateways** feature one time. This feature allows you to add additional gateways to your trading environment without having to update the administrative user. This is especially helpful when setting up, for example, a Username for your Historical Fill Server. Each time your HFS starts up, it will connect to all available gateways. You won't need to reconfigure your HFS each time a new gateway is added.

To create an administrator gateway login that will be used for all gateways:

1. Access the **Gateway Logins** tab for an **X_TRADER** user.
2. Check the **Generate Admin Gateway Logins for all Gateways** option.

   The Gateway Logins table is replaced with the Member/Group/Trader fields.



   Note: When you use the **Generate Admin Gateway Logins for all gateways** option, TT User Setup removes any existing gateway logins for this user.

3. Enter an administrator gateway login into the Member/Group/Trader fields (e.g. TTADM XXX VIEW, CME04 XXX MGR, TTORDAB 001 VIEW, etc.). For more information about administrator gateway logins, refer to the **Administrator Logins** section in the *TT User Login and Risk Administration* guide.

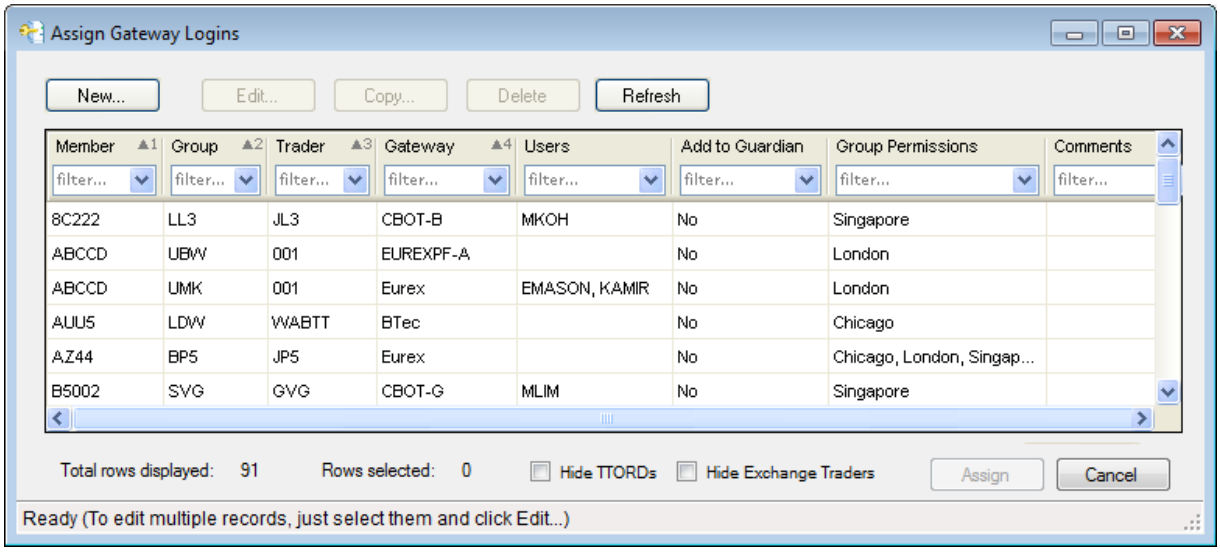
Assigning Gateway Logins to a User Through the Users Window

If a gateway login already exists, you can assign it to the user. The **Assign Existing Logins** button opens a **Gateway Logins** window that displays a list of all the gateway logins that exist, but are not currently assigned to the user.

To assign Gateway Logins to a selected user:

1. Access the **Gateway Logins** tab for an **X_TRADER** user and then click **Assign Existing Logins**.

   The **Assign Gateway Logins** window appears listing the gateway logins currently not assigned to the selected user.



   Note: To display only exchange traders, check the **Hide TTORDs** option.

2. Select one or more rows and then click **Assign**.

   Note: Click **New** to create a new gateway login. You can assign any logins you create to the user.

   The login is assigned to the selected user(s).

3. Click **Save**.

Allowing or Blocking Product Groups

You can allow or block any of the listed product groups for this user. For more information refer to the “Allowing or Blocking Product Groups for a FIX Adapter User” on page 112 topic.

Note: When a new user is created, all product groups are allowed by default. When a new product group or market is added, it is allowed for all users by default. The administrator must manually block the product groups for the appropriate users.

User Administration: Administrative Users

Creating and Editing Administrative Users

TT User Setup supports the following administrative users who have varying levels of permissions to create, manage, and view users.

- **None:** Reserved for a user who cannot log into TT User Setup. This is the default setting.
- **Super Administrator:** Provides complete access to TT User Setup functionality. A user with Super Administrator permissions has no restrictions in TT User Setup. Refer to "Creating a Super Administrator" on page 85.

  Note: Super Administrator permissions is the equivalent of having TT User Setup Access in a pre-7.2 version of TT User Setup.

- **Group Administrator:** Provides permission to view, edit, and create users, gateway logins, and accounts that exist in one of the user groups the administrator is designated to manage. A Group Administrator can manage multiple user groups, but can exist in a single user group only. Refer to "Creating a Group Administrator" on page 86.

  Note: An optional setting is available that limits a Group Administrator to creating TTORDs only.

- **Gateway Login Administrator:** Provides permission to manage one or more gateway logins. A user with Gateway Login Administrator permissions cannot edit users, but can assign gateway logins and gateway login attributes to users in a user group the administrator is designated to manage. Refer to "Creating a Gateway Login Administrator" on page 88.
- **Password Administrator:** Provides access to only unlock users and reset passwords for some user groups or all user groups, depending on the restrictions applied. Refer to "Creating a Password Administrator" on page 89.
- **View Only:** Provides permission to view any TT User Setup data window. A user with View Only permissions cannot edit data in any accessible window. Refer to "Creating a View Only User" on page 91.
- **Collect Log Files Only:** Provides permission to collect any log files in the trading environment, including log files containing sensitive trading information. This user cannot view or edit any user or system settings. Refer to "Creating a Collect Log Files Only User" on page 92.

Creating a Super Administrator

A Super Administrator can log into TT User Setup and have access to all functionality. users who had TT User Setup Access in a pre-7.2 version of TT User Setup automatically receive Super Administrator permissions.

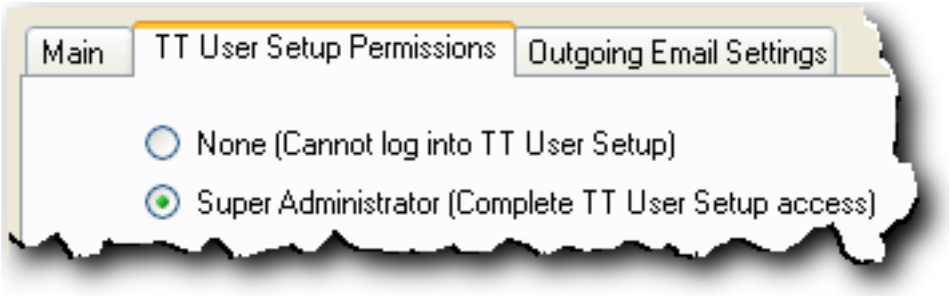
Note: Only a Super Administrator can access reports, audit trails, log files, and the **System Settings** window.

To create a Super Administrator:

1. From the **User Admin** menu, select **Users**.
2. Set the **New User View** to **TT User Setup Admin fields**.
3. Click **New**.

   Note: To give an existing user administrative privileges, select the user from the **Users** window and click **Edit**. You can then change the **View** to **TT User Setup Admin fields**.

4. On the **Main** tab, edit any **Login**, **Contact**, or **User Defined** fields as needed.
5. Click the **TT User Setup Permissions** tab.



6. Select the **Super Administrator** option and then click **Save**.
7. Skip to the "Configuring the Outgoing Email Settings" on page 93 topic.

Creating a Group Administrator

A Group Administrator can view, edit, and create users, gateway logins, and accounts that exist in one of the groups the administrator is designated to manage. A Group Administrator must be configured to manage at least one user group, and could potentially manage all of the user groups.

Depending on the options selected, the Group Administrator can manage gateway logins and create Direct Trader gateway logins..

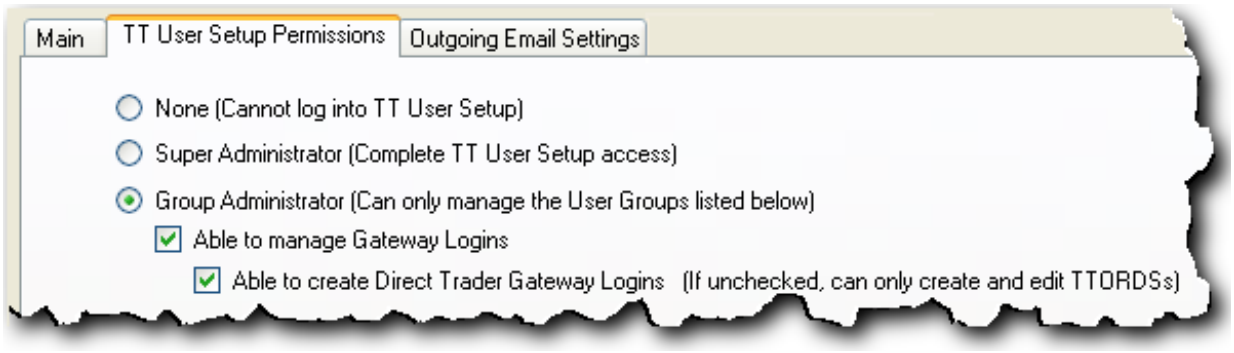
Note: Group Administrators cannot grant permissions they have not been granted themselves. For example, if the administrator does not have X_RISK Manual Fill Access, then the administrator cannot assign Manual Fill access to any other users in a user group he manages. Group administrators also cannot create a gateway login that shares an order book (identical Member and Group IDs) with a gateway login from another user group.

To create a Group Administrator:

1. From the **User Admin** menu, select **Users**.
2. Set the **New User View** to **TT User Setup Admin fields**.
3. Click **New**.

Note: To give an existing user administrative privileges, select the user from the **Users** window and click **Edit**. You can then change the **View** to **TT User Setup Admin fields**.

4. On the **Main** tab, edit any **Login**, **Contact**, or **User Defined** fields as needed.
5. Click the **TT User Setup Permissions** tab.

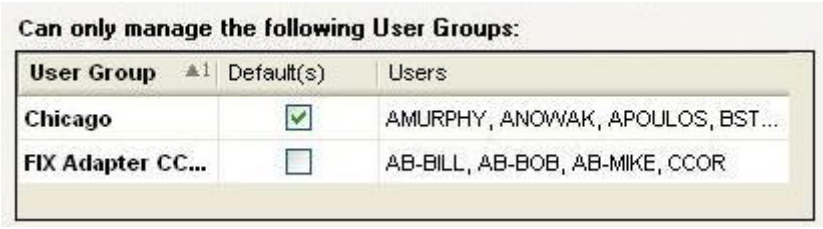


6. Select the **Group Administrator** option.
7. To allow this administrator to manage gateway logins, check the **Able to manage Gateway Logins** option.

   Note: When copying a user, a Group Administrator cannot copy the user's gateway login(s) unless the **Able to manage Gateway Logins** option is checked.

8. To allow this Group Administrator to create and edit Direct Trader gateway logins, check the **Able to create Direct Trader Gateway Logins** option. When the option is unchecked, the administrator cannot create or edit Direct Trader gateway logins, but can create and edit TTORDs.
9. At the bottom of the window, the **Available User Groups** list displays the user groups that you can assign to the administrator to manage. More than one administrator can manage the same group.
10. Using the transfer arrow buttons (>, >>, <, <<), move one or more user groups from the **Available User Groups** list to the **Can only manage the following User Group** list.
11. After adding groups to the list, check the **Default(s)** option to assign any users, gateway logins, or accounts created by this administrator to the checked user groups..

    Note: You must select at least one user group as the **Default** user group.



For example, if a user group named Chicago is selected as a **Default**, when the group administrator creates a gateway login, it will be automatically assigned to the Chicago user group.

12. Click **Save**.
13. Skip to the "Configuring the Outgoing Email Settings" on page 93 topic.

You successfully created a Group Administrator.

Creating a Gateway Login Administrator

A Gateway Login Administrator can manage gateway logins by assigning them and their attributes to various users in user groups the administrator is designated to manage.

To create a Gateway Login Administrator:

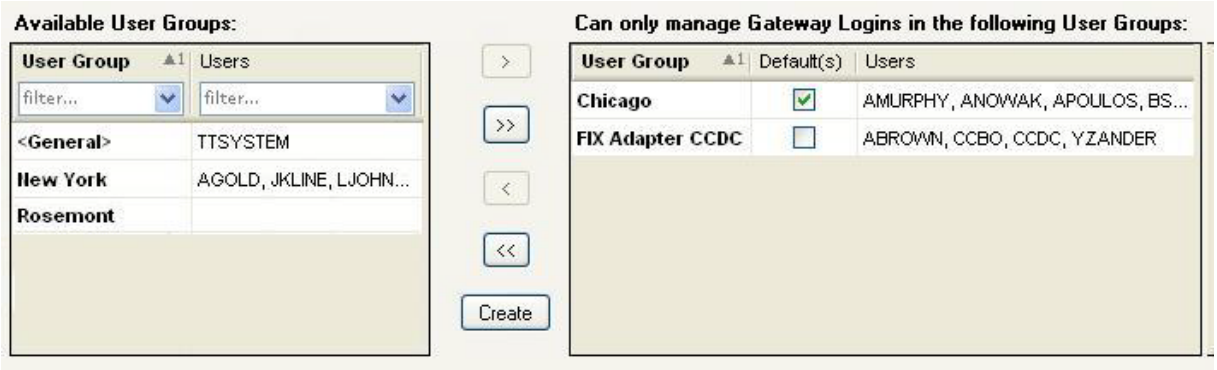
1. From the **User Admin** menu, select **Users**.
2. Set the **New User View** to **TT User Setup Admin fields**.
3. Click **New**.

   Note: To give an existing user administrative privileges, select the user from the **Users** window and click **Edit**. You can then change the **View** to **TT User Setup Admin fields**.

4. On the **Main** tab, edit any **Login**, **Contact**, or **User Defined** fields as needed.
5. Click the **TT User Setup Permissions** tab.
6. Select the **Gateway Login Administrator** option.

7. To allow this administrator to manage each gateway login in every available user group, uncheck the **Restrict Gateway Login Administrator to User Groups listed below** option.
8. To restrict this administrator to managing specific user groups, check the **Restrict Gateway Login Administrator to User Groups listed below** option.

   A list of the available user groups appears.



9. From the **Available User Groups** list, click to select the user group that you want assigned to the Gateway Login Administrator. If the group does not exist, click the **Create** button and add it.

   Note: Press the **Ctrl** key to select multiple groups from the list.

10. Using the transfer arrow buttons (>, >>, <, <<), move one or more user group from the **Available User Groups** list to the **Can only manage Gateway Logins in the following User Groups** list.
11. After you have added groups to the **Can only manage Gateway Logins in the following User Groups** list, check the **Default(s)** option to assign this group to any gateway logins created by this administrator.
12. Click **Save** .

Creating a Password Administrator

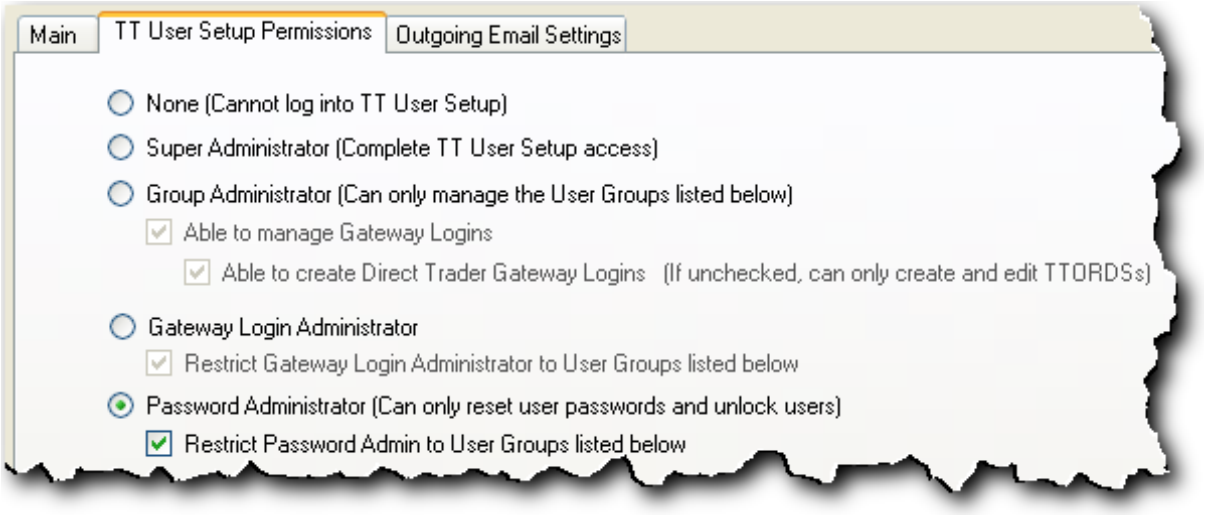
A Password Administrator can “Unlocking Users”and “Resetting a User Password”for some user groups or all user groups. A Password Administrator can only access the **Unlock Users/Reset Passwords** window.

To create a Password Administrator:

1. From the **User Admin** menu, select **Users**.
2. Set the **New User View** to **TT User Setup Admin fields**.
3. Click **New**.

   Note: To give an existing user administrative privileges, select the user from the **Users** window and click **Edit**. You can then change the **View** to **TT User Setup Admin fields**.

4. On the **Main** tab, edit any **Login**, **Contact**, or **User Defined** fields as needed.
5. Click the **TT User Setup Permissions** tab.
6. Select the **Password Administrator** option.



7. To allow this administrator to manage all passwords in all available user groups, uncheck the **Restrict Password Admin to User Groups listed below** option.
8. To restrict this administrator to managing specific user groups, check the **Restrict Password Admin to User Groups listed below** option.

   A list of the available user groups appears.

9. From the **Available User Groups** list, click to select the user group that you want assigned to the Password Administrator. If the group does not exist, click **Create** and add it.

   Note: Press the Ctrl key to select multiple groups from the list.

10. Using the transfer arrow buttons (>, >>, <, <<), move one or more user group from the **Available User Groups** list to the **Can only see Users in the following User Groups** list.

    Note: A Password Administrator must be configured to manage at least one user group.

11. Click **Save**.
12. Skip to the "Configuring the Outgoing Email Settings" topic.

Creating a View Only User

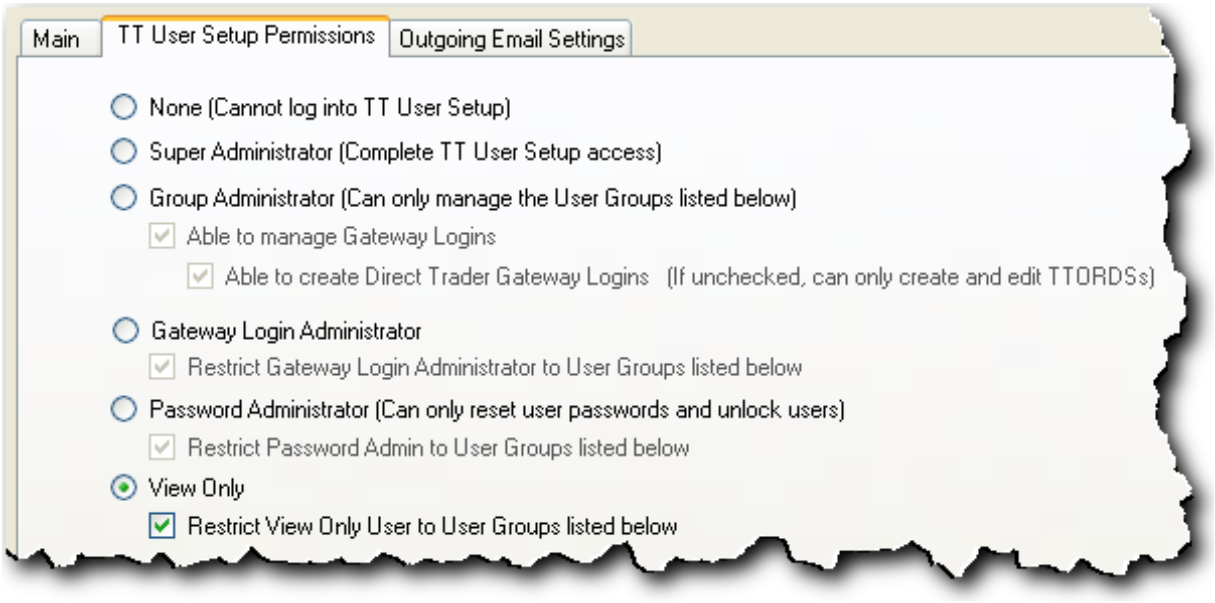
A view only user can view but not edit data in any TT User Setup data window.

To create a View Only user:

1. From the **User Admin** menu, select **Users**.
2. Set the **New User View** to **TT User Setup Admin fields**.
3. Click **New**.

   Note: To give an existing user administrative privileges, select the user from the **Users** window and click **Edit**. You can then change the **View** to **TT User Setup Admin fields**.

4. On the **Main** tab, edit any **Login**, **Contact**, or **User Defined** fields as needed.
5. Click the **TT User Setup Permissions** tab.
6. Select the **View Only** option.



7. To allow this user to view all users in all available user groups, uncheck the **Restrict View Only User to User Groups listed below** option.
8. To restrict this administrator to viewing specific user groups, check the **Restrict View Only User to User Groups listed below** option.
9. From the **Available User Groups** list, click to select the user group that you want assigned to the View Only user. If the group does not exist, click **Create** and add it.

   Note: Press the **Ctrl** key to select multiple groups from the list.

10. Using the transfer arrow buttons (>, >>, <, <<), move one or more user group from the **Available User Groups** list to the **Can only see Users in the following User Groups** list.
11. Click **Save**.

Creating a Collect Log Files Only User

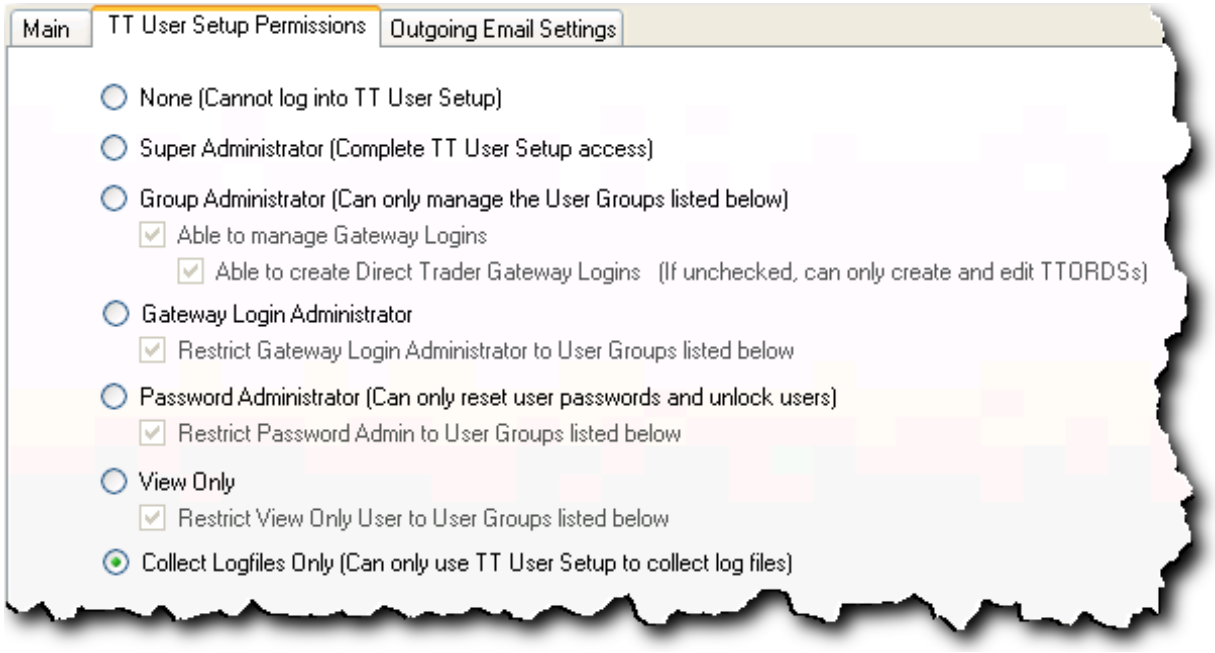
A Collect Log Files Only user can use the Collect Log Files feature to collect any log files in the trading environment, including log files containing sensitive trading information. This user cannot view or edit any user or system settings, but can view the TT User Setup server messages, TT User Setup server status, and environment server status reports.

To create a Collect Log Files Only user:

1. From the **User Admin** menu, select **Users**.
2. Set the **New User View** to **TT User Setup Admin fields**.
3. Click **New**.

   Note: To give an existing user administrative privileges, select the user from the **Users** window and click **Edit**. You can then change the **View** to **TT User Setup Admin fields**.

4. On the **Main** tab, edit any **Login**, **Contact**, or **User Defined** fields as needed.
5. Click the **TT User Setup Permissions** tab.
6. Select the **Collect Log Files Only** option.



7. Click **Save**.

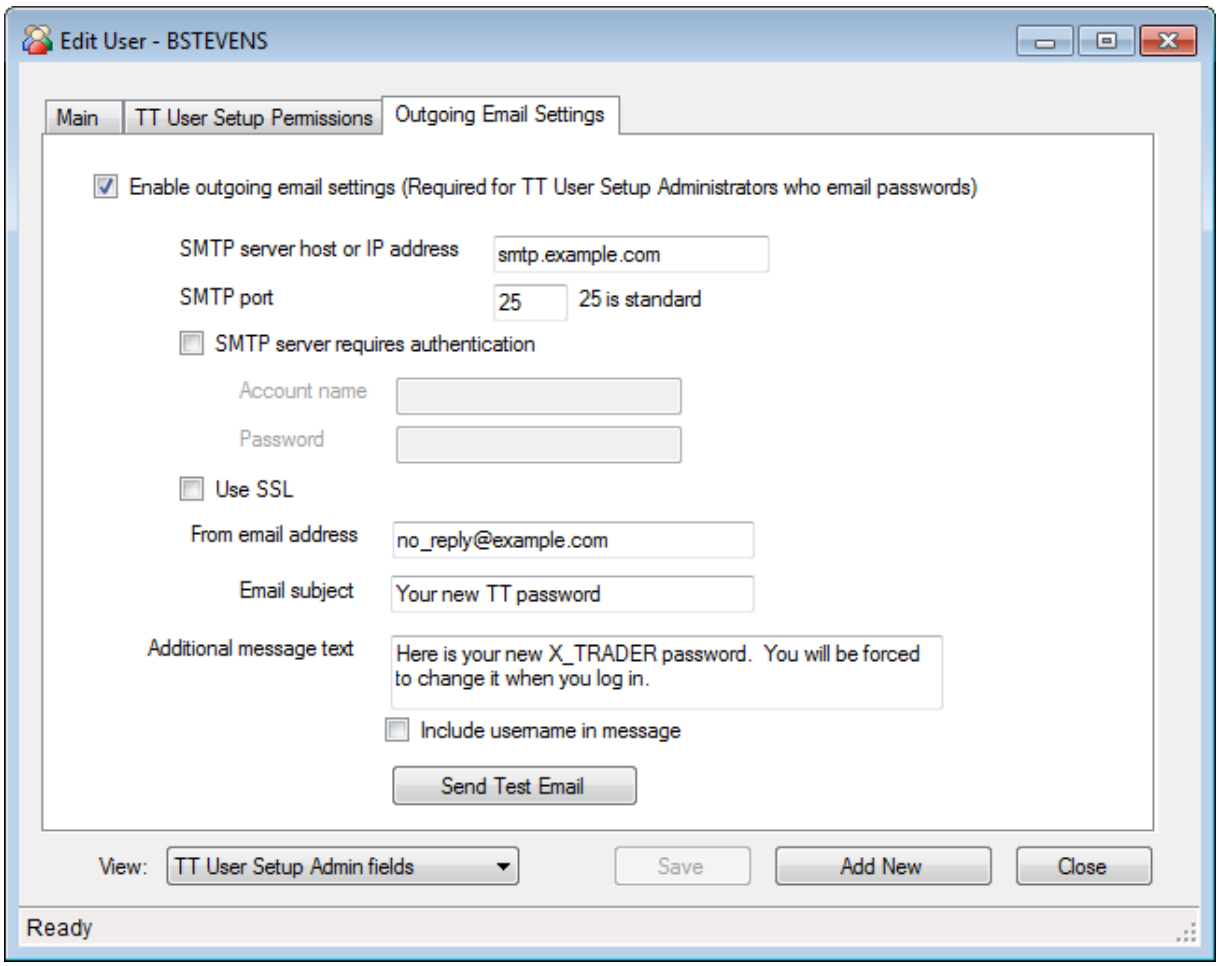
Configuring the Outgoing Email Settings

TT User Setup allows you to send newly generated passwords to users over email. This functionality is available only to Super Administrators, Group Administrators, and Password Administrators.

Note: When upgrading from a pre-7.2 version of TT User Setup, TT User setup populates the **Outgoing Email Settings** tab with the **Email Account** settings (if available).

To enable and set up outgoing email settings:

1. Access the **Edit User** or **New User** window for a Super Administrator, Group Administrator, or Password Administrator, and then click the **Outgoing Email Setting** tab.



2. Check the **Enable outgoing email settings** option.
3. Enter the **SMTP server host or IP address** and **SMTP port** (typically port 25).
4. If the SMTP server requires authentication, check the **SMTP server requires authentication** option and enter the **Account name** and **Password**.
5. If your SMTP server requires SSL, check the **Use SSL** option.
6. Enter the **From email address**, **Email subject**, and **Additional message text** for the outgoing email messages, and check the **Include username in message** option if needed.
7. To test the email settings, click **Send Test Email** and enter an email address that should receive the test email. You should then verify that the test email was received.
8. Click **Save**.

User Administration: FIX Adapter

TT FIX Adapter and TT User Setup Overview

As of TT User Setup 7.3.1, administrators use TT User Setup rather than the FIX Adapter Configuration Tool (FACT) to manage both TT FIX Adapter Servers and FIX Adapter Clients.

TT FIX Adapter Server Users

You configure TT FIX Adapter Servers as users in TT User Setup. You also define which gateway logins FIX Adapter Server users use to connect to the TT Gateways.

Note: Gateway logins are the MGTs, risk limits, and accounts.

You can configure TT FIX Adapter Servers as either Order Routing TT FIX Adapters or Drop Copy TT FIX Adapters.

TT FIX Adapter Client Users

You configure FIX Adapter client users as users in TT User Setup. You also configure which TT FIX Adapters they may connect to and which gateway logins they use to connect the TT FIX Adapters.

Migrating from the FIX Adapter Configuration Tool (FACT) to TT User Setup

The following table describes the most important functionality removed from FACT.

Field	Where it was in FACT	Where it is now
Gateways		
Gateway Login Parameters	Global Gateway Connection Settings or Individual Gateway Connection Settings	TT User Setup: The **Gateway Logins** tab of a user designated as a FIX Adapter Server.
Rollover Times	Individual Gateway Settings	No longer supported
FIX Sessions		
Session Login	Individual FIX Sessions	TT User Setup: The **Gateway Logins** tab of a user designated as a FIX Adapter Client.
Order Routing Credentials	Individual FIX Sessions in Order Routing configurations	TT User Setup: The **Gateway Logins** tab of a user designated as a FIX Adapter Client.

Field	Where it was in FACT	Where it is now
Account Defaults	Individual FIX Sessions in Order Routing configurations	TT User Setup: The **Account Defaults** tab on the **FIX Adapter** tab of a user designated as a FIX Adapter Client.
Trade Filters	Individual FIX Sessions in Drop Copy configurations	TT User Setup: The **Gateway Logins** tab of a user designated as a FIX Adapter Client.

For a detailed description of TT User Setup user administration functionality previously managed in FACT, refer to the **Migrating to Version 7.6.0** Appendix in the **TT FIX Adapter System Administration Manual Version 7.6**.

Setting Up a TT FIX Adapter Server

Use TT User Setup to configure a user as a TT FIX Adapter server, which logs into one or more TT Gateways on behalf of all its FIX clients. You must configure the FIX Adapter server user as either a **Drop Copy** or **Order Routing** FIX Adapter server.

- Order Routing

  The order routing configuration type allows FIX Adapter client users to use all the functionality offered by the TT FIX Adapter Server. For more information on how order routing functionality is used by a TT FIX Adapter Server, refer to the **Configure: Order Routing** chapter in the **TT FIX Adapter System Administration Manual Version 7.6**.

- **Drop Copy**

  The Drop Copy configuration type allows FIX Adapter client users to use all the functionality offered by the TT FIX Adapter Server, except for routing orders. For more information on how a TT FIX Adapter Server uses drop copy functionality, refer to the **Configure: Drop Copy** chapter in the **TT FIX Adapter System Administration Manual Version 7.6**

  The following table describes how drop copy gateway logins determine viewing privileges.

Gateway Login	Viewing Privileges
TTADM/XXX/VIEW	Indicates the orders and fills for all FIX Adapter client user's gateway logins are visible to the TT FIX Adapter Server.
<Member ID>/XXX/VIEW	Indicates the orders and fills for all FIX Adapter client user's gateway logins with the same Member ID are visible to the TT FIX Adapter Server.
<Member ID>/<Group ID>/VIEW	Indicates the orders and fills for all FIX Adapter client user's gateway logins with the same Member ID and Group ID are visible to the TT FIX Adapter Server.

Additionally, you must designate the credentials (called gateway logins) that the FIX Adapter server uses to log into the TT Gateways. TT FIX Adapter server logs into each TT Gateway once and acts on behalf of all FIX Adapter client users.

Note: The TT FIX Adapter Server must be able to connect to the Gateways to which a related FIX Client is able to connect, and it must be able to view the orders and fills of any FIX Client connecting to the FIX Adapter.

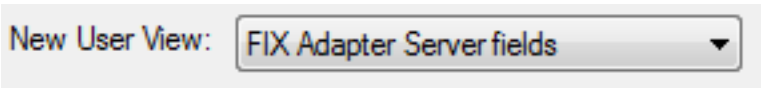
For a detailed description of the various types of logins used in a TT environment, refer to the **TT User Login and Risk Administration Reference Guide**.

To set up a TT FIX Adapter Server:

1. From the **TT User Setup Control Panel**, open the **User Admin** menu and click **Users**.

   The **Users** window appears.

2. From the **New User View** list select **FIX Adapter Server fields**.



3. Click **New**.

   The **New User** window appears.

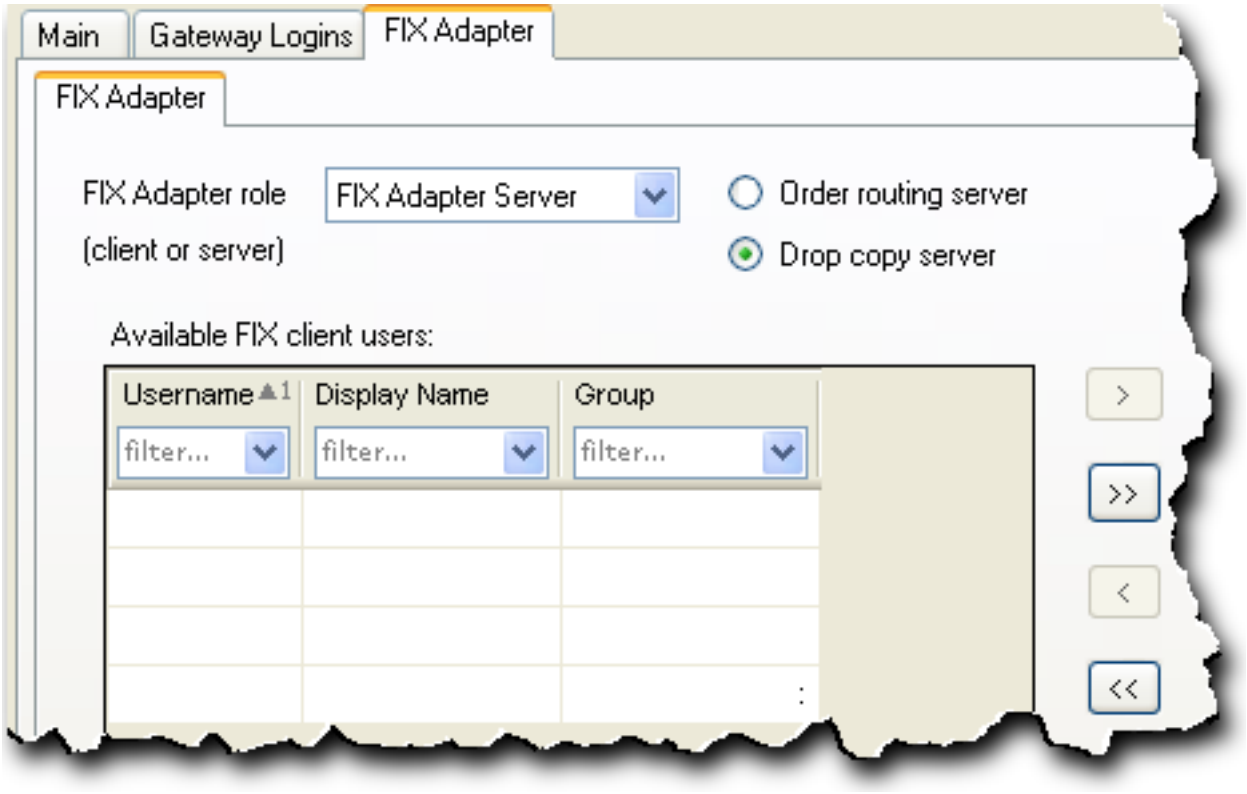
4. On the **Main** tab, enter the FIX Adapter Server's **Login**, **Contact** information, and **User Defined** fields as needed. The **Username** and **Display** fields are typically the name of the FIX Adapter Server. The **Password** is the password that TT User Setup uses to authenticate the FIX Adapter Server after startup. For detailed descriptions of the remaining fields, refer to the "New User and Edit User Window Fields" on page 41 topic.

   The following figure shows the **Login** and **Contact** sections of **Main** tab for a new FIX Adapter Server, CCDC.

   Note: TT recommends that you leave the **Password never expires** option checked.

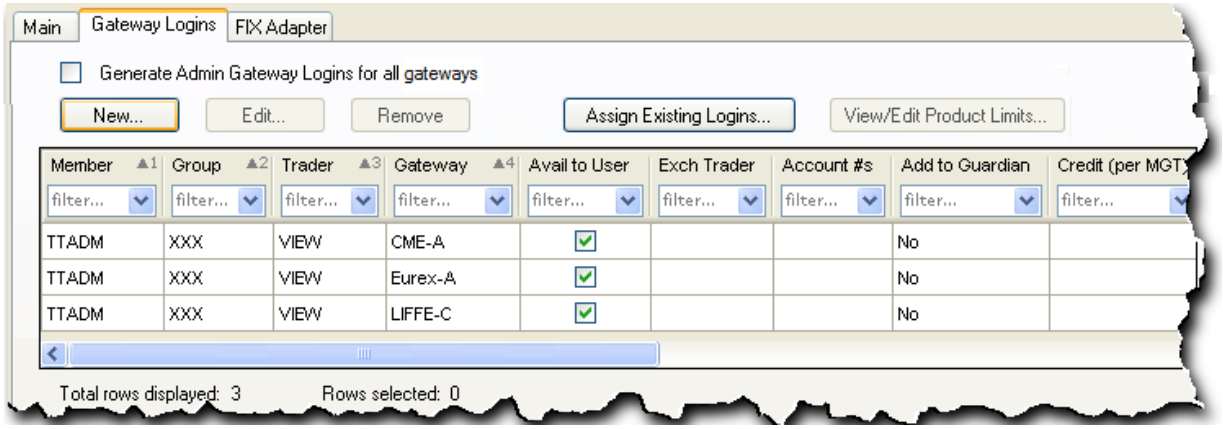
5. On the **New User** window, click the **FIX Adapter** tab. If a version requirement message appears, click **OK**.

   The **FIX Adapter Role** field automatically populates with **FIX Adapter Server**. Existing FIX client users appear in the **Available FIX client users** or **The following FIX client users can connect to this FIX Adapter** table. If FIX client users have not been created, these tables are empty.



6. Click the **Drop copy server** or **Order routing server** radio button.
7. Click the **Gateway Logins** tab.
8. If the gateway login to which you want to map does not exist, click **New** and create a new gateway login. For detailed instructions refer to the **Creating a New Gateway Login** topic.

   Otherwise, if the gateway login already exists, click the **Assign Existing Logins** button, and select the appropriate MGT(s). For detailed instructions refer to the "Assigning Gateways to Gateway Logins" on page 137 topic.



9. Click **Save**.

You have successfully set up a TT FIX Adapter Server. After completing the “Setting Up a FIX Adapter Client User” on page 100 topic, continue to the “Assigning TT FIX Adapter Client(s) to a FIX Adapter Server” on page 110 topic.

Setting Up a FIX Adapter Client User

Use TT User Setup to configure a FIX Adapter client, which connects to Order Routing or Drop Copy TT FIX Adapter servers.

When creating a TT FIX Adapter client user that connects to an Order Routing TT FIX Adapter, you must also designate one or more sets of credentials (gateway logins) that will be used to route orders. This procedure is similar to setting up a TTORD in Guardian, except in TT User Setup you can create the TTORD and assign it to a FIX Adapter client in one step. The gateway logins to which a FIX Adapter client user is assigned determine how the Client submits orders, and to which orders and fills the Client can subscribe.

A FIX Adapter client user can be assigned to more than one TTORD gateway login per Gateway, or a single Direct Trader gateway login per Gateway.

Note: The FIX Client can only log into a FIX Adapter that is configured to route orders that the FIX Client can also route.

Example 1: Assume a FIX client user has a gateway login for CME-A with MGT: TTORD AAA 001, and a FIX Adapter has a gateway login for CME-A with MGT: TTORD BBB MGR. In this case, the FIX Adapter is unable to load orders and fills for the FIX Client. TT User Setup will not allow the FIX client user to log in.

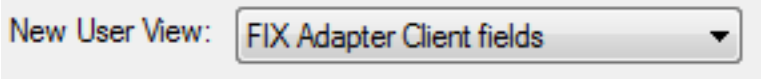
Example 2: Assume a FIX client user has a gateway login for CME-A with MGT: TTORD AAA 001, and a FIX Adapter has a gateway login for CME-A with MGT: TTORD XXX MGR. In this case, the FIX Adapter and the FIX Adapter client have compatible MGTs. TT User Setup allows the FIX client user to log in.

To set up a FIX Adapter client user:

1. From the **TT User Setup Control Panel**, open the **User Admin** menu and click **Users**.

   The **Users** window appears.

2. From the **New User View** list, select **FIX Adapter Client fields**.



3. Click **New**.

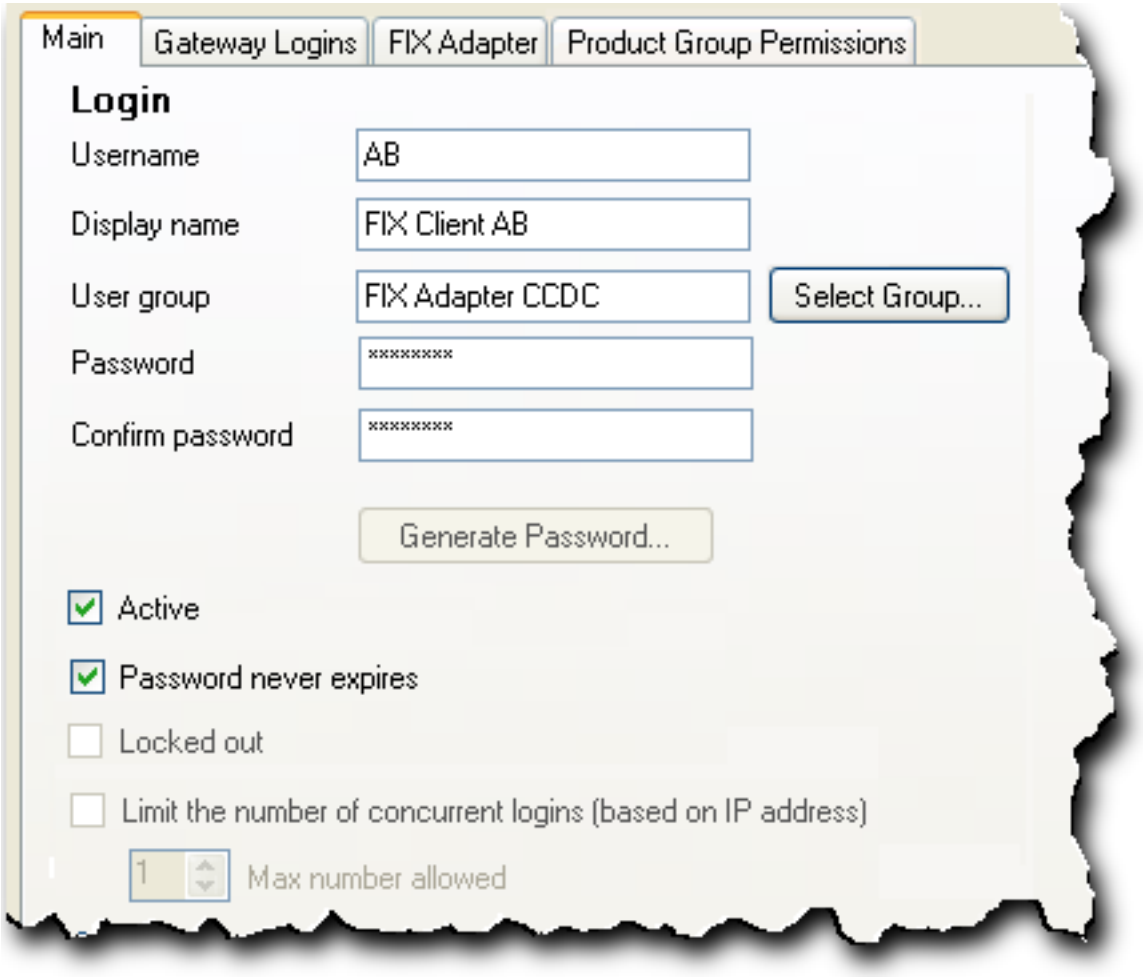
   The **New User** window appears.

4. On the **Main** tab, enter the FIX Adapter client user's **Login**, **Contact** information, **User-Level Risk**, and **User Defined** fields as needed. The **Username** is the RemoteCompId, and the **Password** is the password used to authenticate the Client on the FIX Adapter Server.

   The following table describes options that allow or prevent connectivity in specific instances:

Field	When orders will be rejected
	The TT FIX Adapter cannot connect to a FIX client with an expired password.
Password never expires	Because FIX Adapter client users cannot update an expired password using the same procedure as an X_TRADER user, TT recommends that you prevent password expiration by leaving the **Password never expires** option checked.
Active	If the **Active** option is unchecked, the FIX client is considered "inactive" and therefor cannot log into TT FIX Adapter.
Force logoff	If the **Force logoff** option is checked, the TT FIX Adapter will disconnect the FIX client. The FIX client cannot log back in until the **Force logoff** option is unchecked.

   The following shows the **Login** section of the **Main** tab for new TT FIX Adapter Client, AB.



5. Configure the remaining options on the **Main** tab as needed. Refer to the "New User and Edit User Window Fields" on page 41 topic for descriptions of the remaining fields.

   The following table describes options that can cause orders to be rejected in specific instances. These settings only apply to FIX clients of Order Routing FIX Adapters.

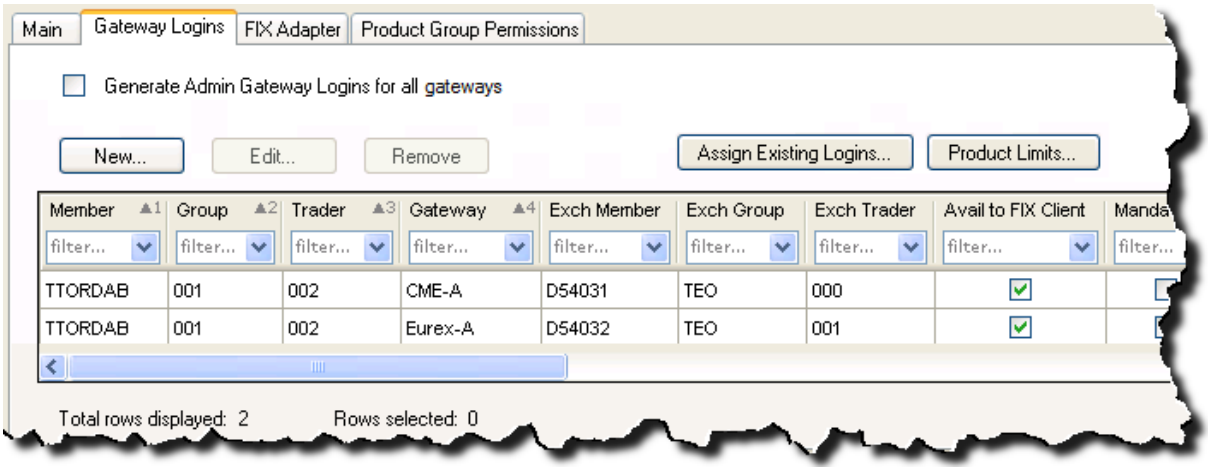
Field	When orders will be rejected
Trading allowed	If the **Trading Allowed** option is unchecked the TT FIX Adapter will reject all orders from the FIX client.
GTC/GTDate orders allowed	If the **GTC/GTDate...** option is unchecked the TT FIX Adapter will reject all GTC and GTDate orders sent by the FIX client.

Field	When orders will be rejected
Prevent orders that are more than X ticks away from the market price	If the **Prevent orders...** option is checked the TT FIX Adapter will reject any orders that are submitted with a price that is outside the defined price band. Additionally, it will reject orders if it is unable to successfully establish a price subscription for the instrument.
Per TT Gateway, prevent more than X orders per second	The TT Gateway will reject all orders that exceed the orders per second limitation.

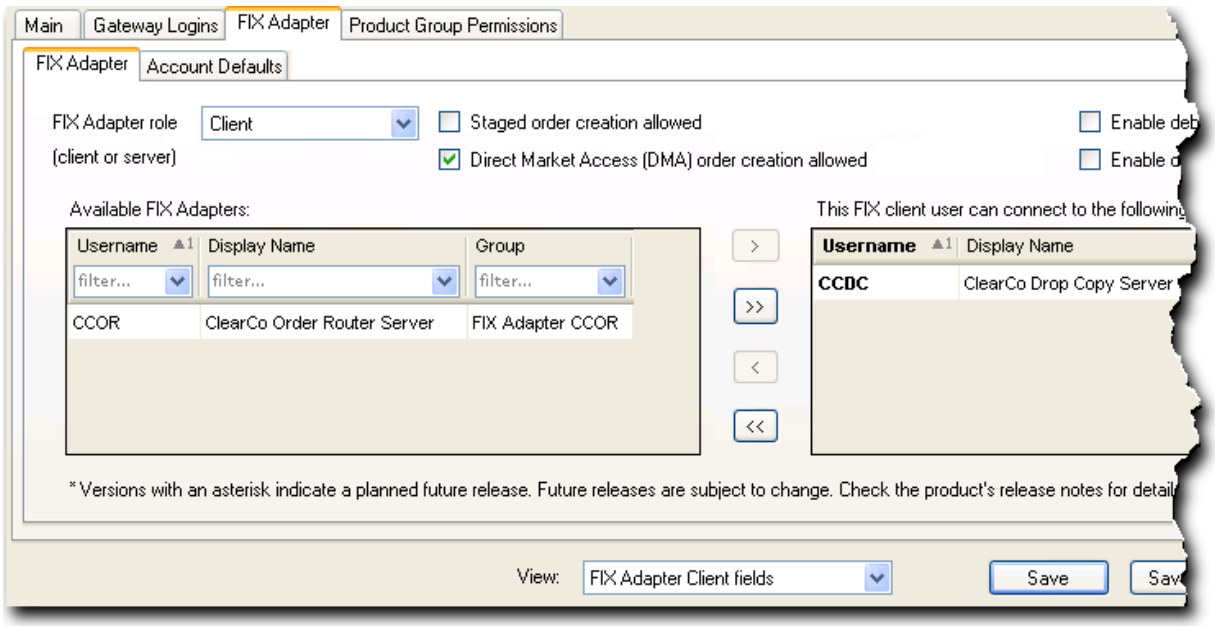
6. Click the **Gateway Logins** tab.
7. If the gateway login to which you want to map does not exist, click **New** and create a new gateway login. For detailed instructions refer to the **Creating a New Gateway Login** topic.

   Otherwise, if the gateway login already exists, click the **Assign Existing Logins** button and select the appropriate MGT(s). For detailed instructions, refer to the “Assigning Gateways to Gateway Logins” on page 137 topic.

   Make sure to check the **Avail to FIX Client** option if the FIX client will have access to the gateway login after logging in.



8. Click the **FIX Adapter** tab.



9. Configure the Staged order routing settings as needed. These settings are valid only when this FIX client connects to an order routing TT FIX Adapter server.
    1. To allow the user to create staged orders check the **Staged order creation allowed** option.
    2. To allow the user to create DMA orders, check the **Direct Market Access (DMA) order creation allowed** option.
10. Click **Save**.

You have successfully set up a FIX Adapter client user. After completing the “Setting Up a TT FIX Adapter Server” on page 96 topic, continue to the “Setting Up an Account Default” on page 104 topic, and then to the “Assigning TT FIX Adapter Client(s) to a FIX Adapter Server” on page 110 topic.

Setting Up an Account Default

This section provides a brief overview of account defaults, how to create an account default record, and how the TT FIX Adapter Server uses a FIX Adapter client user's account default key values populate default values before submitting an order to the TT Gateway.

Account Default Overview

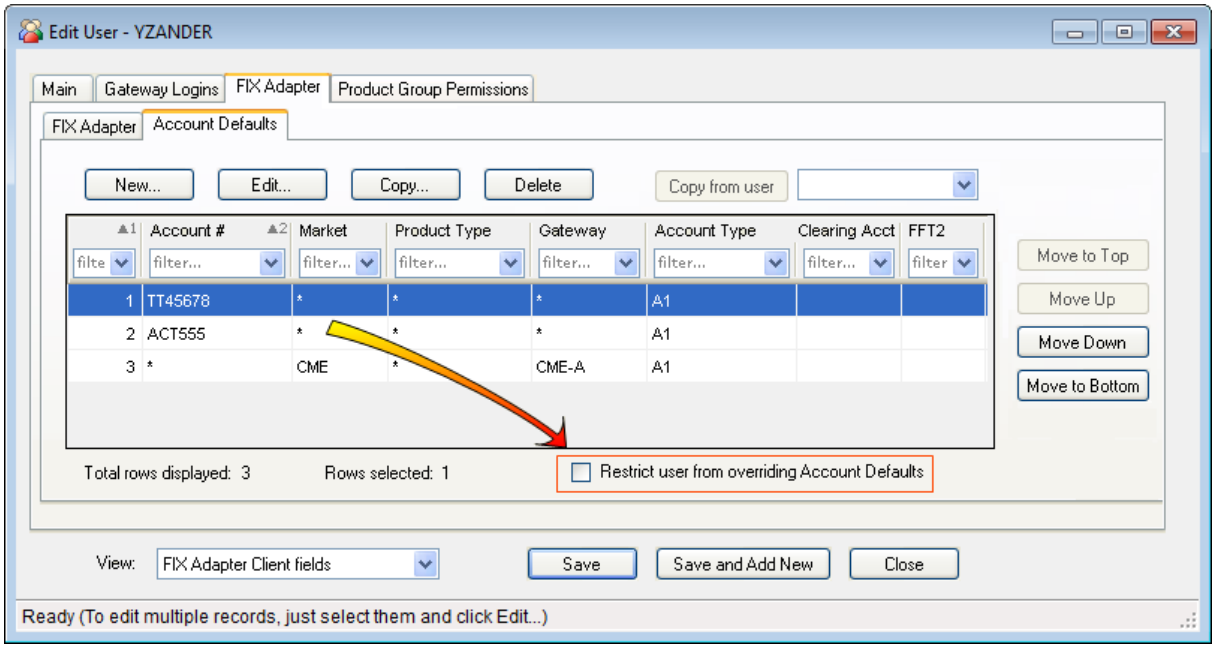
Account defaults are a set of rules that a TT FIX Adapter uses to provide a default account type, clearing account, or free form data when it is omitted from an order. The account defaults, created in TT user Setup, contain two types of data:

- Keys that the TT FIX Adapter server uses to match incoming orders to particular rules.
- Default values that TT FIX Adapter server adds to outgoing orders and fills when needed.

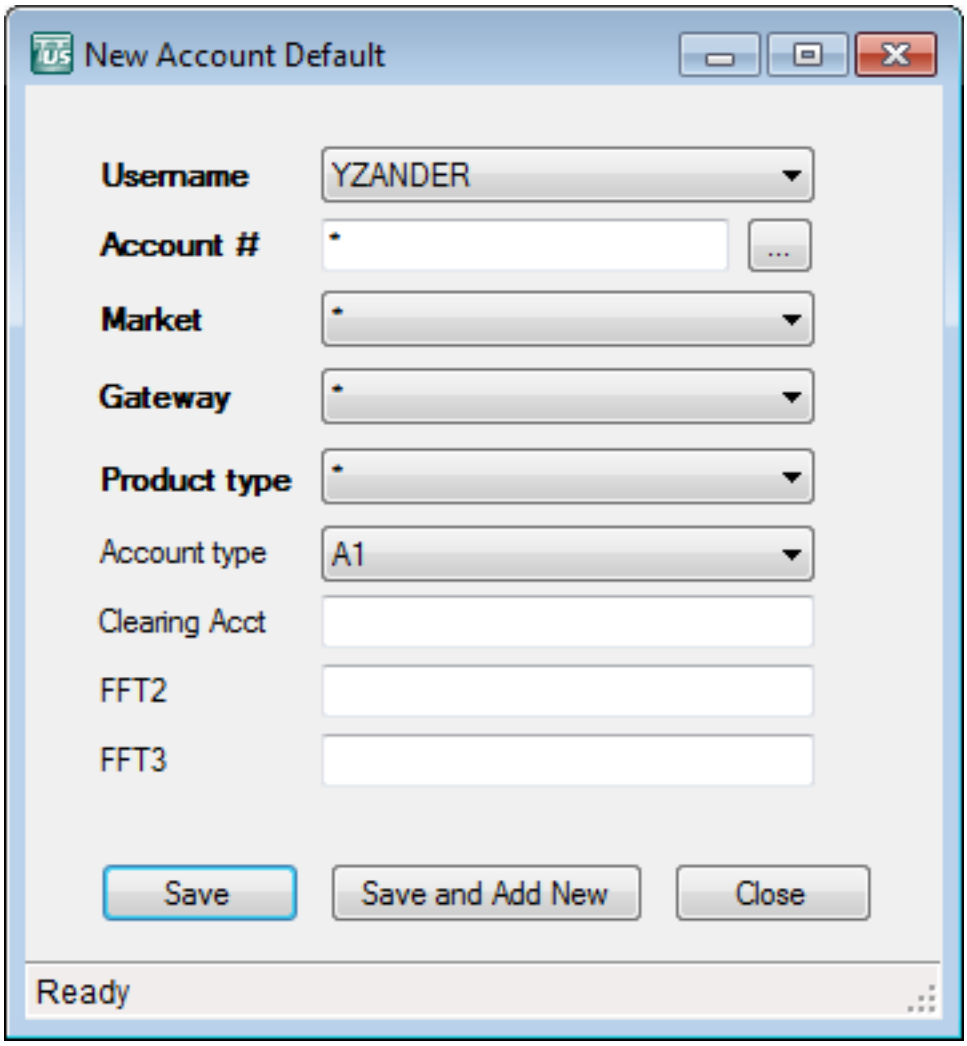
The following is a list of values available in the **New Account Defaults** or **Edit Account Defaults** window.

Field	Description	Type
username	The name of the FIX Adapter client user. In the TT FIX Adapter Configuration Tool (FACT), username was known as RemoteCompId.	Key
Account #	The customer account number. Enter an asterisk (*) to match any account number.	Key
Market	The name of the market. Enter an asterisk (*) to match any market.	Key
Gateway	The name of the gateway. Enter an asterisk (*) to match any gateway.	Key
Product type	The product type (e.g. futures, options, spreads, etc.), associated with a security. Enter an asterisk (*) to indicate match any product type.	Key
Account type	The type of account associated with the trader.	Default value
Clearing Account	The member code for the clearing member; used for give-up trades only.	Default value
FFT2/FFT3	The freeform text fields; often used for annotations by traders or back offices.	Default value

From the **Account Defaults** tab, within the **New User** or **Edit User** window, you can set the **Restrict user from overriding Account Default** option to specify whether a TT FIX Adapter Server rejects orders containing default values (e.g. Clearing Account) that don not match or that conflict with a FIX Adapter client user's account default values.



For example, based on the values in the illustration below, if the restrict override option is checked, an order must match all of the values, including a **Clearing Acct** value and an **FFT2** value. However, if the restrict value is unchecked, only the "key" values (**Account #**, **Market**, **Gateway**, and **Product type**) must match.



Creating an Account Default

The following procedure describes how to create an account default from the **User** window. You can also access the **New Account Default** window by selecting **FIX Adapter Account Defaults** from the **User Admin** menu.

▶ To create an account default:

1. From the **User Admin** menu, select **Users**.

   The **Users** window appears.

2. Double-click the row of an existing user.

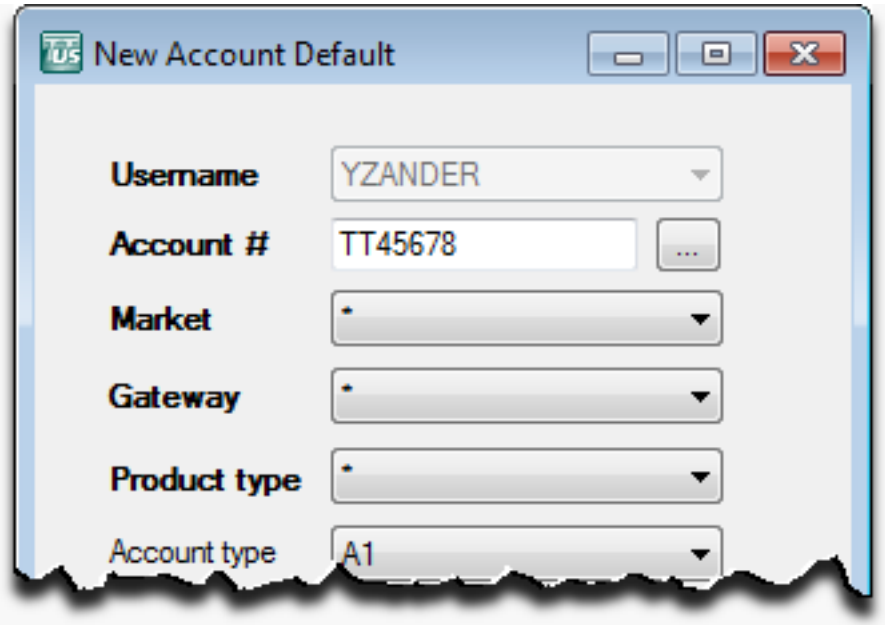
   The **Edit User** window appears.

3. Click the **FIX Adapter** tab and then click the **Account Defaults** tab.
4. On the **Account Defaults** tab, click **New**.

   The **New Account Default** window appears.

5. Enter data in the **Account #**, **Market**, **Gateway**, and **Product type** "key" fields as needed.

   The image below shows a **New Account Default** window with the "key" fields completed.



   Note: You can type an account number directly in the **Account #** field, or you can click the **...** button, select an account from the **Select Account** window, and then click **Select**.

6. Click **Save**.

   The new account default appears in the **Edit User** window.

7. On the **Edit User** window, click **Save**.

You have successfully set up an account default.

How FIX Adapter Servers Match an Account Default

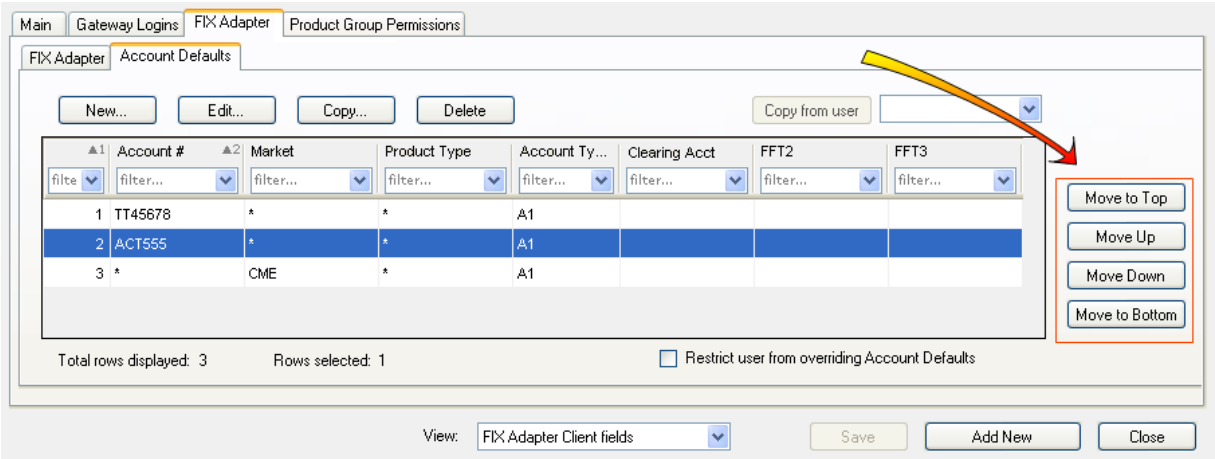
TT FIX Adapter Server uses a FIX Adapter client user's account default key values to match incoming orders received from the FIX client application prior to submitting the orders to the TT Gateway. When TT FIX Adapter Server receives an order message from a FIX Adapter Client user, it starts the process of matching the order to the “key” values in the set of account defaults. If it finds a match, TT FIX Adapter Server inserts any specified default values into the order before routing it to the specified TT Gateway.

If the **Restrict user from overriding Account Default** option is checked, all the "key" and default values are taken into consideration when matching an order.

You can create more than one account default with the same "key" values, and TT FIX Adapter server uses the match with the highest priority. To define the order in which TT FIX Adapter server prioritizes account defaults, follow the procedure below.

To prioritize account defaults:

1. On the **New User** or **Edit User** window, select the **FIX Adapter** tab and then select the **Account Defaults** tab.
2. Highlight the row of the account default you'd like to give the highest priority.
3. From the buttons on the window's right, click **Move to Top**.



The highlighted row becomes the first row displayed, is assigned a number one in the first column, and is given top matching priority.

4. To prioritize additional rows, click the row, and use the **Move Up** and **Move Down** buttons.

You have successfully prioritized account defaults.

Example: Account Defaults Order Matching

Assume an administrator configures two FIX Adapter Client users with the same set of account defaults, but in a different order. If each FIX Adapter client sends a TT FIX Adapter server an order that contains a market of CME and a product type of NRG, the clients will receive different results as follows.

TT user Setup includes the following account default entries for FIX Adapter Client user ABC:

Priority	Account	Market	Prod Type	Acct Type	Clearing Acct	FFT2	FFT3
1	*	CME	NRG	G1	999		
2	*	*	*	A1			

For FIX Adapter Client user XYZ, TT user Setup includes the same account defaults, but in reverse order, as shown:

Priority	Account	Market	Prod Type	Acct Type	Clearing Acct	FFT2	FFT3
1	*	*	*	A1			
2	*	CME	NRG	G1	999		

Result:

When TT FIX Adapter Server receives the message from FIX Adapter Client user ABC, it finds a match in the first account defaults listed, so it routes the order to the TT Gateway with **Account Type** = “G1” and **Give-Up** = “999”. When TT FIX Adapter Server receives the same message from FIX Adapter client user XYZ, it matches the first row. Even though the second account defaults entry represents a more precise match, TT FIX Adapter server stops looking after it finds the first match. Consequently, when TT FIX Adapter server receives this message, it routes it to the TT Gateway with **Account Type** = “A1”.

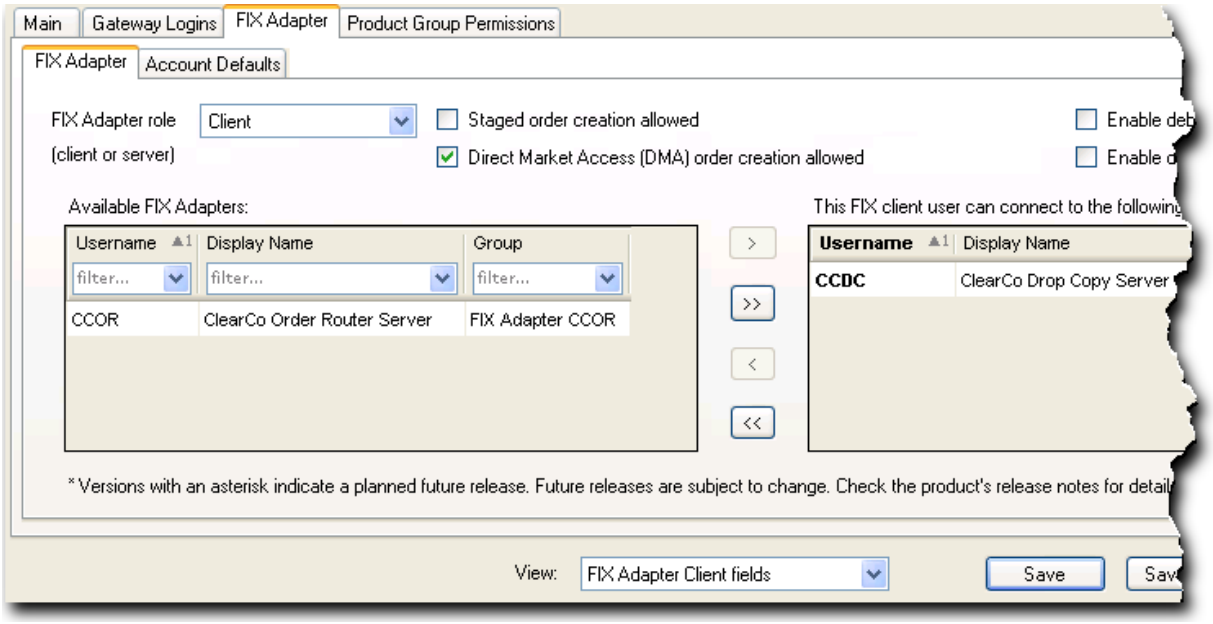
Note: For more account default order matching and routing examples, refer to the **Understanding Account Defaults** section of the **TT FIX Adapter Reference Manual**.

Assigning TT FIX Adapter Client(s) to a FIX Adapter Server

You can assign FIX Adapter client users to a TT FIX Adapter server from either the server or client user's **New User** or **Edit User** window.

To assign a TT FIX Adapter server to a FIX Adapter client user:

1. On the client user's **New User** or **Edit User** window, click the **FIX Adapter** tab. If a version requirement message appears, click **OK**.



2. Use the transfer arrow buttons (>, <, >>, <<) to select the FIX Adapter server users to which each client can connect.
3. If checked, the **Enabling Debug Logging for Orders** and **Enabling Debug Logging for Prices** options prompt the selected TT FIX Adapter server to generate verbose debugging information.

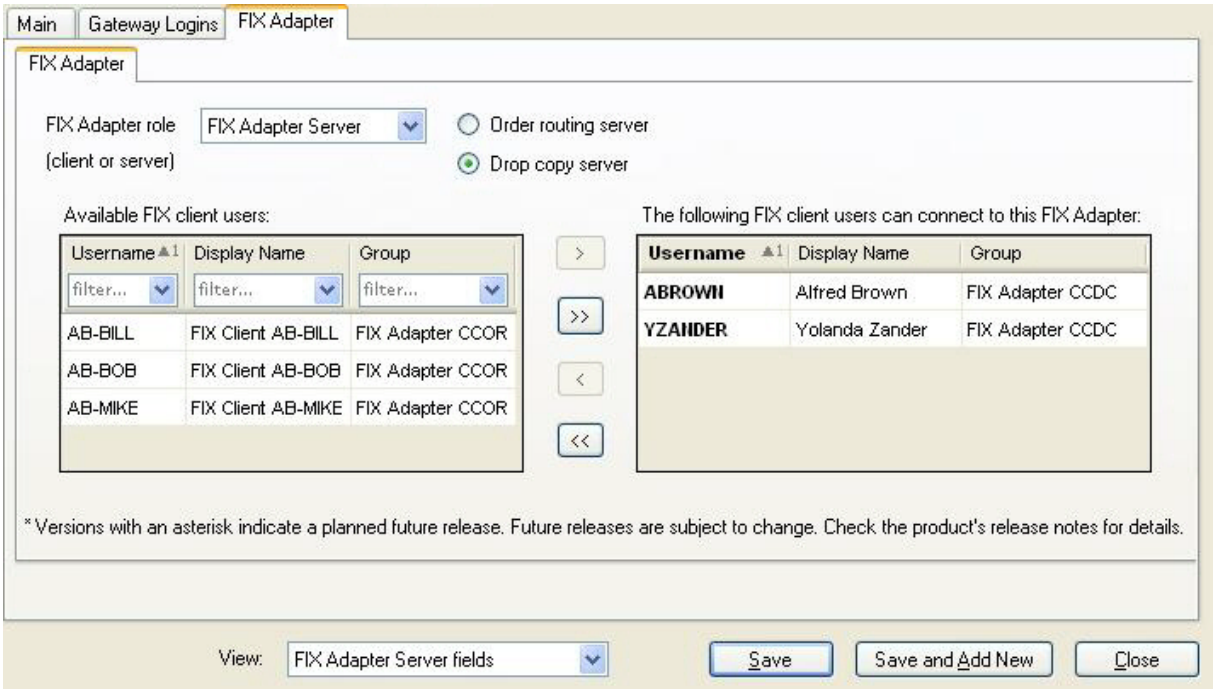
   Note: Because a significant increase in the amount of data logged affects performance, only check the debug options when troubleshooting.

4. Save and close the **Users** window.
5. Repeat this procedure for each FIX Adapter client user.

You have successfully assigned a FIX Adapter server to a FIX Adapter client.

To assign TT FIX Adapter clients to the TT FIX Adapter server:

1. On the server user's **New User** or **Edit User** window, click the **FIX Adapter** tab. If a version requirement message appears, click **OK**.



2. Use the transfer arrow buttons (>, <, >>, <<) to select the FIX Adapter client users that can connect to this server.
3. Save and close the **Users** window.

You have successfully assigned FIX Adapter clients to a FIX Adapter server.

Allowing or Blocking Product Groups for a FIX Adapter User

You can allow or block any of the listed product groups for a FIX Adapter client user. For more information refer to the “Allowing or Blocking Product Groups for Specific Markets” on page 119 topic.

Note: When a new user is created, all product groups are allowed by default. When a new product group or market is added, it is allowed for all users by default. The administrator must manually block the product groups for the appropriate users.

User Maintenance

How to Maintain Users

User maintenance includes:

- “Resetting a User Password” on page 113
- “Auto Generating and Emailing a User's Password” on page 114
- “Unlocking Users” on page 114
- “Forcing a User Logoff” on page 115
- “Activating and Deactivating Users” on page 116
- “Allowing or Blocking Product Groups for Specific Markets” on page 119

Resetting a User Password

A Super Administrator, Group Administrator, or Password Administrator can reset passwords for users in one or more defined user groups. When resetting a password, a user's existing password is replaced; the Password administrator does not need to know the user's existing password to reset that password.

Note: A Password Administrator cannot reset a Super Administrator's or Group Administrator's password.

To reset a password:

1. To force the user to change their password at the next login, check the **Require user to change initial password** option on the **Password Rules** tab of the **System Settings** window. Refer to the “Configuring Password Rules” on page 230 topic if needed.
2. From the **User Admin** menu, select **Unlock Users/Reset Passwords**.
3. Click the row of the user whose password you want to reset, and then click **Reset Password**.

   Note: Alternatively, you can click the **Password** button on the **Main** tab of the **Edit User** window.

   The **Password change** window appears.

4. In the **New Password** and **Confirm New Password** fields, enter the new password.
5. Click **Save**.

   Note: If you have configured the **Outbound Email Settings**, you can also generate and email a new password using the **Auto Generate Password** button. Refer to “Auto Generating and Emailing a User's Password” on page 114 topic.

You have successfully reset a password.

Auto Generating and Emailing a User's Password

Administrators that have been configured for outgoing email (refer to the "Configuring the Outgoing Email Settings" on page 93 topic) can create an automatically-generated password and email it to the email address that is configured in the **Email** field in the **Contact** section of the **Edit User** window.

TT User Setup's audit trail records when an email address is changed, a password is generated, etc.

To auto generate an existing user's password:

1. From the **User Admin** menu, select **Users**, and then select the user whose password you want to generate.
2. On the **Main** tab, in the **Contact** section, ensure the **Email** field contains a valid email address. TT User Setup sends the password to this email address.
3. In the **Login** section, click the **Password** button.

   The **Password change** window appears.

   Note: For enhanced security, you can disable the user's ability to enter a password. For a detailed description on disabling the **New Password** fields, refer to the **TT User Setup System Administration Manual Version 7.4.**

4. Click **Auto Generate Password**.
5. When prompted to confirm that you would like to proceed, click **Yes**.

   TT User Setup sends the user an email message that includes that user's new password and username.

You have successfully auto generated a user's password.

Unlocking Users

Users become locked out when they exceed the password locking rules, the number of failed login attempts, or the days of inactivity. For a detailed description on enforcing password locking rules, refer to the "Configuring Password Locking Rules" on page 228 topic. A Super Administrator, Group Administrator, or Password Administrator can unlock users either in all available user groups or in a restricted number of user groups.

To unlock a user:

1. From the **User Admin** menu, select **Unlock Users/Reset Passwords**.

   The **Unlock Users/Reset Passwords** window appears.

2. Click the row of the user you want to unlock.

3. Click **Unlock**.

You have successfully unlocked a user.

Forcing a User Logoff

TT User Setup allows you to force a logged in **X_TRADER** user's application to shut down immediately, and restrict that user from logging back in until the **Force logoff** option is unchecked. When a user is forced to logoff, that user's license(s) become available to other users.

You can force a user logoff from the **Edit User** window or from the **Logged in Users** report.

The **Force logoff** option disabled when editing multiple users.

To force a user logoff using the Edit User window:

1. From the **Users** window, click the user you want to log off, and then click **Edit**.
2. On the **Main** tab, in the **Login** section, check the **Force logoff** option.

3. When the warning message appears, click **OK** to close any instance of **X_TRADER** to which the user is logged in, or click **Cancel** to leave the Force logoff feature unchecked.
4. On the **Edit User** window, click **Save**.

You have successfully logged off a user. The user is unable to log on until you uncheck the **Force logoff** option.

To force a user logoff using the Logged in Users report:

1. From the **Reports** menu, select **Logged in Users**.

   The **Logged in Users** window appears.

2. To refresh the window, click **Refresh**.
3. On the **By User** tab, select a logged in user and then click **Force Logoff**.
4. When the warning message appears, click **OK** to close any instance of **X_TRADER** to which the user is logged in.

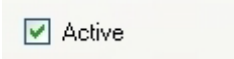
You have successfully logged off a user. The user is unable to log on until you uncheck the **Force logoff** option on the **Edit User** window.

Activating and Deactivating Users

Inactive users cannot log in using their usernames, but their information remains available.

To activate or deactivate a user:

1. From the **New User** or **Edit User** window, check the **Active** option to activate the user, or uncheck the **Active** option to deactivate the user.



2. Click **Save**.

You have successfully activated or deactivated a user.

To display inactive users:

1. From the **User Admin** menu, select **Users**.
2. Check the **Show inactive users** option.

You have successfully displayed inactive users.

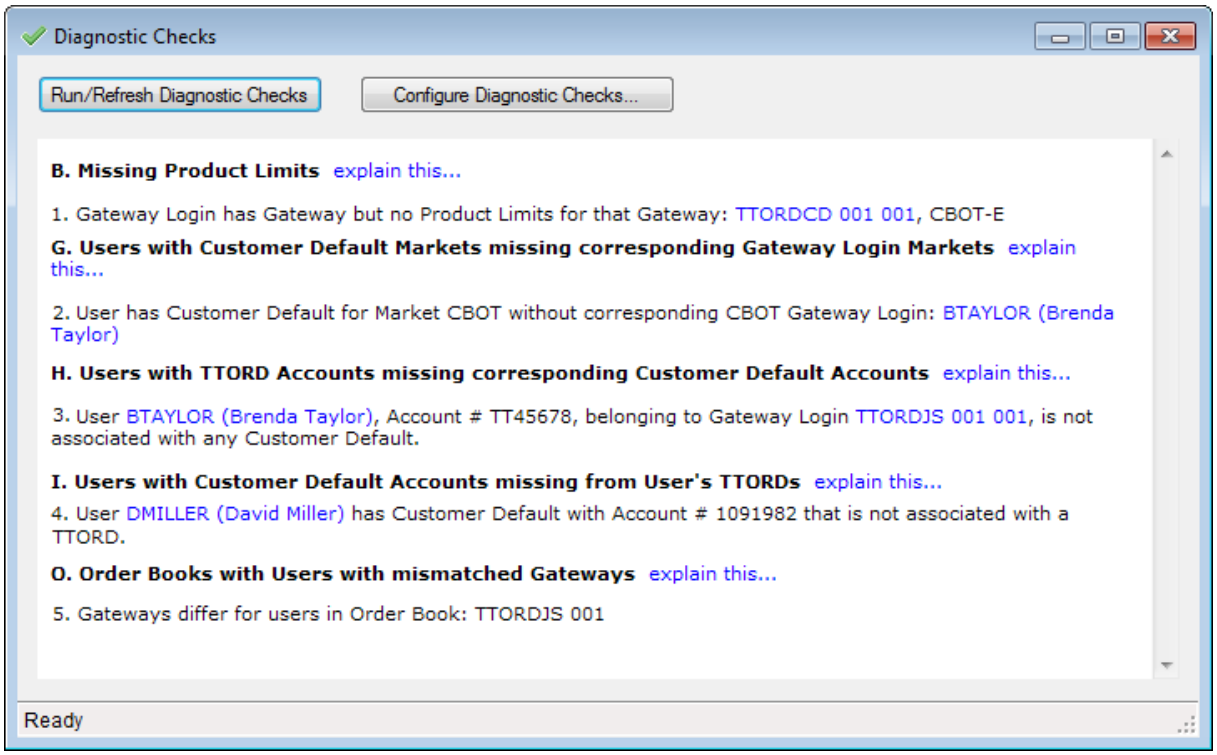
Configuring and Running Diagnostic Checks

TT User Setup allows you to run diagnostic checks that list potential set up issues based on the information available in the TT User Setup database. For example, **Gateway Logins missing Accounts** and **Missing Product Limits**.

Configuring Diagnostics

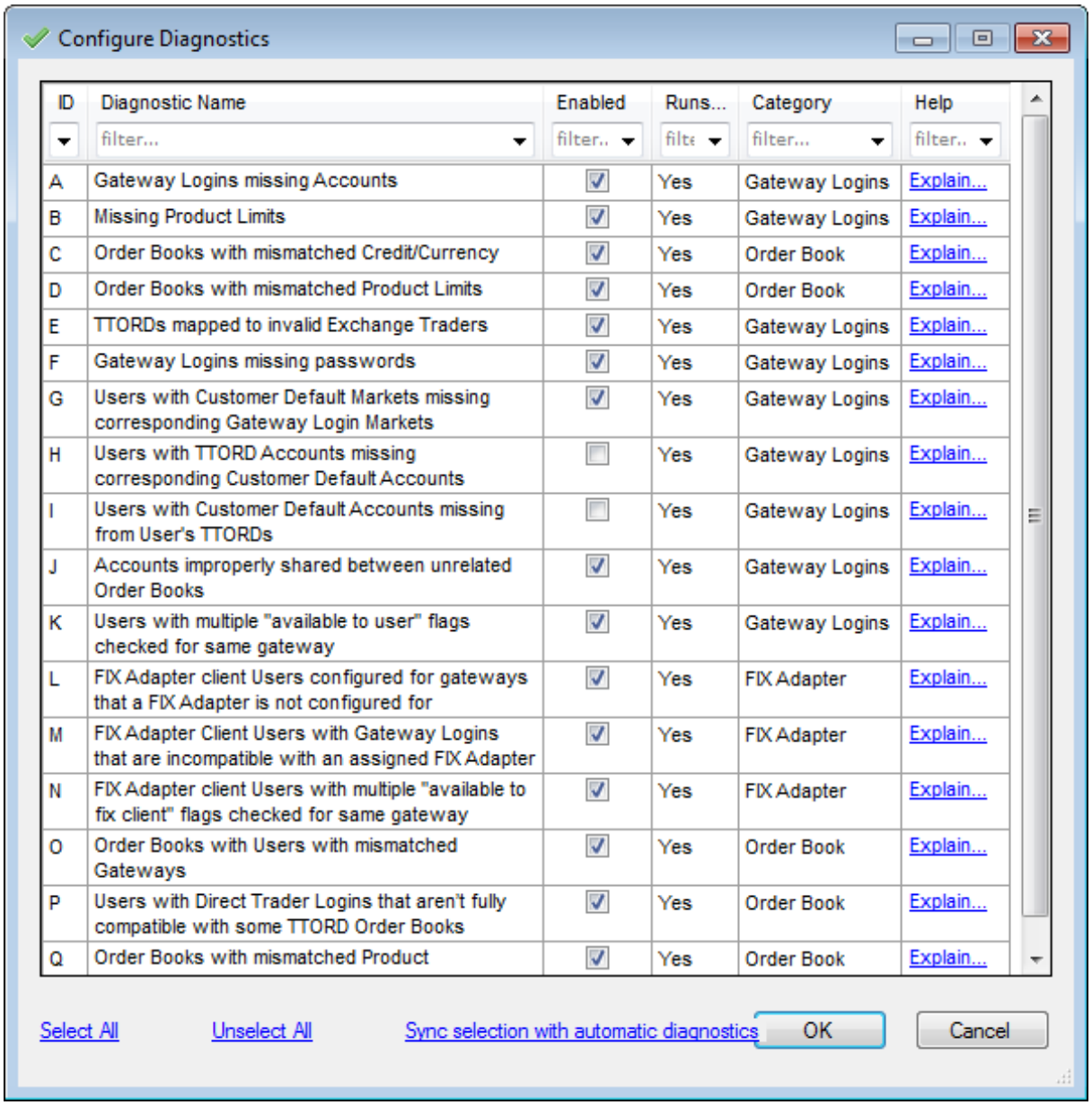
To configure the diagnostic checks:

1. From the **User Admin** menu, select **Diagnostic Checks**.
2. Click the **Click to run diagnostic checks** link.



Note: TT User Setup does not display records that include users, gateway logins, or accounts the administrator type (e.g. Group Administrator) is not permitted to manage.

3. Click **Configure diagnostic checks**.



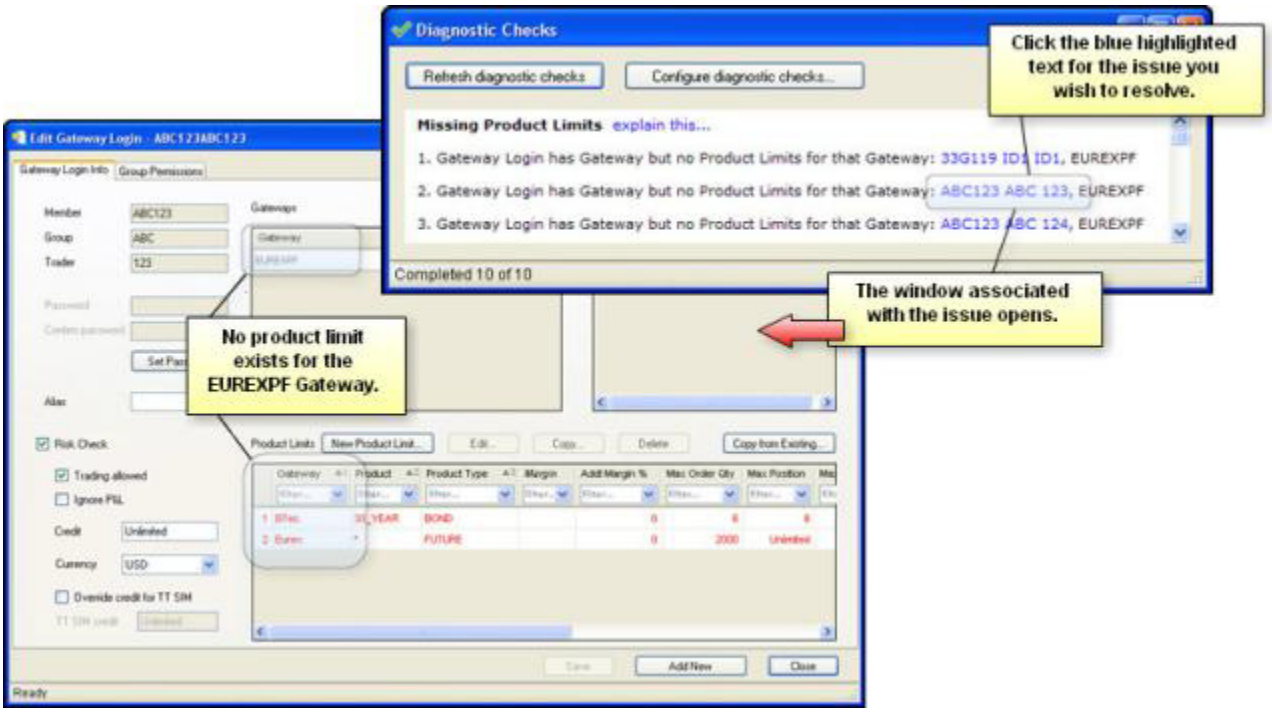
4. Select the diagnostic checks you want to run. You can also match the Automatic Diagnostics settings by clicking **Sync selection with automatic diagnostics**. To set the Automatic Diagnostics, refer to the "Automatic Diagnostics" on page 232 topic.
5. Click **OK**.

Running Diagnostics Checks

To run a diagnostic check:

1. From the **User Admin** menu, select **Diagnostic Checks**.
2. To run the configured diagnostic checks, click **Run/Refresh Diagnostic Checks**.

3. To resolve an issue in the **Diagnostics Checks** window, click on the blue highlighted text for the issue you want to resolve. TT User Setup opens the window that is causing the error.



4. Correct the problem and re-run the diagnostic check.

Allowing or Blocking Product Groups for Specific Markets

Some markets have specifically defined product groups. ICE for example, has product groups such as OTC Gas, OTC Power, and US Futures. Instead of allowing a user to subscribe to all products in a market, you can allow or block each available product group, per user. If a product group is blocked, a user logging into a TT application will not have access to any of the products in that group. This includes the ability to view market data for that product or to trade that product.

TT User Setup allows all newly added product groups or markets for all users. TT User Setup also allows all the product groups or markets for all newly added users. It is up to the TT User Setup administrator to block access to product groups.

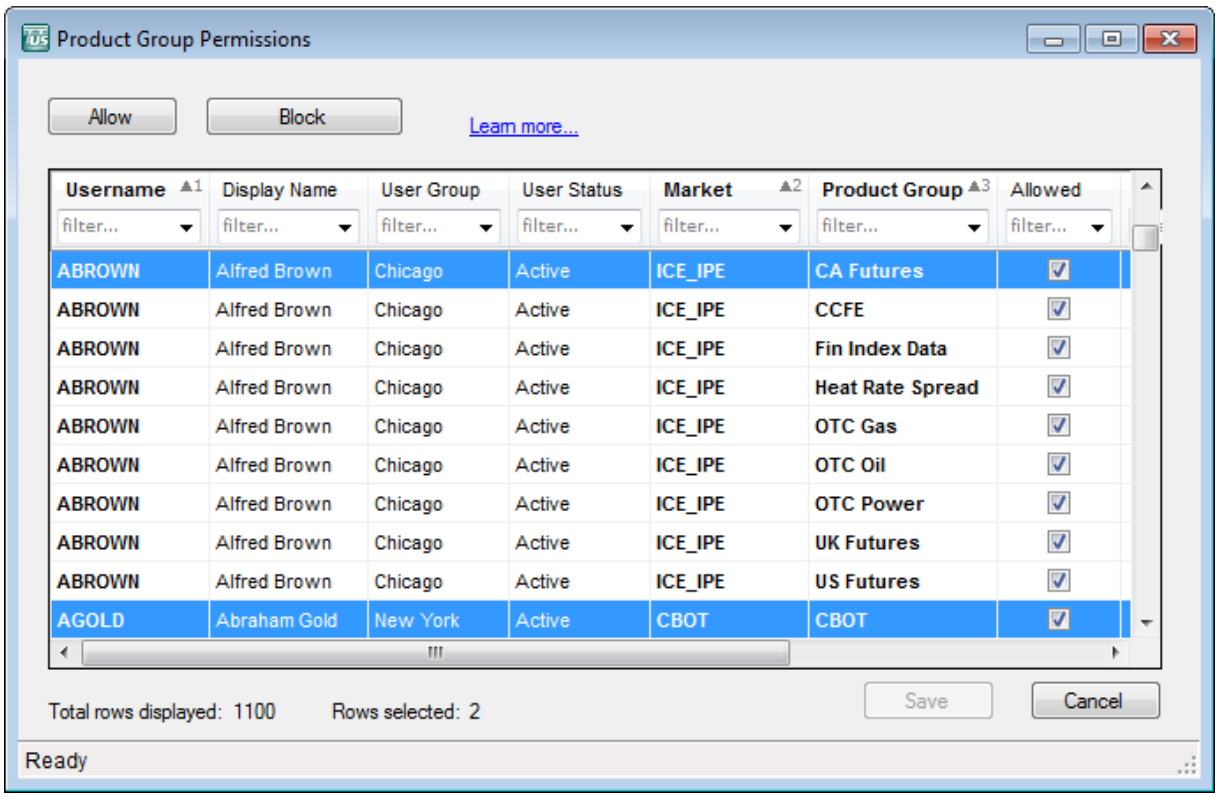
Note: The following TT software versions (and later) support Product Group Permissions: FIX Adapter 7.6.1, X_TRADER 7.9.0, X_RISK 7.5, XTAPI 7.7.0, TT API 7.2.0, CME Gateway 7.14. 3, ICE Gateway 7.14.1, OSE Gateway 7.17.35.

You can manually allow or block each product for each X_TRADER, X_RISK, and FIX Adapter client user from the **Product Group Permissions** window or tab. If a market (i.e., an exchange) is not listed in the **Product Group Permissions** tab, the user is allowed to access all products for that market.

▶ To manually allow or block product groups:

1. From the **User Admin** menu, select **Product Group Permissions**.

   Note: You can also access the product group permission for a single user by selecting the **Product Groups** tab from the **New User** or **Edit User** windows.



2. Filter or sort the **Product Group Permissions** window as needed to locate the product group(s) you want to allow or block.
3. Select the product group(s) and click **Allow** or **Block**. If you select only one product you can also check or uncheck the **Allowed** option.

Updating the Supported Product Groups List

The TT User Setup software includes the available product groups at the time the software was released. If a supported exchange adds or removes a product group, or if TT adds support for a new market, your TAM will send you a file that will update your list of supported product groups.

To manually allow or block product groups:

1. Copy the file you received from your TAM to the **~tt/config** directory on each Master and Slave TT User server in your system.
2. Restart the TT User Setup service.

Gateway Login Administration Basics

Gateway Logins Overview

Use the **Gateway Logins** window to create or edit gateway logins. Gateway logins are the Member-GroupTrader IDs used to log into TT Gateways. Each can have their own account numbers and risk limits, and multiple gateway logins can be assigned to a single user. To create or edit a gateway login, refer to “Creating a New Gateway Login” on page 135.

You can customize the Gateway Logins window by hiding TTORDs, hiding exchange traders, and expanding or collapsing the Gateway/Exchange Trader view. Refer to “Customizing the Gateway Logins Window” on page 131 for more information.

From the Gateway Logins window you can also assign users to existing gateway logins. Refer to the “Assigning Users to a Gateway Login” on page 144 topic.

Note: The Gateway Logins window is a standard data grid with additional options that allow you to hide TTORDs, hide Exchange Traders, and expand or collapse the Gateway/Exchange Trader view. Refer to the “Data Grid Functionality” on page 25 topic if needed.

Assign to Available Users Window Field Descriptions

To access the **Assign to Available Users** window, click **Assign to Users** from the **Gateway Logins** window. The **Gateway Logins** tab of the **New User** and **Edit User** windows contains the same fields. This topic describes all of the **Assign to Available Users** window fields:

Available Users list

The **Username**, **Display Name**, and **Group** fields contain read-only values defined in the **New User** or **Edit User** window.

Selected Users list

The **Username**, **Display Name**, **Group**, and **Gateway** fields are read-only values that are defined in the **New User** or **Edit User** window. The **Available To User**, **Available To FIX Client**, **Automatically Login**, **Clearing Member**, **Default Account**, **Preferred IP, Max Orders/Sec,** and **Operator ID** fields are defined on the **User's Gateway Login Attribute** window, but can be edited by selecting one or more users and editing the **Login Attributes** from this window.

Login Attributes

The **Login Attributes** section has the following fields:

Field	Description
Available to User	Indicates whether a user can have access to a given gateway login after performing a universal login.
Available to FIX Client	Indicates whether a FIX Client user can have access to a given gateway login after performing a universal login.
Automatically Login	Specifies whether a user of a specific gateway login will be automatically logged into a given gateway.
Mandatory Login	Indicates whether the user must log onto this Gateway when logging into TT applications. Check this option to prevent users from bypassing risk limits by not logging into a specific Gateway.
Algo deployment allowed	Indicates whether the user is allowed to deploy strategies to an Algo SE Server. This setting is only valid when the Gateway is an Algo SE Server.
Algo sharing allowed	Indicates whether the user is allowed to share algorithms with other users on Algo SE servers. This setting is only valid when the Gateway is an Algo SE Server and when the **Algo deployment allowed** option is checked.
Clearing Member	Designates a member firm of a clearing house through which trades are settled.
Default Account	Specifies the default account type as defined by the exchange (**A1**-**A9**, **G1**, **G2**, **M1**-**M3**, **P1**-**P3**, or **U1**-**U3**.
Preferred IP	Specifies the IP address of the Gateway. The preferred IP is used when there are multiple Gateways running with the same flavor name.

Field	Description
Max Orders/Sec	The maximum rate of orders allowed per TT Gateway. This value overrides the user-level **Per TT Gateway, prevent more than X orders per second** setting. The value entered in the **Prevent more than X orders per second (overrides the User-Level setting)** field displays in **Max Orders/Sec.** You can edit the maximum orders per second in this column per TT Gateway for the selected user.
Operator ID	Specifies the Operator ID that is used to identify the trader or operator to the exchange.

Gateway Login Window Field Descriptions

This topic describes all of the **New Gateway Login** and **Edit Gateway Login** window tabs and fields. The available tabs and associated windows are as follows:

Gateway Login Info

The **Gateway Login Info** tab contains the gateway login basic information as well as the Gateways/ Exchange Traders, Accounts, Product Limits, and Group Permissions sections.

Field	Description
Member	Specifies the broadest type of ID. The **Member** may identify one of the following: • The exchange on which the user trades. • The firm with which the individual user is associated. • A branch office. Member content depends on exchange-specific requirements, as described in the **Trader Login Requirements** table in the *TT User Login and Risk Administration Reference Guide*.
Group	Identifies traders who share an order book (i.e., traders with the same Member and Group can access orders from a common order book). Brokers who manage each other's customer accounts often use groups. Traders who do not want to share an order book use a unique Group.
Trader	Specifies the user-specific identifier for the individual trader. Exchanges might have specific requirements regarding the Trader ID portion as well. For example, on CME a Trader ID can be used to uniquely identify each trader within a firm.

Field	Description
	Note: The Member, Group, and Trader fields form a unique Member/Group/Trader set, also called an MGT.
Password/ Confirm password	Specifies the password for an Exchange MGT. Passwords are only needed for Exchange Trader Logins in some markets. When not needed, TT User Setup disables the **Password** and **Confirm Password** fields.
Alias	Identifies a given gateway login. It is typically the proper name of the user assigned to the gateway login.
Disable "Auto-Calculate-SOD"	Determines whether or not the gateways assigned to this gateway login will be prevented from generating Start-of-Day records. When the **Disable "Auto-Calculate-SOD"** option is checked, gateways will not generate Start-of-Day records for the configured Gateway Login.
Add to Guardian	Designates whether a gateway login will be published to Guardian. The **Add to Guardian** option is only needed for TTORDs and gateway logins that will be risk checked. This option is not available when **DisableProductLimitPublishingMode** is on (refer to the *TT User Setup System Administration Manual* for more information about the **DisableProductLimitPublishingMode** parameter).
Risk Check	Specifies whether Guardian risk checks orders sent with this gateway login. When **Risk Check** is checked, the related risk settings will be applied to a trader's orders.

Field	Description
Trading allowed	Determines whether the gateway login can actively trade.
Ignore P&L	Determines if P&L is used in available credit calculations.
Credit	Specifies the sum of money available at the start of a trading session, which can be affected by a trader's margin and P&L.
Currency	Specifies the currency for the **Credit** field (e.g. USD = United States Dollar).
Override credit for TT SIM	Determines if traders using this gateway login have a different credit limit for TT SIM trading. When **Override credit for TT SIM** is checked, the user's credit limit while trading on TT SIM is set to the value in the **TT SIM credit** field. If **Override credit for TT SIM** is not checked, the user's credit limit applies to both TT SIM and non TT SIM trading.

Gateways

The **Gateways** section on the **Gateway Login Info** tab appears when the MGT entered is not a TTORD. It lists the Gateways assigned to this gateway login. To add additional Gateways, click **Add Gateways** (which opens the **Select Gateway** window) and then select a Gateway to add.

Exchange Traders

The **Exchange Traders** section on the **Gateway Login Info** tab appears when the MGT entered is a TTORD. It lists the exchange traders mapped to and from this gateway login. You can map exchange traders to this gateway login using the **Map to Exchange Traders** button.

From the **Map to Exchange Traders** window, you can also **Create** new exchange traders.

Field	Description
Gateway	Specifies the TT Server that typically connects to a given exchange. A trader connects to a Gateway to trade.
Member	Specifies the broadest type of ID. The **Member** may identify one of the following: • The exchange on which the user trades. • The firm with which the individual user is associated. • A branch office. Member content depends on exchange-specific requirements, as described in the **Trader Login Requirements** table in the *TT User Login and Risk Administration Reference Guide*.
Group	Identifies traders who share an order book (i.e., traders with the same Member and Group can access orders from a common order book). Brokers who manage each other's customer accounts often use groups. Traders who do not want to share an order book use a unique Group.
Trader	Specifies the user-specific identifier for the individual trader. Exchanges might have specific requirements regarding the Trader ID portion as well. For example, on CME a Trader ID can be used to uniquely identify each trader within a firm.

Accounts

Use the **Accounts** section to assign or remove accounts. The **Accounts** section has the following fields:

Field	Description
Account #s	The account number that a trader uses when entering orders. An account number is required for orders submitted with TTORD gateway logins. You can also assign an account number to a trader's customer default(s). (refer to “Creating and Managing X_TRADER Customer Defaults” on page 73.
Description	An optional description of the account number.

When you click **Assign Accounts**, the **Assign Accounts to Gateway Login** window appears. From this window you can select available accounts (by moving an account to the **Selected Accounts** list), or you can **Create** a new account.

Product Limits

The **Product Limits** section contains the following fields:

Field	Description
Gateway	The server a user logs into and trades on using an assigned gateway login (e.g. CME-A).
Product	The name of the product that the trader is allowed to trade. If the product limit applies to all product names for a given Gateway, enter an asterisk (*).
Product Type	The product types to which this product limit applies: Future, Spread, Option, Strategy, Stock, Bond, Swap, Energy, FOREX, NDF, or Warrant.

Field	Description
Margin	The margin amount configured in Guardian for a given product. Margin is the amount of money deducted from a trader's available credit for holding a position. **Note**: If the Product field is set to *, TT User Setup disables the margin field.
Addl Mrgn%	The percentage above or below the exchange-set margin requirement that a trader must have available to trade the contract. In other words, entering a positive percentage increases the exchange margin requirement when calculating risk limits, and entering a negative percentage decreases the exchange margin requirement.
Max Ord Qty	The maximum individual order size that the trader can entered at a time for a specified product.

Field	Description
Max Position	The number of contracts the trader can be long or short for a given contract or product. **Note**: The selected Product Type determines how the **Max Position** field is used for risk checking. For more information, refer to the *TT User Login and Risk Administration Reference Guide*.
Max Long/Short	The sum of all the long contracts and the sum of all the short contracts on a given product.
Trade Out allowed	Whether the trader can exceed the maximum order quantity and available credit limits to reduce his or her risk for the specified contract.
Last Changed	The date of the most recent update to a given product limit.
Last Changed By	The username of the administrator who most recently updated the given product limit.
CreatedDate	The date the product limit was created.
ID	A unique identifier for a product limit. The ID is used in the Audit Trail to distinguish product limit changes. It can help identify a product limit after the product name, for example, is changed.

Group Permissions

The **Group Permissions** tab allows you to assign the user groups that are permitted for this gateway login. Use the transfer buttons (>, <, <<) to add users to the **Gateway Login permitted in the following User Groups** section. You can also click **Create** to create a new user group.

To allow a group administrator to edit and directly assign this gateway login, check the **Group Admins can assign this Gateway Login directly to users without using a TTORD** option. If you uncheck this option, Group Administrators can only map the gateway login to a TTORD (to use it indirectly).

Customizing the Gateway Logins Window

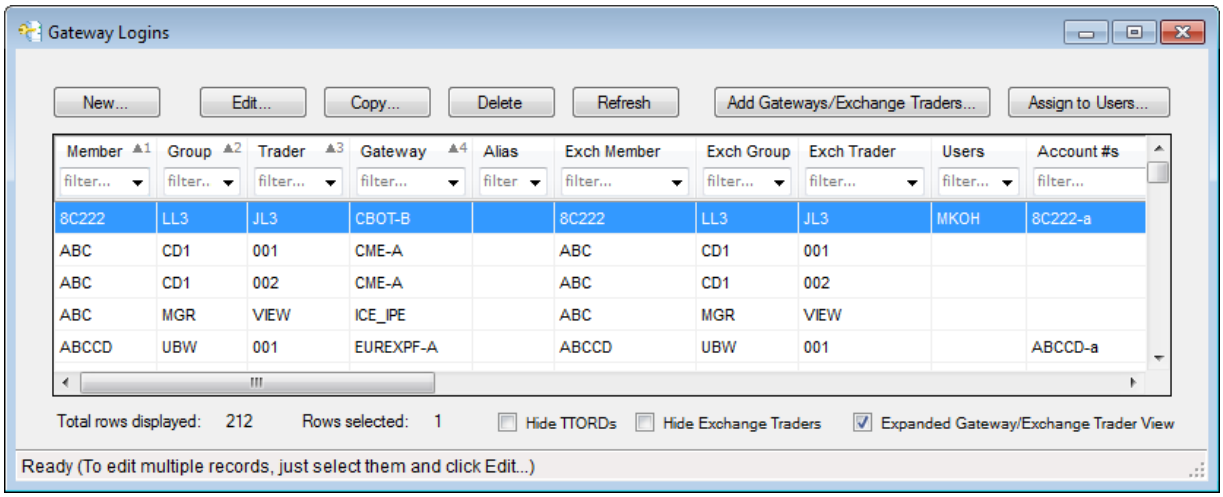
The **Gateway Logins** window displays a list of Member, Group, and Trader IDs (MGTs) and associated gateways. You assign users to these gateway logins, which allows the user to log into TT applications such as **X_TRADER** with their user names and passwords.

The MGTs displayed can include direct trader logins, TTORD logins, and administrator logins.

To display gateway logins:

From the **User Admin** menu, select **Gateway Logins**.

The **Gateway Logins** window appears.



Note: Use the **Refresh** button to refresh your window if the data becomes stale. The **Refresh** feature is useful, when for example, multiple administrators are updating records in TT User Setup.

You can customize the gateway login display so that TTORDs are filtered from view.

Hiding TTORDS

To hide TTORDs:

From the **Gateway Logins** window, check the **Hide TTORDs** option. The **Gateway Logins** window displays only non-TTORD gateway logins.

Hiding Exchange Traders

To hide Exchange Traders:

From the **Gateway Logins** window, check the **Hide Exchange Traders** option. The **Gateway Logins** window displays only non-Exchange Trader gateway logins.

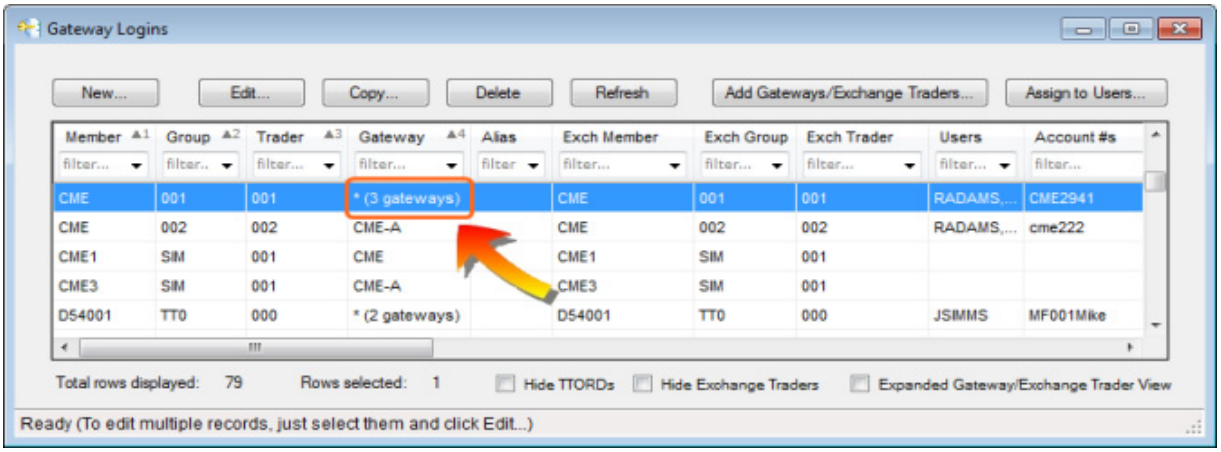
Enabling the Expanded Gateway/Exchange Trader View

When a single MGT has more than one tradable gateway assigned, TT User Setup condenses the rows for each entry into a single row and replaces the Gateway name with an asterisk (*) and the number of gateway rows hidden. To list all the gateways (for example, so that you can filter by a specific gateway type), enable the expanded gateway/exchange trader view.

To expand the gateway/exchange trader view:

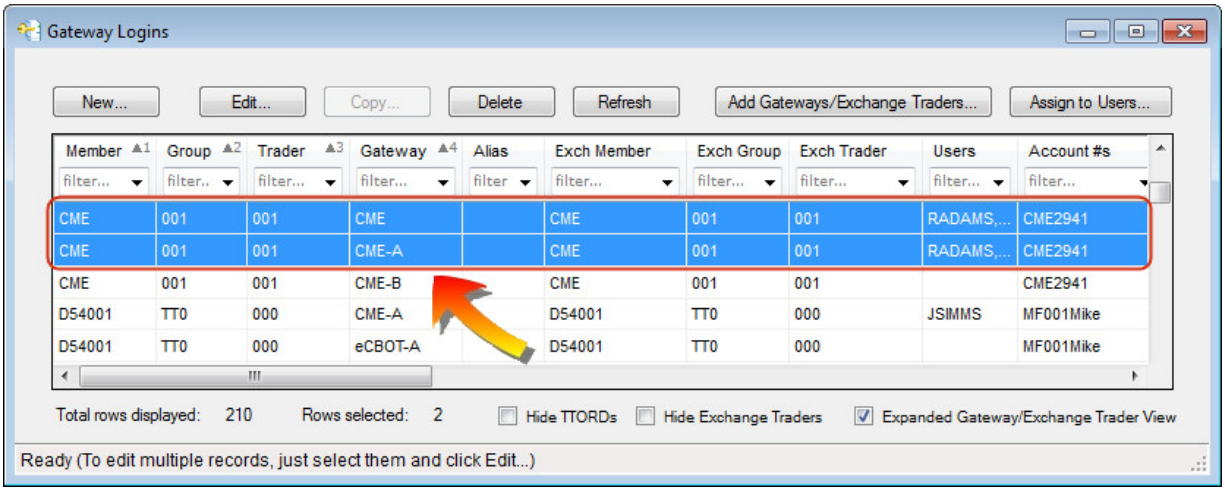
1. From the **User Admin** menu, select **Gateway Logins**.

   The **Gateway Logins** window appears. An asterisk in the **Gateway** column indicates multiple rows are available.



2. Check the **Expanded Gateway/Exchange Trader View** option.

Each entry expanded into separate rows.



Creating Gateway Logins

Creating a New Gateway Login

Gateway logins are the *MemberGroupTrader* IDs used to log into TT Gateways. You can assign unique account numbers and risk limits to each gateway login, and you can assign multiple gateway logins to a single user.

To create a gateway login, complete the following tasks:

- “Assigning the MemberGroupTrader ID” on page 135
- “Disabling Start-of-Day Records” on page 136
- “Assigning Gateways to Gateway Logins” on page 137 (for Exchange Trader IDs)
  OR
  “Mapping a TTORD to an Exchange Trader” on page 138.
- “Assigning Accounts” on page 141
- “Configuring Risk” on page 143
- “Publishing to Guardian” on page 205

Assigning the MemberGroupTrader ID

A gateway login is either an Exchange Trader ID or a TTORD ID.

- **Exchange Trader ID**: A login assigned in part by the exchange that indicates the user’s membership with the exchange. All traders need an exchange trader ID or must be associated with one to trade with an exchange.
- **TTORD ID**: A proxy login that allows multiple logins to be mapped to a single exchange membership. It also allows for more configurable order routing and risk limit setups.

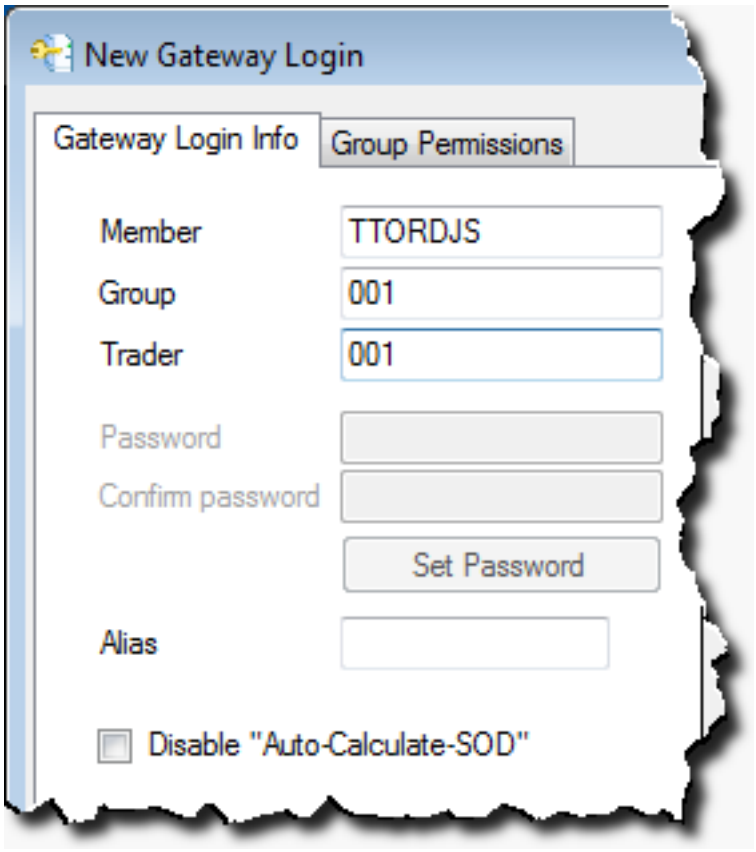
For more information about defining gateway logins, refer to the *TT User Login and Risk Administration Reference Manual*.

To assign the MemberGroupTrader ID:

1. From the **User Admin** menu, select **Gateway Logins** and then click **New**.

   Note: You can also create gateway logins from the **New User** or **Edit User** window. For more information refer to “Creating a New Gateway Login through the Users Window” on page 82

   The **New Gateway Login** window appears.



2. Enter the appropriate ID data in the **Member**, **Group**, and **Trader** fields.
3. When creating Direct Trader gateway logins on certain Gateways (e.g., Eurex, ICE, CBOT, and LIFFE), the **Password** and **Confirm Password** fields are enabled because they are required by the exchange. Enter the appropriate password in the fields.
4. Do one of the following:
5. For exchange traders, continue to the “Assigning Gateways to Gateway Logins” on page 137 topic.
6. For TTORDs, continue to the “Mapping a TTORD to an Exchange Trader” on page 138 topic.

   Note: When you enter a TTORD in the **Member** field, the **Map to Exchange Traders** button appears automatically. Otherwise the **Add Gateways** button appears.

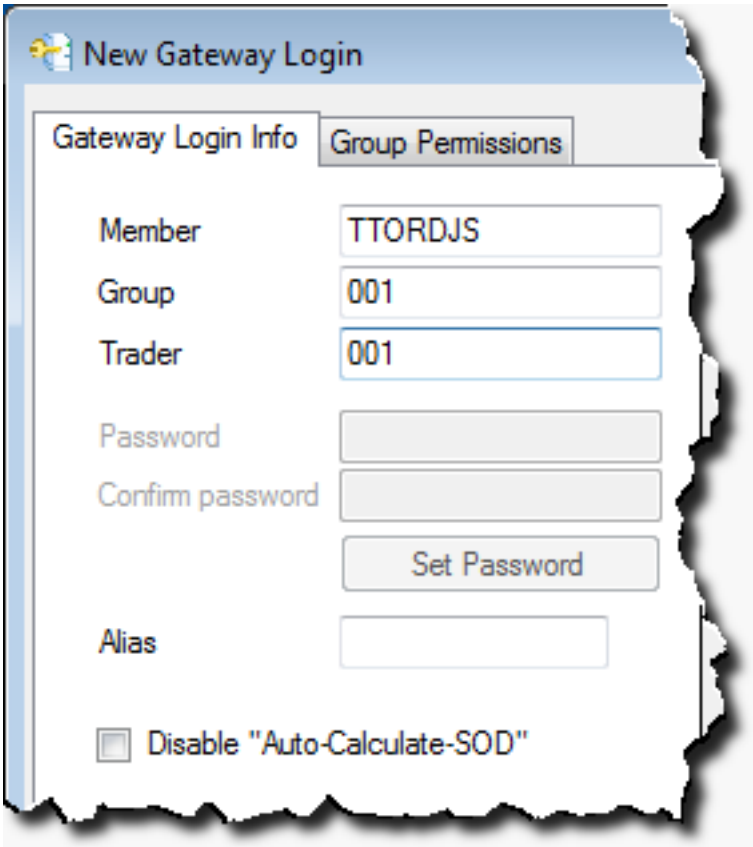
Disabling Start-of-Day Records

Per Gateway Login (MGT), you can configure whether a Gateway should automatically generate Start-of-Day records. When the **Disable "Auto-Calculate-SOD"** option is checked, gateways will not generate Start-of-Day records for the configured Gateway Login.

To disable Start-of-Day Records:

1. Open the **New Gateway Logins** or **Edit Gateway Logins** window.

2. Check the **Disable "Auto-Calculate-SOD"** option to prevent SOD records from being generated for this gateway login.



Assigning Gateways to Gateway Logins

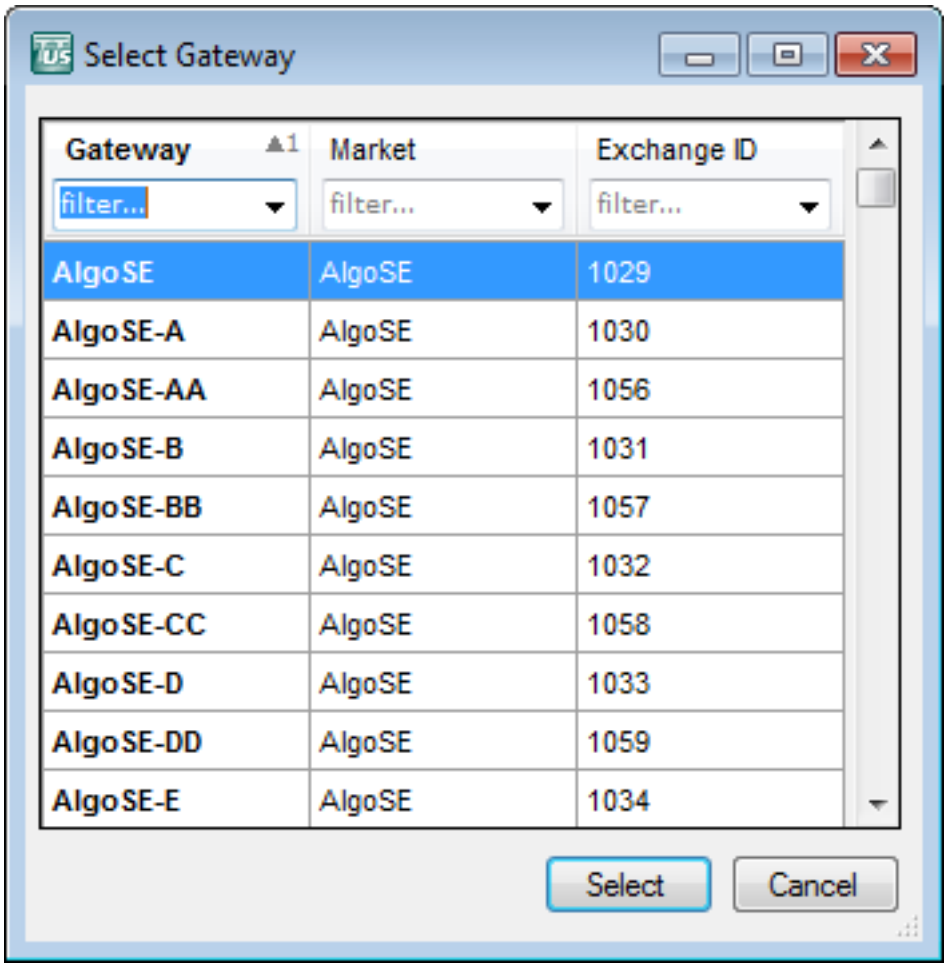
When creating an exchange trader login, you must assign at least one gateway to the gateway login.

To assign a gateway to a gateway login:

1. From the **Edit Gateway Login** window, click **Add Gateways**.

   Note: You can also assign gateway(s) to one or more gateway login(s) from the Gateway Logins window. Refer to the “Assigning Gateways to Multiple Gateway Logins” on page 150 topic.

   The **Select Gateway** window appears.



Note: If you add a new market to the TT User Setup environment, you must restart the TT User Setup server before the new market is available from the **Select Gateway** window.

2. Click the row of the gateway(s) you want to add, and click **Select**.

   Note: You might need to create a password, depending on the gateway to which you mapped the gateway login.

3. If you want to manage risk for this gateway login, check the **Add to Guardian** option and continue to the “Assigning Accounts” on page 141 topic. Otherwise, click **Save**.

You have successfully created a gateway login.

Mapping a TTORD to an Exchange Trader

While the TT system associates a trader's order book and risk limits with a TTORD, the trader's trades go to the exchange using the Exchange Trader credentials configured here. TT User Setup allows you to map TTORD gateway login(s) to one or more exchange traders.

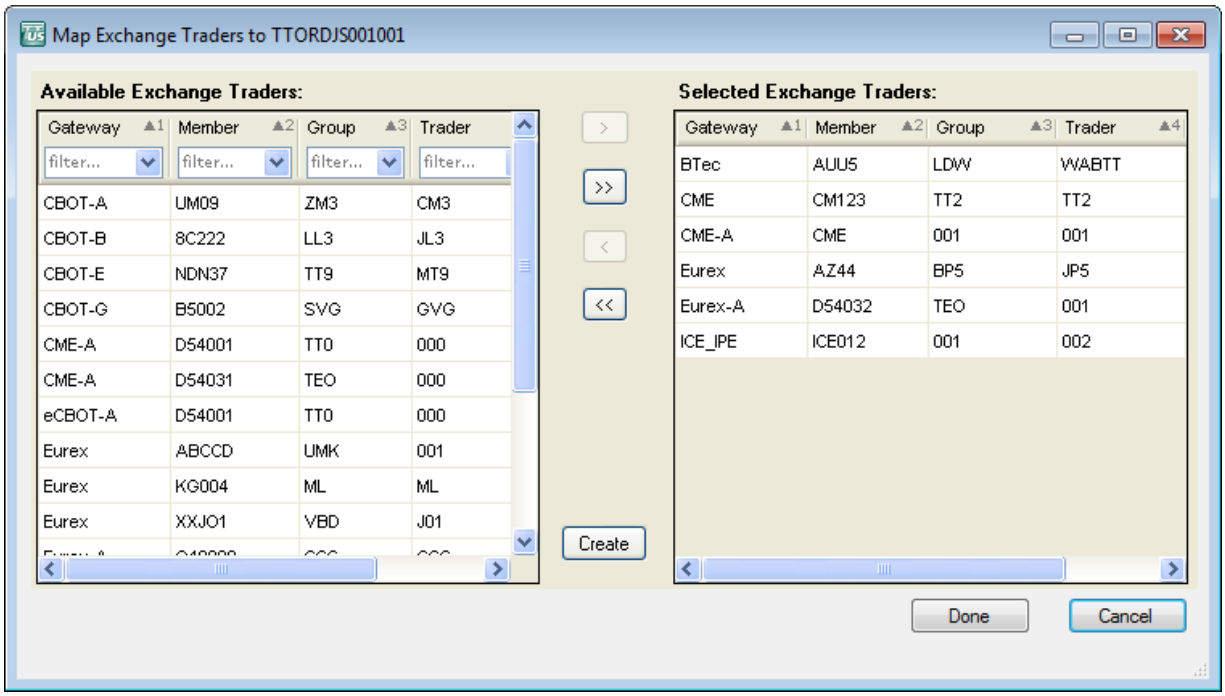
When setting up a TTORD, you use the **Map to Exchange Traders** button to assign the TTORD to the Exchange Traders. For more information about how to configure TTORDs, refer to the *TT User Login and Risk Administration Reference Guide*.

Note: You cannot save a TTORD gateway login unless it is mapped to at least one exchange trader.

To map a TTORD gateway login to an exchange trader:

1. From the **Edit Gateway Login** window, click **Map to Exchange Traders**. This button only appears when the Member portion of the MGT is a TTORD.

   The **Map Exchange Traders to** window appears. This window displays both exchange traders not currently assigned to the TTORD (Available Exchange Traders) and those that are currently assigned to the TTORD (Selected Exchange Traders).



2. Using the transfer arrow buttons (>, >>, <, <<), move one or more exchange traders (MGTs) from the **Available Exchange Traders** section to the **Selected Exchange Traders** section.

   Note: If the exchange trader does not exist, click **Create** to create it. After you save the new exchange trader, it is automatically added to the **Selected Exchange Traders** section.

3. Click **Done**.

   Additional exchange traders appear in the **Edit Gateway Login** window.

4. Because you are creating a TTORD gateway login, you must also assign an account number. Continue to the "Assigning Accounts" on page 141 topic.

Adding Gateways to Existing TTORDs

You can assign gateway(s) to existing TTORDs from the **Gateway Logins** window. This is useful when the TTORD already exists and is assigned to the correct exchange traders, but needs to be assigned additional gateways.

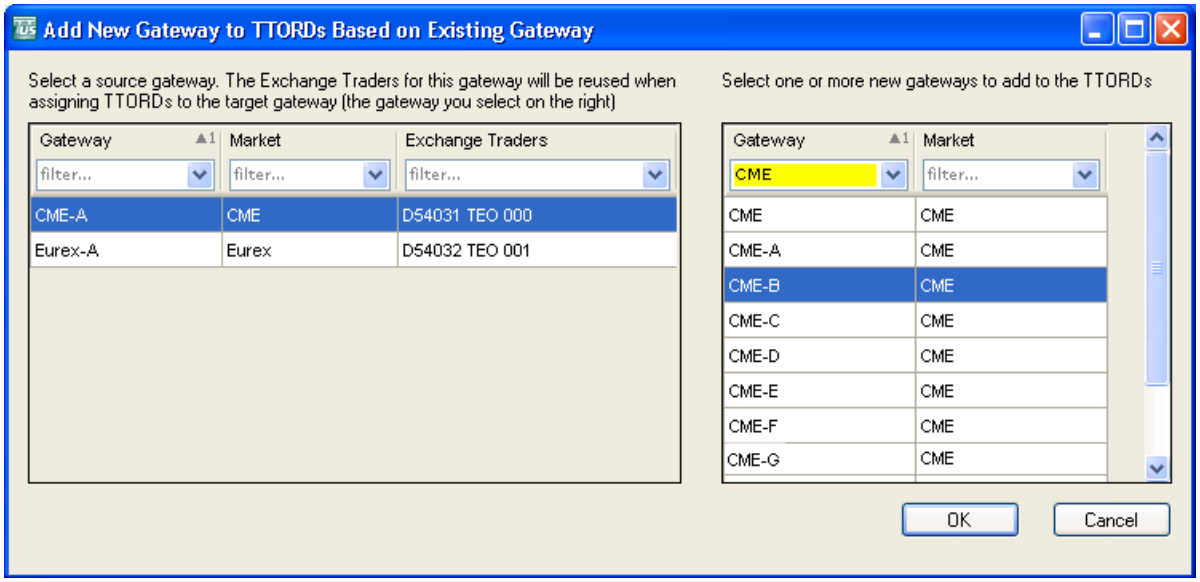
Note: The selected gateway logins must all be tradable TTORDs.

Example: 50 traders trade on the CME-A gateway using unique TTORDs. Later, a CME-B gateway is added as a backup to CME-A. In this case you could add the CME-B Gateway to the traders' existing TTORDs

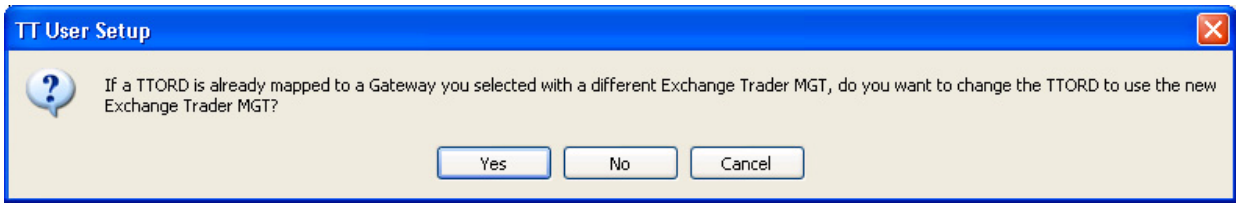
To assign gateways to existing TTORDs:

1. From the **Gateway Logins** window, select one or more gateway logins (make sure to select only TTORDs).
2. Click **Add Gateways/Exchange Traders**.
3. From the **Add Gateways/Exchange Traders to TTORDs** window, select **The selected TTORDs are already assigned to the correct exchange traders, but I want to add a new gateway**..., and then click **Continue**.

   The Add New Gateway to TTORDs Based on Existing Gateway window appears.



4. Select the Gateway(s) to add to the TTORD, and then click **OK**.
5. When prompted to change the TTORD to use the new exchange trader MGT, click **Yes** if the TTORD should be configured to use the new exchange trader MGT, or click **No** if the TTORD should continue to use the original exchange trader MGT.



You have successfully added a gateway to an existing TTORD.

Note: Added gateways are configured with the **Available to User** setting unchecked by default; users cannot trade on the new gateways. To make the gateway available to an individual user, access the **Gateway Logins** tab on the **Edit User** window and check the **Available to User** checkbox. To make the gateway available to multiple users, access the **User's Gateway Login Attributes** window, select the gateway's users, click **Edit** and then check the **Available to User** checkbox.

Assigning Accounts

You must assign one or more accounts to a gateway login in the following situations:

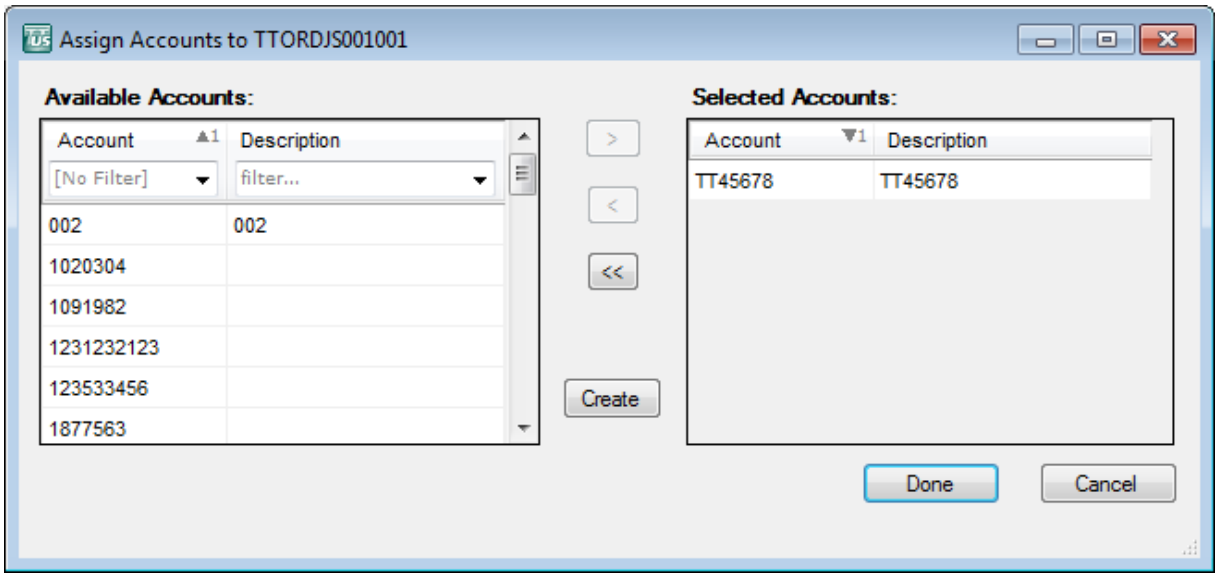
- The **Add to Guardian** risk feature is checked.
- You are creating a TTORD ID.

Note: When entering orders, a Trader using a TTORD must use one of the account numbers assigned to the TTORD. TT recommends configuring the trader's customer defaults to help ensure that proper account numbers are used (refer to “Creating and Managing X_TRADER Customer Defaults” on page 73 for more information).

To assign an Account:

1. From the **Edit Gateway Login** window, click **Assign Accounts**.

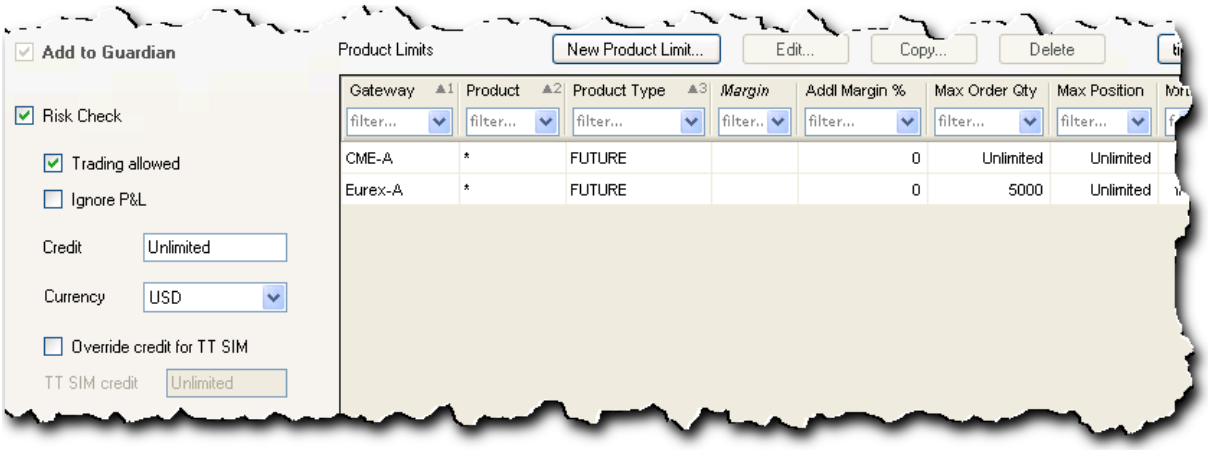
   The **Assign Accounts to Exchange Trader ID** window appears.



2. If accounts have already been created, use the arrow buttons to transfer one or more accounts from the **Available Accounts** section to the **Selected Accounts** section.

   Note: Accounts are case sensitive. For example, one trader's account number can be CME1 , and another's can be cme1.

3. If you need to create a new account, click **Create**, enter the account number and description, and then click **Save**. The new account appears in the **Selected Accounts** section.
4. Click **Done**.
5. When you are finished adding accounts, do one of the following:
6. Add risk limits (refer to the "Configuring Risk" on page 143 topic)
7. Uncheck the **Risk Check** option to disable risk checking.

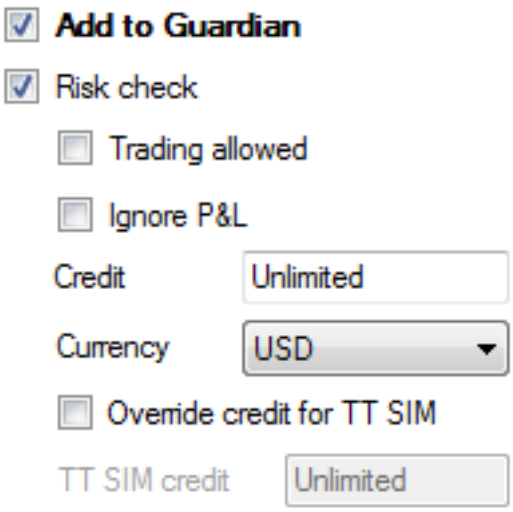


8. After you configure or disable risk limits, **Save** your changes.
9. If needed, publish the changes to Guardian (refer to "Publishing to Guardian" on page 205).

Configuring Risk

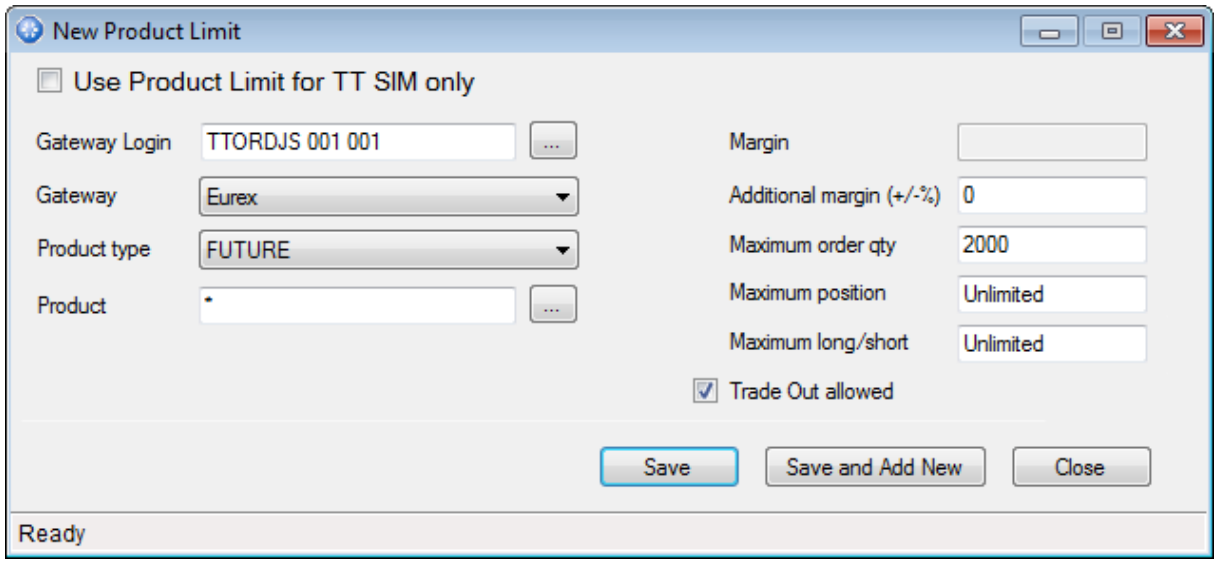
To configure risk:

1. On the **New Gateway Logins** or **Edit Gateway Logins** window, check **Add to Guardian**. The **Risk Check** option is checked by default.



2. Enter or edit data in the **Risk Check**, **Credit**, **Currency**, **Trading allowed**, **Ignore P&L**, and **Risk Check** fields as needed. If traders using this gateway login need to have a different credit limit for TT SIM trading, check the **Override credit for TT SIM** checkbox and enter the TT SIM credit limit into the **TT SIM credit** field.
3. In the **Product Limits** section, click **New Product Limit**.

   The **New Product Limit** window appears.



4. If this product limit applies only to TT SIM trading, check the **Use Product Limit for TT SIM only** checkbox. When creating TT SIM product limits you must enter a specific **Product**; you cannot enter a wildcard (*).
5. Select an available **Gateway** and **Product type**, enter an applicable **Product**, set the **Margin** and **Additional Margin %**, set the **Maximum order quantity**, **Maximum position**, and **Maximum long/short**, and then check or uncheck the **Trade Out allowed** option. Enter 0 to reset the **Maximum order quantity**, **Maximum position**, and **Maximum long/short**to **unlimited**.
6. Click **Save**.

   For more detailed information, refer to the “Configuring Gateway Login Risk” on page 166 , **Creating Product Limits for Gateway Logins**, and “Creating TT SIM Credit Limits and Product Limits” on page 322 topics.

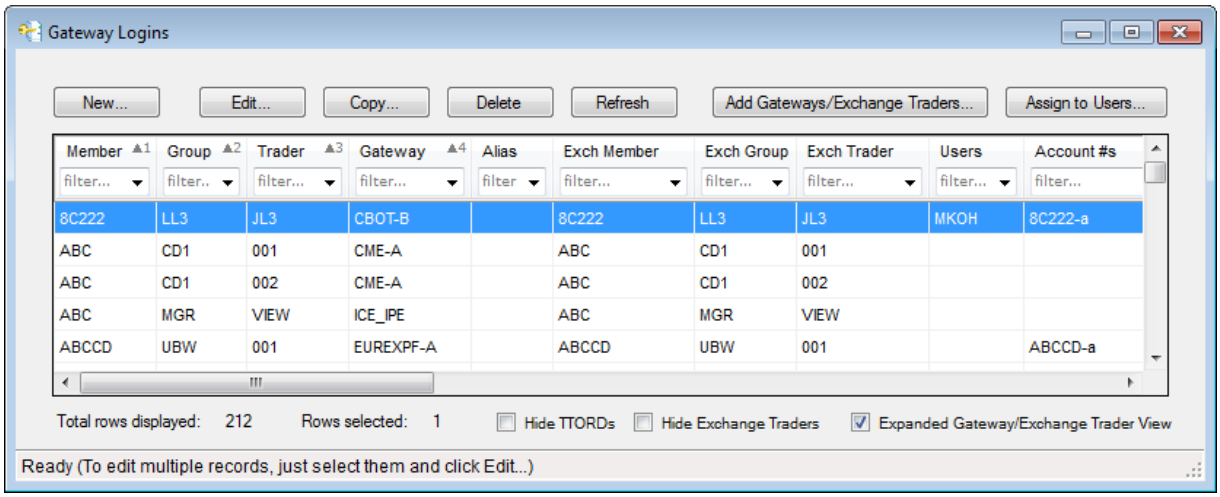
Assigning Users to a Gateway Login

You can assign one or more users to a specific gateway login from the **Gateway Logins** window. While assigning the users, you can also edit the Login Attributes for that login.

Note: You can also assign one or more gateway logins to a single user from the **New User** or **Edit User** window. Refer to the “Assigning Gateway Logins to a User Through the Users Window” on page 83 topic for more information.

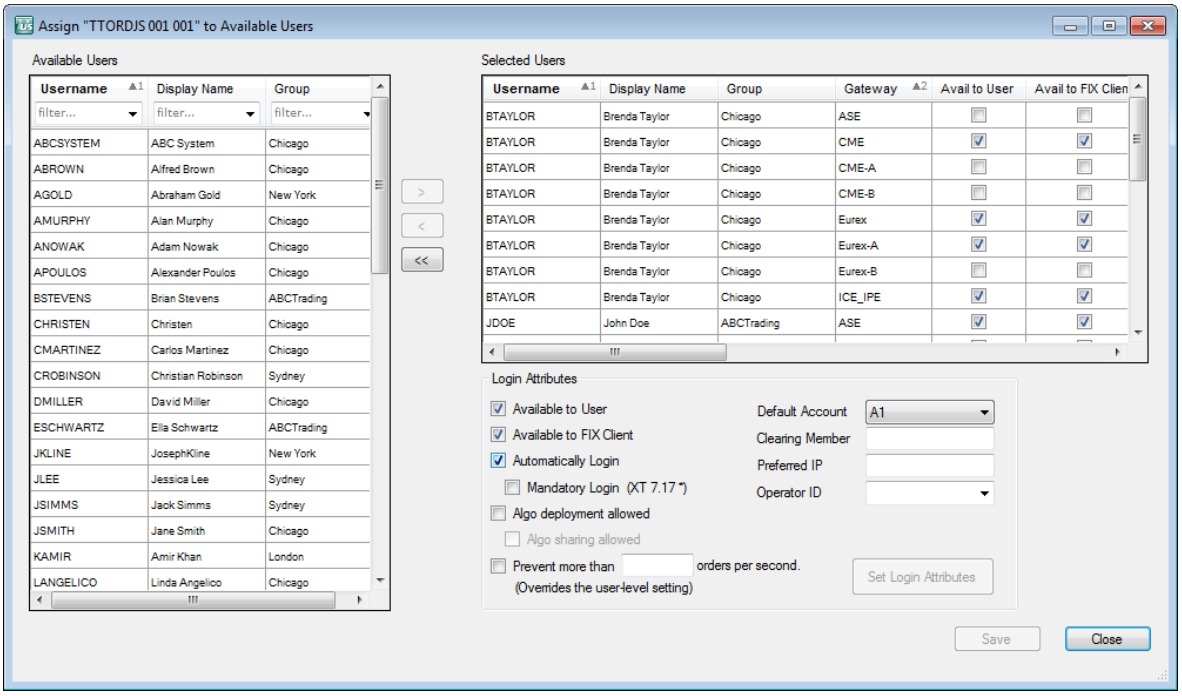
To assign users to a gateway login:

1. From the **User Admin** menu, select **Gateway Logins** and then click the gateway login you want to assign to one or more users.



2. Click **Assign to Users**.

   The **Assign Gateway Login to Available Users** window appears.



3. The **Available Users** list displays all the users you can assign to this gateway login. Select the user(s) that you want to assign to the gateway login.

   Note: Press the **Ctrl** key to select multiple users.

4. Using the transfer arrow buttons (>, <, >>, <<), move the selected user(s) from the **Available Users** section to the **Selected Users** section.

   Note: When assigning a user to a TTORD that is used for multiple Gateways, each Gateway appears as a separate entry in the **Selected Users** list.

5. Review the login attributes listed for the users in the **Selected Users** list. If any attributes need to be changed (for example, if you wanted to disable **Auto Login**), select the user, edit the attributes in the **Login Attributes** section, and then click **Set login attributes**. If you select multiple users, the change will apply to the selected users.

   Note: Use the **Prevent more than X orders per second (overrides the User-Level setting)** option to set the maximum rate of orders per second allowed per TT Gateway and override the user-level setting. For more details, refer to “Overriding the Order Throughput Controls” on page 194.

   Note: The **Auto Login** option is selected automatically when a user is assigned to a gateway login.

6. Click **Save**.

You have successfully assigned users to a gateway login.

Editing a User's Gateway Login Attributes

The **User's Gateway Login Attributes** window displays all the users, the gateway logins to which they are assigned, and various attributes applied to each specific login.

Use this window to edit attributes across one or more users simultaneously.

The login attribute options include:

Login Attribute	Description
Available to User	Indicates whether a user has access to a given gateway login after performing a universal login.
Available to FIX Client	Indicates whether a FIX Client has access to a given gateway login after performing a universal login.
Automatically login	Specifies that a user will automatically be logged into a gateway after logging into **X_TRADER**.

Login Attribute	Description
Mandatory login	Indicates whether the user must log onto this Gateway when logging into TT applications. Check this option to prevent users from bypassing risk limits by not logging into a specific Gateway.
Algo deployment allowed	Indicates whether the user is allowed to deploy strategies to an AlgoSE Server. This setting is only valid when the Gateway is an AlgoSE Server.
Algo sharing allowed	Indicates whether the user is allowed to share algorithms with other users on Algo SE servers. This setting is only valid when the Gateway is an AlgoSE Server and when the **Algo deployment allowed** option is checked.
Default Account	Refers to the account and associated numeric CTI value for all orders sent through an order session. For more information on CTI/Origin values, refer to the **TT CME Gateway System Administration Manual** or any other applicable TT Gateway System Administration Manual.
Clearing Member	Designates a member firm of a clearing house through which trades are settled.
Preferred IP	Specifies the IP address of the gateway through which you want the user's first login attempt to be made. If unavailable, TT User Setup automatically selects an alternate IP address of the same gateway type.
Operator ID	Specifies the Operator ID that is used to identify the trader or operator to the exchange.
Prevent more than X orders per second (overrides the User-Level setting)	The maximum rate of orders per second allowed per TT Gateway. This setting overrides the rate set for all TT Gateways assigned to a user.

Scenario: The following procedure describes a situation in which multiple users connected to the same gateway (e.g. CME) lose access, and you must quickly make an alternative gateway (e.g. CME-A) available to each user simultaneously.

Note: This procedure assumes that each applicable user has been assigned to both the CME and CME-A gateways. For a detailed description of assigning users, refer to "Assigning Users to a Gateway Login" on page 144.

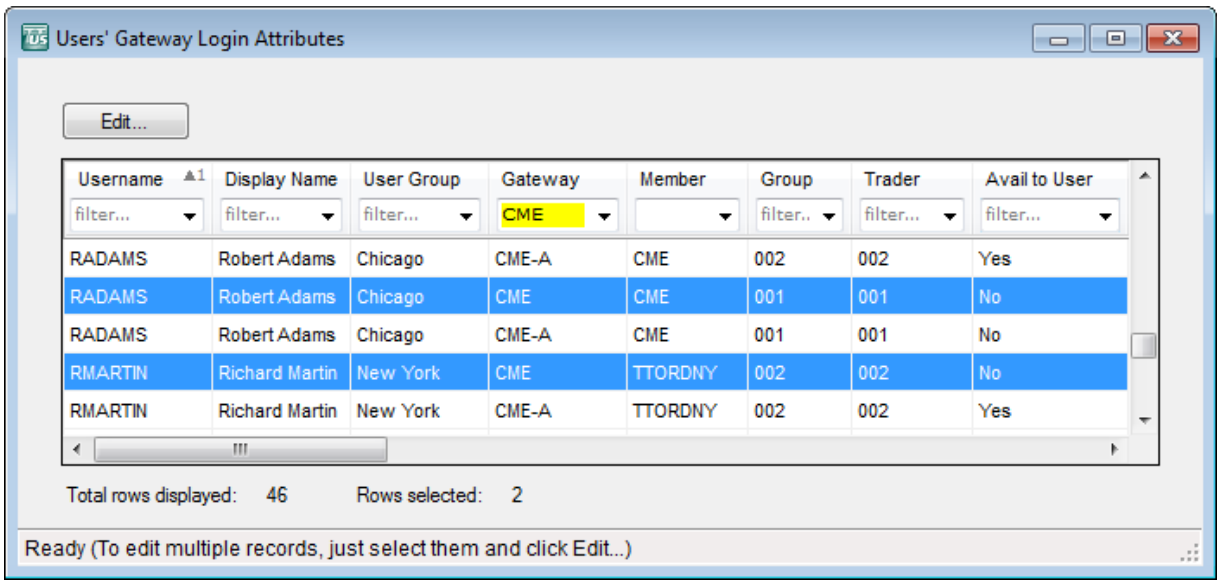
To provide an alternative gateway to multiple users:

1. From the **User Admin** menu, select **User's Gateway Login Attributes**.

   The **User's Gateway Login Attributes** window appears.

2. Filter the **Gateway** column by entering *CME* into the Gateway filter field.
3. Holding down the **Ctrl** key, click the applicable user rows for which you want to make the associated login unavailable.

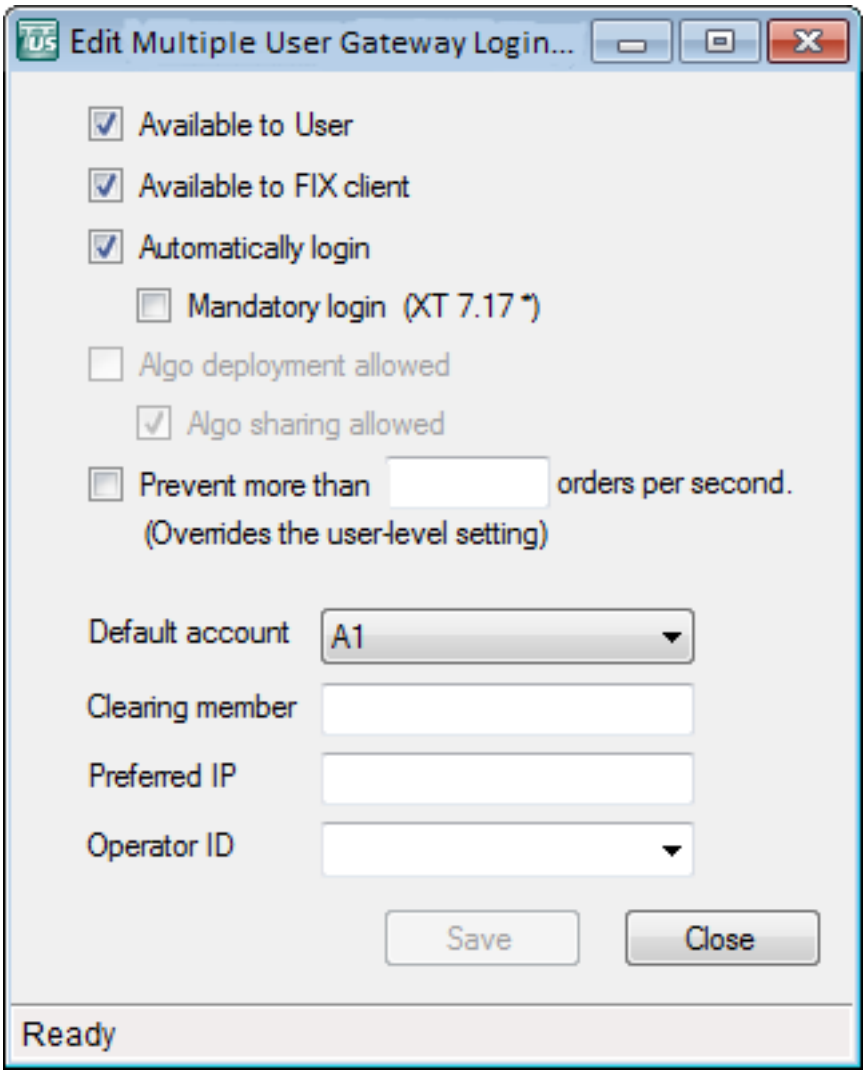
   Note: Alternatively, you could enter *=CME* as the Gateway filter, and then press the **Ctrl** and **a** keys to select all the CME Gateways.



4. Click **Edit**.

   On the **Edit multiple user Gateway Login records** prompt, click **OK** .

   The **Edit Multiple User Gateway Login Attributes** window appears.



5. Uncheck the **Available to User** option to disable the feature.
6. Click **Save**.

   The **Available To User** column on the **User's Gateway Login Attributes** window shows the value unchecked.

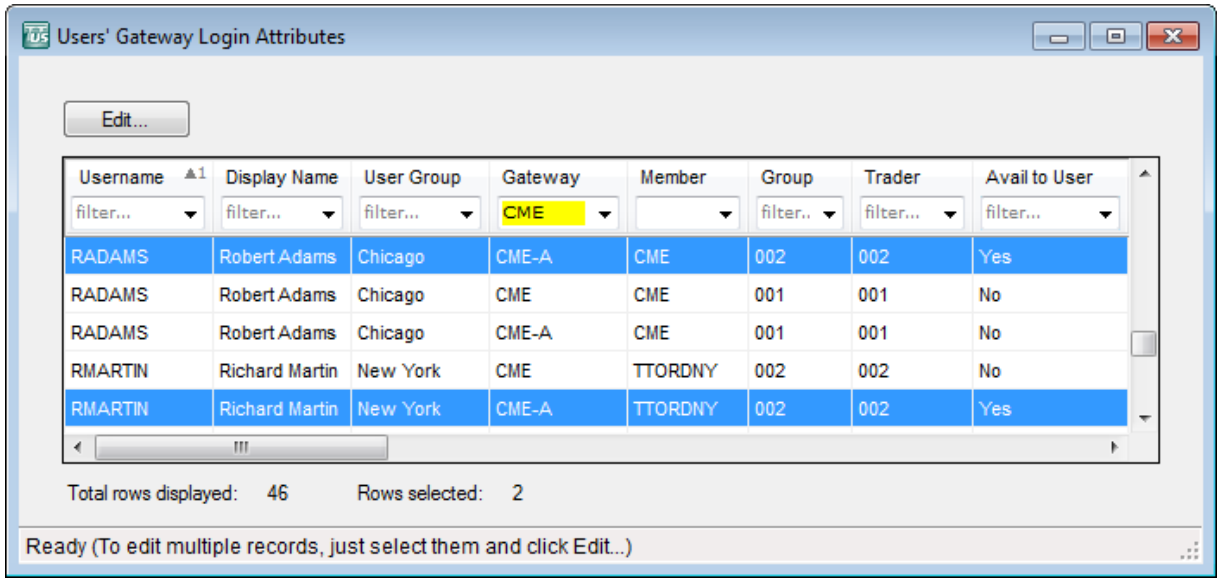
7. On the **User's Gateway Login Attributes** window, filter the **Gateway** column by *=CME-A*.
8. Holding down the **Ctrl** key, click the applicable user rows for which you want to make the associated login available.
9. Click **Edit**.

   On the **Edit multiple user Gateway Login records** prompt, click **OK**.

   The **Edit Multiple User Gateway Login Attributes** window appears.

10. Check the **Available to user** option to enable the feature.
11. Click **Save**.

The CME-A gateway is made available to the applicable user's associated gateway login.



Note: A single user cannot have more than one MGT login set to **Available To User** for identical gateways. In the example above, user RADAMS can only have one CME-A row marked **Available To User** even if he has two different MGTs for CME-A.

You have successfully provided multiple users access to an alternative gateway.

Assigning Gateways to Multiple Gateway Logins

You can assign gateway(s) to multiple gateway login(s) from the **Gateway Logins** window. This is useful when the same gateways need to be added to more than one gateway login, or when you must add a new Exchange Trader to multiple TTORD Gateway Logins.

Note: The selected gateway logins must all be tradable TTORDs or all be exchange traders and non-tradable TTORDs. You cannot mass add gateways to a mixed selection of tradable TTORDs and exchange traders.

To assign gateways to multiple gateway logins:

1. From the **Gateway Logins** window, select one or more gateway logins (make sure to select only TTORDs or only exchange traders).
2. Click **Add Gateways/Exchange Traders**.
3. If you selected TTORDs:
    1. From the **Add Gateways/Exchange Traders to TTORDs** window, select **I want to create a new exchange trader or choose an existing one**..., and then click **Continue**.

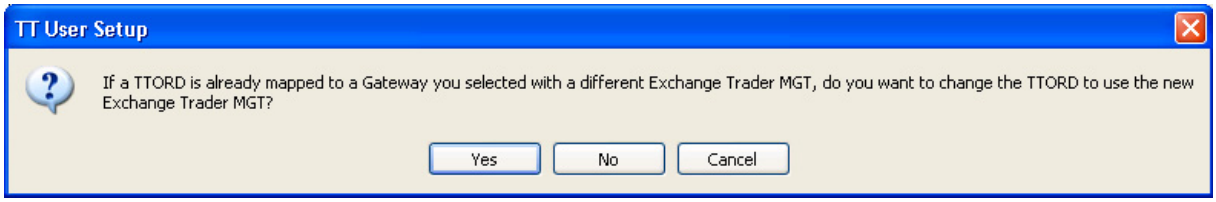
       The **Map Exchange Traders to** window appears.

2. Move one or more exchange traders (MGTs) from the **Available Exchange Traders** section to the **Selected Exchange Traders** section and then click **Done**.

   Note: If the exchange trader does not exist, click **Create** to create it. After you save the new exchange trader, it is automatically added to the **Selected Exchange Traders** section.

   For more information, refer to the "Mapping a TTORD to an Exchange Trader" on page 138 topic.

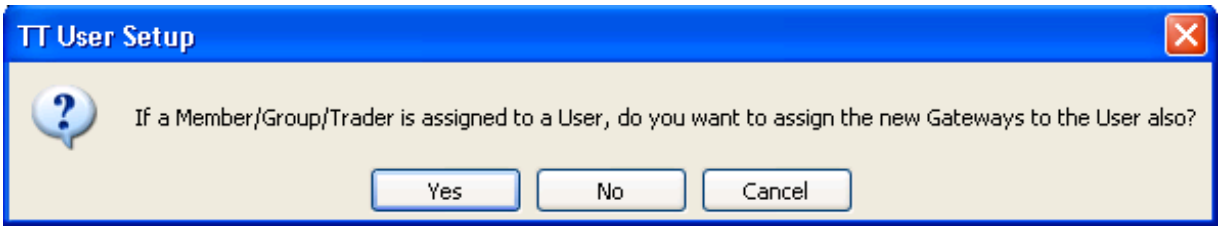
3. When prompted to change the TTORD to use the new exchange trader MGT, click **Yes** to configure the TTORD to use the new exchange trader MGT, or click **No** to configure the TTORD to use the original exchange trader MGT.



4. If you did not select TTORDs:
   1. From the **Select Gateway** window, select one or more gateways, and then click **Select**. For more information, refer to the "Assigning Gateways to Gateway Logins" on page 137 topic.

      Note: If you add a new market to the TT User Setup environment, you must restart the TT User Setup server before the new market is available from the **Select Gateway** window.

   2. When prompted to assign new gateways to users that are assigned one of the selected MGTs, click **Yes**to assign the user(s) to the new gateway, click **No** if you do not want to assign the user to the new gateway.



   You have successfully assigned the selected gateways.

Account Administration

Account Administration Overview

Typically, an order sent to the exchange includes an account number. Account numbers are usually entered into the account field (in X_TRADER, for example).

In TT User Setup, risk administrators can predefine accounts. Once defined, administrators can:

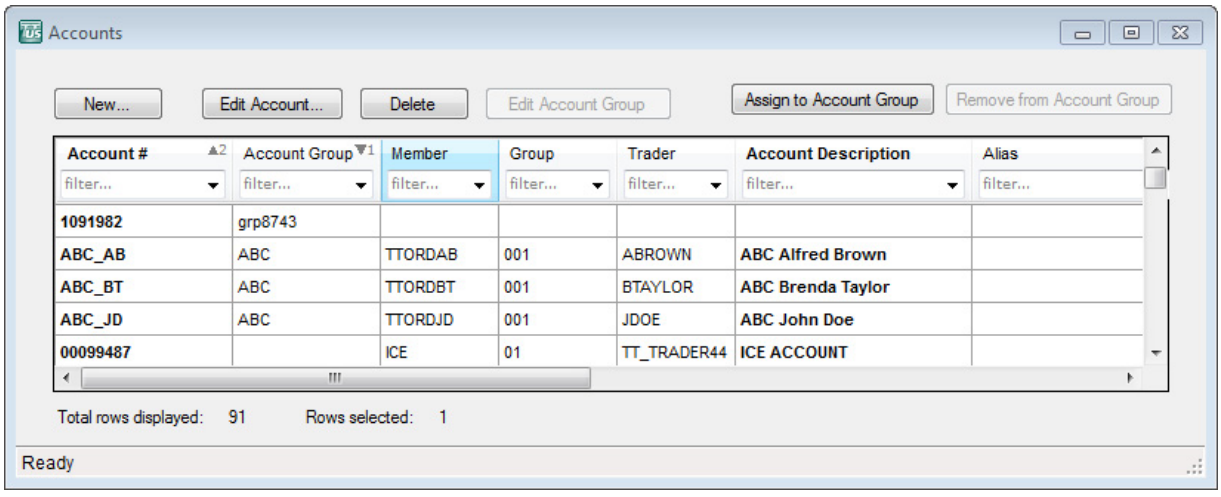
- Add accounts to customer defaults (e.g. to predetermine which accounts will be applied to which orders)
- Assign accounts to traders' Gateway Logins
- Add accounts to account groups
- Configure risk limits for accounts/account groups

Note: Account-based risk-checking is independent of any risk checking that may be configured for the user or Member/Group/Trader (MGT).

Note: When accounts are added to an account group, the account group's risk settings are used instead of the account's risk settings. For more information about account groups, refer to the "Account Administration Overview" on page 153 topic.

To create and configure accounts, refer to the following topics:

- "Creating Accounts" on page 154
- "Assigning One or More Accounts to an Account Group" on page 156
- "Adding Account-Level Risk Checking" on page 175
- "Creating Product Limits for Accounts and Account Groups" on page 176
- "Creating Margin Limits for Accounts and Account Groups" on page 180



Note: The **Accounts** window is a standard data grid except that you cannot copy or mass-edit accounts. Refer to the "Data Grid Functionality" on page 25 topic if needed.

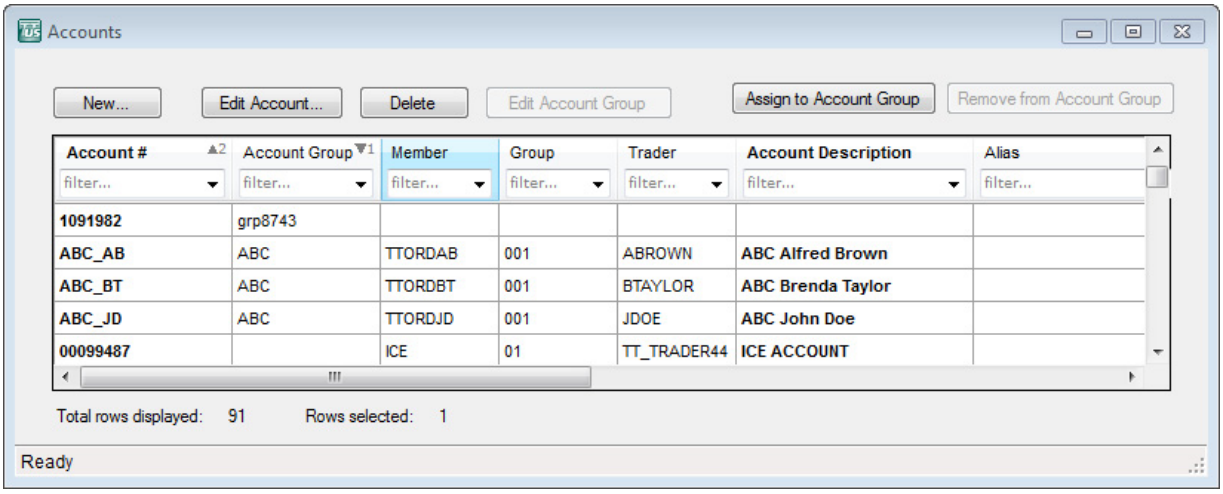
Creating Accounts

Create accounts from the **Accounts** window. You can also assign product and margin limits to an account, or disable trading for an account.

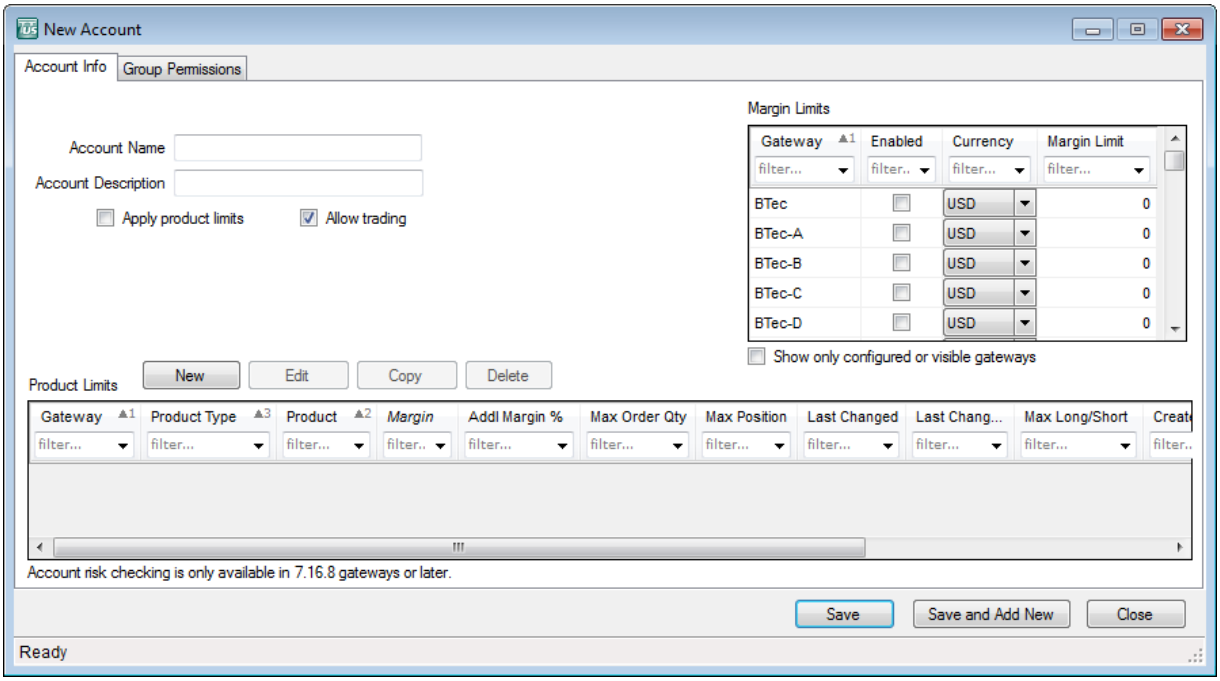
Note: To assign an account to an account group refer to the "Assigning One or More Accounts to an Account Group" on page 156 topic.

To create a new account:

1. From the **User Admin** menu, select **Accounts**.



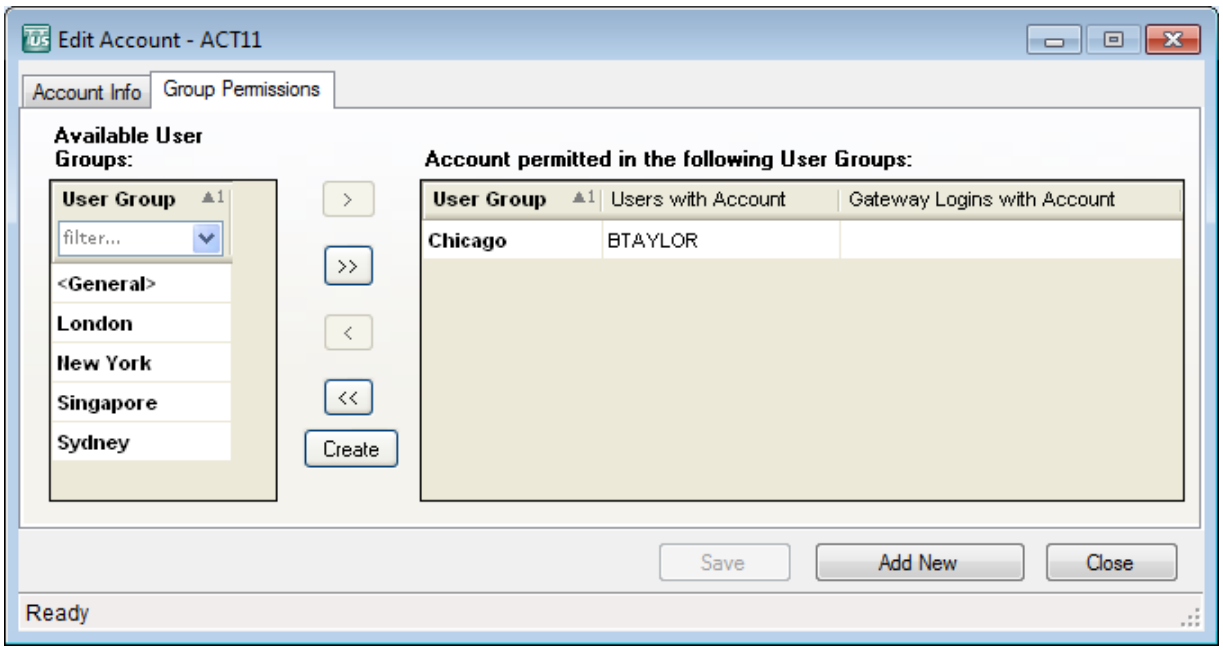
2. From the **Accounts** window, click **New**.



3. In the **New Account** window, enter the new account name into the **Account name** field, and a description into the **Account description** field.
4. Configure the product limits as described in the "Creating Product Limits for Accounts and Account Groups" on page 176 topic. When you are ready for the product limits to be applied, check the **Apply product limits** option. No account or account group risk checking will take place until this option is enabled.
5. To allow users with this account to trade, check the **Allow trading** option. To reject trades submitted with this account number, uncheck the **Allow trading** option.

   Note: Users logging in with Gateway Logins that end in MGR (e.g., TTADM XXX MGR) can delete orders, regardless of whether or not "Allow Trading" is checked for a given account.

6. Configure any gateway-specific margin limits as described in the "Creating Margin Limits for Accounts and Account Groups" on page 180 topic.
7. If needed, you can permission an account for use within one or more specific user groups.
   1. Click the **Group Permissions** tab.



2. Use the transfer buttons (<,<<,>>,>) to select users from the **Available User Groups** list and add them to the **Account permitted in the following User Groups** list.
3. If the group does not exist, click **Create**.

8. Click **Save**.
9. To assign risk limits to the account group refer to the "Adding Account Group-Level Risk Checking" on page 176 topic.

You have successfully created a new account group.

Note: To prevent users from using accounts that have not been defined in TT User Setup, make sure the **Submitting orders with undefined accounts allowed** option is unchecked (the default setting). To configure this setting, refer to the "Applying Basic User Properties" on page 69 topic.

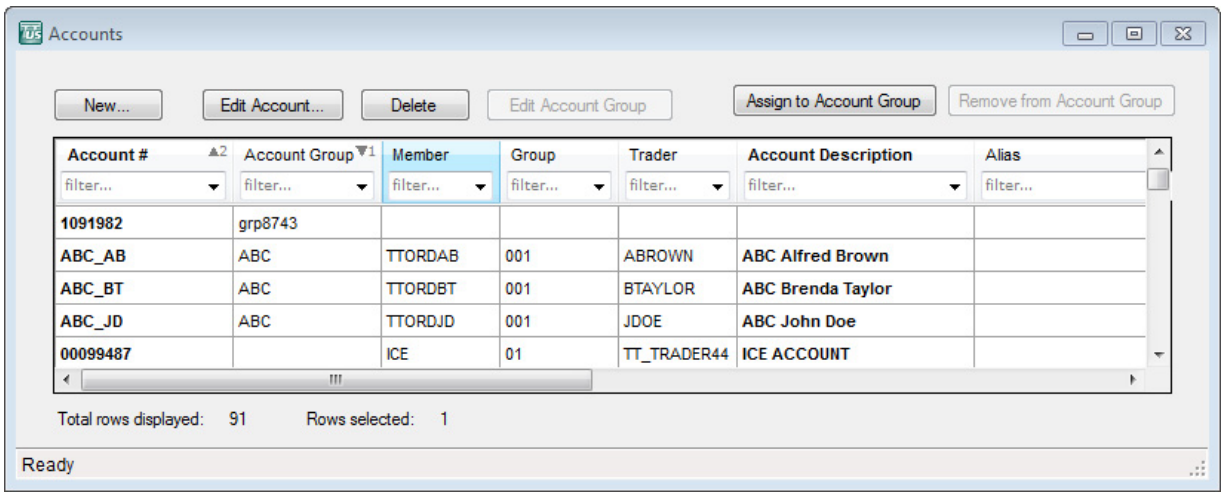
Note: To only allow an X_RISK administrator to publish manual fills or start-of-day records to accounts within specified user groups, configure the **Restrict X_RISK administrator to publishing...** option. To configure this setting, refer to the "Applying X_RISK Properties" on page 73 topic.

Assigning One or More Accounts to an Account Group

You can assign one or more accounts to a single account group from the **Accounts** window. To create an account refer to the "Creating Accounts" on page 154 topic and to create an account group, refer to the "Creating Account Groups" on page 160 topic.

To assign accounts to an account group:

1. From the **User Admin** menu, select **Accounts**.



2. From the **Accounts** window, select one or more accounts to assign to a group, and then click **Assign to Account Group**. This option is also available from the right-click menu.

3. From the **Assign Account Group** window, select an account group and then click **OK**. If the account group does not exist, click **New** and create an account group (refer to the "Creating Account Groups" on page 160 topic if needed). The accounts will lose any existing risk configuration and inherit the risk parameters of the assigned groups.
4. To remove an account from an account group, select one or more accounts and then select **Remove from account group**.

Note: To assign risk limits to the account group refer to the "Adding Account Group-Level Risk Checking" on page 176.

Note: To determine which accounts are assigned to a group, you can either filter the **Account Group** column in the **Accounts** window, or open the **Edit Account Group** window and view the list of **Associated Accounts**.

Account Group Administration

Account Group Administration Overview

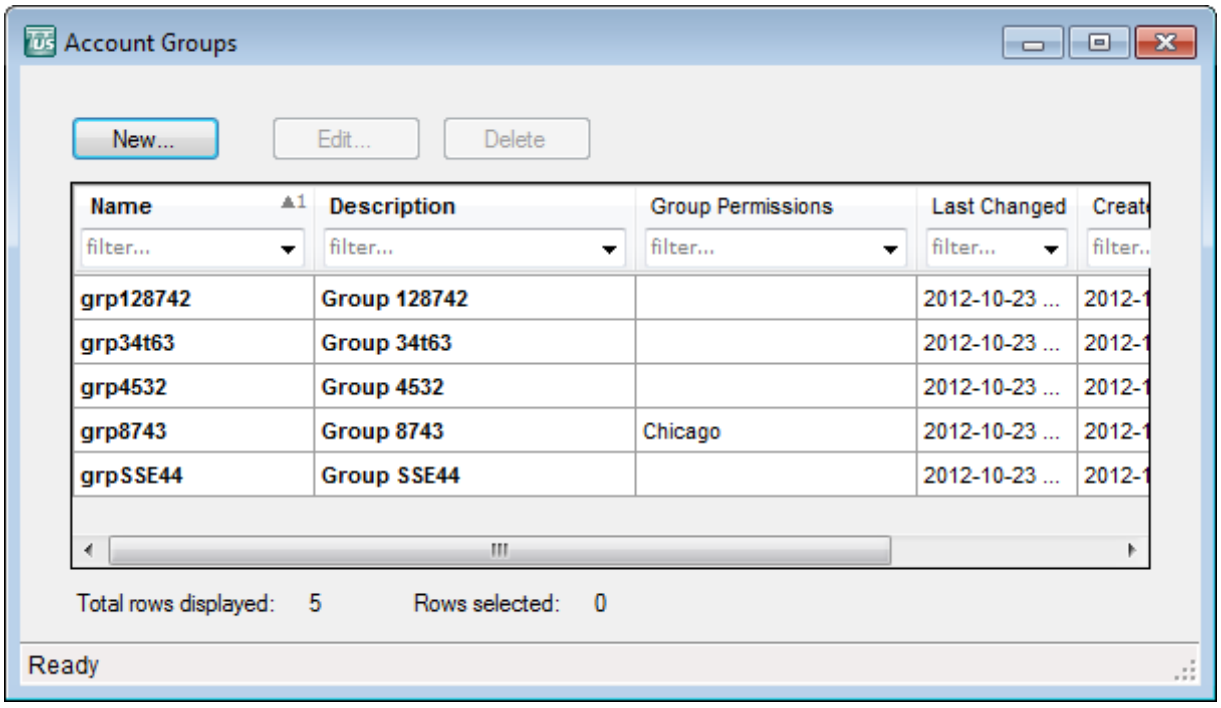
Account groups allow TT User Setup administrators to configure combined risk limits for all of the accounts assigned to an account group. New orders that are submitted with an account in a given account group are checked against the limits of the account group, based on the combined positions and working orders of each account in the group. This is independent of any risk checking that may be configured for the user or Member/Group/Trader (MGT).

Per group, administrators can configure product-specific position and order size limits as well as TT Gateway-specific margin limits. With account group product limits, administrators can also disable trading per product.

Note: To manage accounts that are not in account groups, refer the "Account Administration Overview" on page 153 topic.

To create and configure accounts, refer to the following topics:

- "Creating Account Groups" on page 160
- "Assigning Accounts to an Account Group" on page 162
- "Adding Account Group-Level Risk Checking" on page 176
- "Creating Product Limits for Accounts and Account Groups" on page 176
- "Creating Margin Limits for Accounts and Account Groups" on page 180



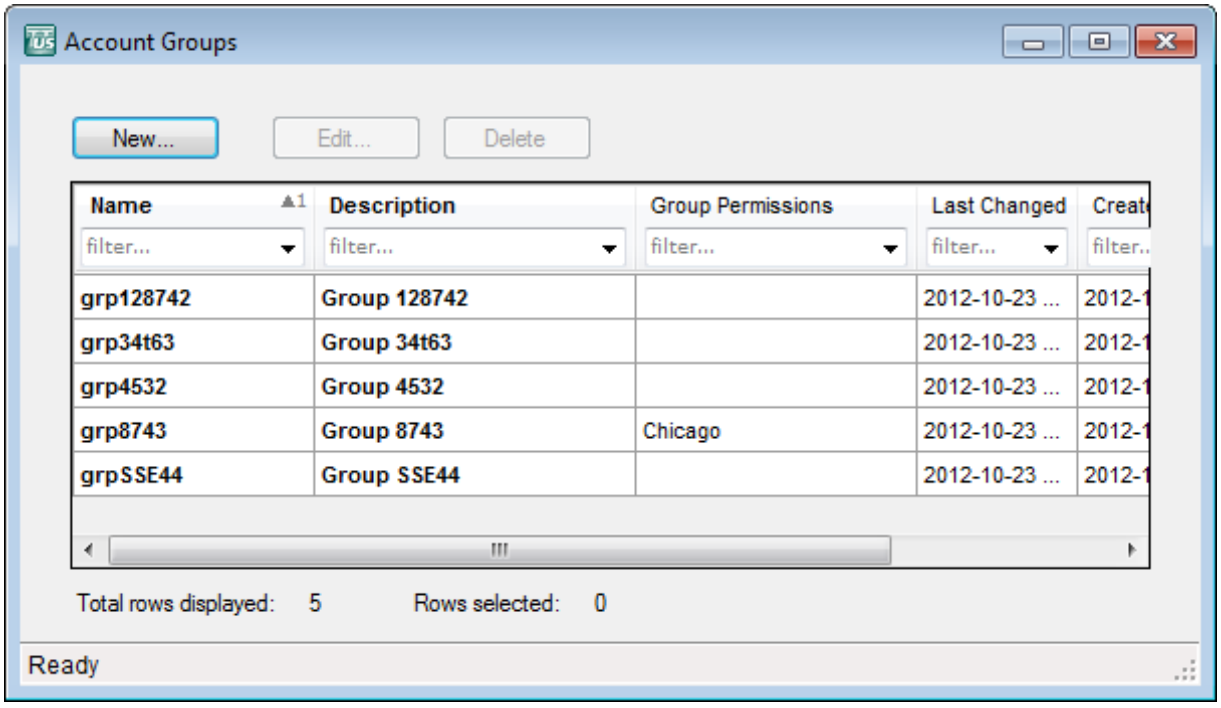
Note: The **Account Groups** window is a standard data grid except that you cannot copy or mass-edit accounts. Refer to the "Data Grid Functionality" on page 25 topic if needed.

Creating Account Groups

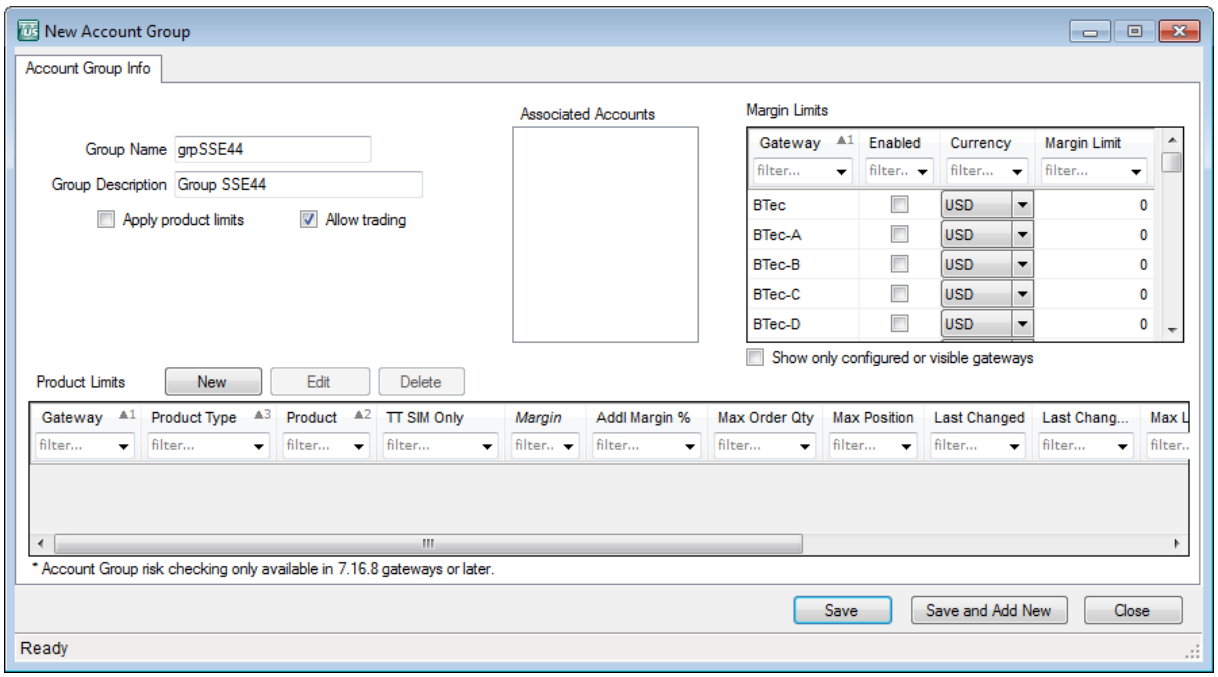
Create account groups from the **Account Groups** window, or when assigning an account to an account group.

To create a new account group:

1. From the **User Admin** menu, select **Account Groups**.



2. From the **Account Groups** window, click **New**.



3. In the **New Account Group** window, enter the new account group name into the **Group name** field.
4. In the **Group Description** field, enter a description, if needed.
5. Configure the product limits as described in the "Creating Product Limits for Accounts and Account Groups" on page 176 topic. When you are ready for the product limits to be applied, check the **Apply product limits** option. No account or account group risk checking will take place until this option is enabled.
6. If you want trades submitted with an account in this account group to be rejected, uncheck the **Allow trading** option. Otherwise leave the **Allow trading** option checked.

   Note: Users logging in with Gateway Logins that end in MGR (e.g., TTADM XXX MGR) can delete orders, regardless of whether or not "Allow Trading" is checked for a given account group.

7. Configure any gateway-specific margin limits as described in the "Creating Margin Limits for Accounts and Account Groups" on page 180 topic.
8. Click **Save**.

You have successfully created a new account group.

Note: You can also access the **Edit Account Group** window by clicking **Edit Account Group** on the **Accounts** window.

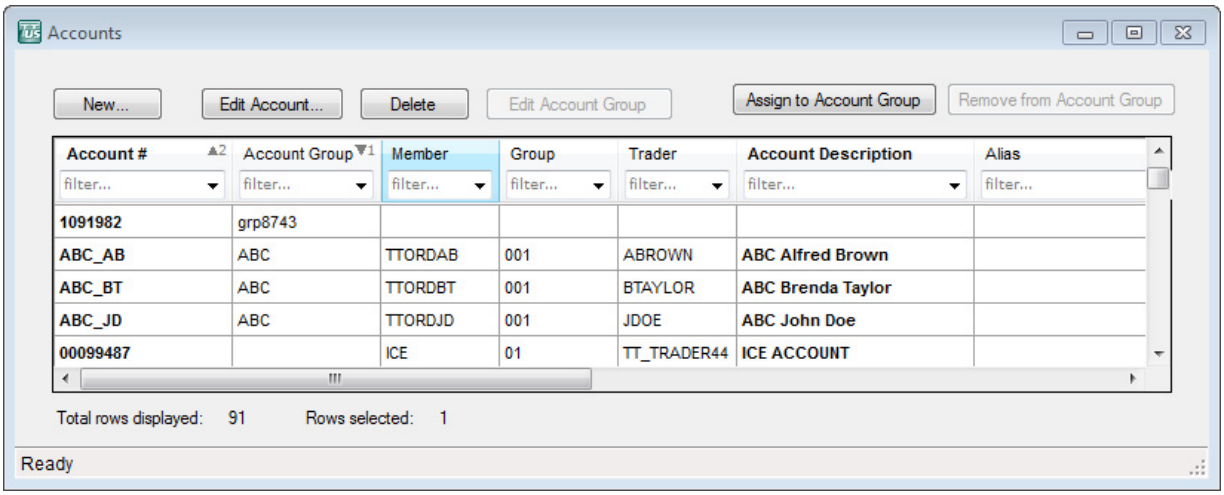
Note: To assign accounts to the account group, refer to the "Assigning Accounts to an Account Group" on page 162 topic.

Assigning Accounts to an Account Group

You can assign one or more accounts to a single account group from the **Accounts** window. To create an account refer to the “Creating Accounts” on page 154 topic and to create an account group, refer to the “Creating Account Groups” on page 160 topic.

To assign accounts to an account group:

1. From the **User Admin** menu, select **Accounts**.



2. From the **Accounts** window, select one or more accounts to assign to a group, and then click **Assign to Account Group**. This option is also available from the right-click menu.

3. From the **Assign Account Group** window, select an account group and then click **OK**. If the account group does not exist, click **New** and create an account group (refer to the "Creating Account Groups" on page 160 topic if needed). The accounts will lose any existing risk configuration and inherit the risk parameters of the assigned groups.
4. To remove an account from an account group, select one or more accounts and then select **Remove from account group**.

Note: To assign risk limits to the account group refer to the "Adding Account Group-Level Risk Checking" on page 176.

Note: To determine which accounts are assigned to a group, you can either filter the **Account Group** column in the **Accounts** window, or open the **Edit Account Group** window and view the list of **Associated Accounts**.

Gateway Login Risk Administration

Risk and Administration Overview

TT User Setup Administrators can configure Gateway Login level risk, account and account group level risk, and user level risk.

Gateway Login Level Risk

You can configure Gateway Login level risk when creating or editing a Gateway Login, and when creating or editing Product Limits for Gateway Logins. Per Gateway Login you can configure:

- Whether or not Guardian risk checks orders sent.
- Whether or not the Gateway Login can be used to trade.
- Whether or not P&L is used in available credit calculations.
- The the sum of money available at the start of a trading session and the currency allowed.
- Product-specific position and order limits.

For more information refer to “Configuring Gateway Login Risk” on page 166, “Creating Product Limits for Gateway Logins” on page 168, and “Copying Product Limits to Additional Gateways or Gateway Logins” on page 172.

Account and Account Group Level Risk

You can configure account and account group level risk when creating or editing and account or account group. Per account or account group you can configure:

- Product-specific position and order limits.
- TT Gateway-specific margin limits.

For more information refer to “Adding Account-Level Risk Checking” on page 175, “Adding Account Group-Level Risk Checking” on page 176, “Creating Product Limits for Accounts and Account Groups” on page 176, “Creating Margin Limits for Accounts and Account Groups” on page 180, “Copying Account-Based Product Limits to Additional Gateways” on page 182, “Copying Account-Based Product Limits to Additional Gateways” on page 182.

User Level Risk

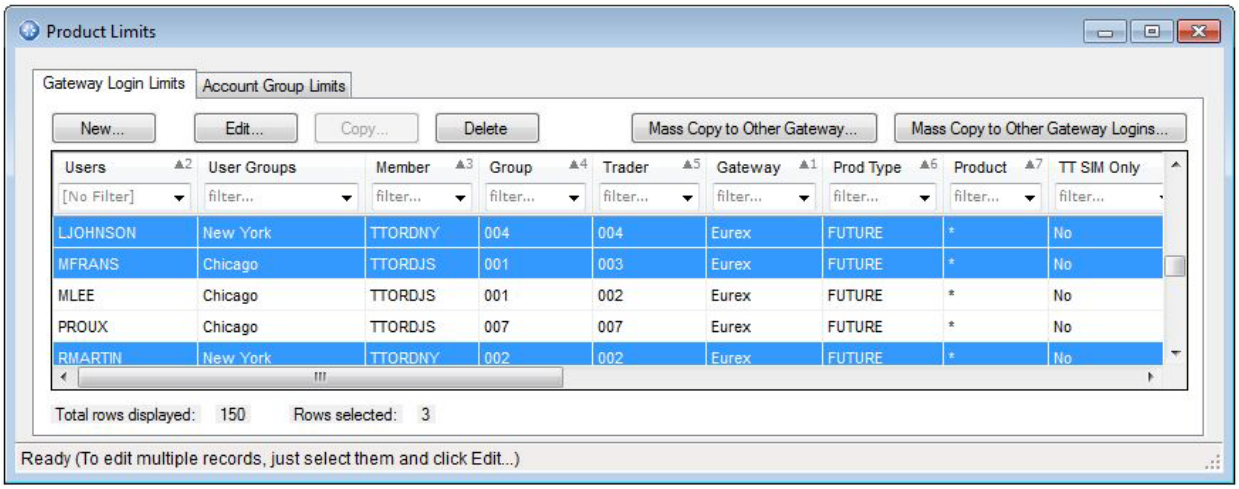
You can configure user level risk when creating or editing a user profile. Per user you can configure:

- Whether or not this user can trade.
- The the sum of money available at the start of a trading session and the currency allowed.
- How far from the market price a user may enter an order (in ticks).
- The maximum number of orders per second, per TT Gateway.

For more information refer to “Adding User-Level Risk Checking” on page 185, “Setting Pre-Trade Price Controls” on page 187, and “Setting Order Throughput Controls” on page 191.

Product Limits Overview

Use the **Product Limits** window to set additional margin, the maximum order size, the maximum contracts, and allow or forbid trading out for a specific product type and product on a specific Gateway. The Product Limits window has two tabs: **Gateway Login Limits** and **Account Group Limits**.



- To edit or create product limits for Gateway Logins, refer to the "Creating Product Limits for Gateway Logins" on page 168 topic. You can also assign existing product limits to existing gateway logins. Refer to "Copying Product Limits to Additional Gateways or Gateway Logins" on page 172 if needed.
- To edit or create product limits for accounts or account groups, refer to the "Creating Product Limits for Accounts and Account Groups" on page 176 topic.

Note: The Product Limits window is a standard data grid. Refer to "Data Grid Functionality" on page 25 if needed.

Configuring Gateway Login Risk

When creating, editing, or copying a gateway login, you can append specific Guardian risk data to the login. The risk fields include:

- **Risk Check**: Determines whether Guardian risk checks orders sent with this gateway login. When **Risk Check**: is checked, the related risk settings are applied to a trader's orders.
- **Trading allowed**: Determines if a gateway login can be used to trade.
- **Ignore P&L**: Determines whether P&L is used in available credit calculations.
- **Credit**: Specifies the sum of money available at the start of a trading session, which can be affected by a trader's margin and P&L. Enter 0 to reset the credit to **unlimited**.
- **Currency**: Specifies the currency for the **Credit** field (e.g. USD = United States Dollar).

▶ To edit the risk settings for an existing gateway login:

1. Do one of the following:
2. From the **User Admin** menu, select **Gateway Logins**.
3. A user's **Edit User** window, click the **Gateway Logins** tab.
4. On the **Gateway Logins** window, click a login row and then click **Edit**.

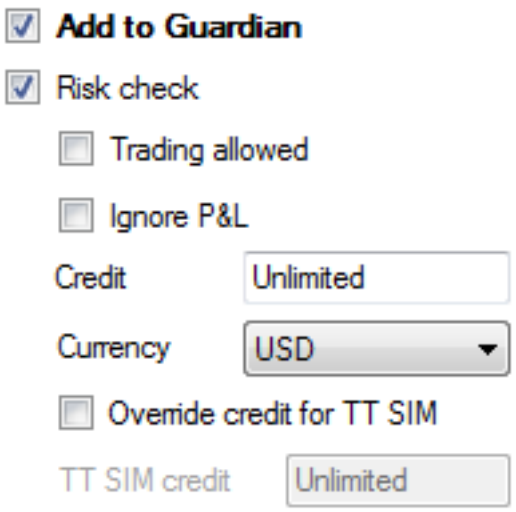
   Note: You can also edit risk data when creating a new gateway login.

5. On the **Edit Gateway Login** window, check the **Add to Guardian** option(risk settings are always published to Guardian).

   Note: The **Add to Guardian** option is checked automatically after "TTORD" is entered in the **Member** field. TTORDs must all be published to Guardian.

   Note: The **Add to Guardian** option does not appear if **DisableProductLimitPublishingMode** is on. Risk checking is based solely on the Risk Check checkbox. Refer to the TT User Setup System Administration Manual for more information about the **DisableProductLimitPublishingMode** parameter.

   The risk options enable.



6. Configure the **Risk Check**, **Trading allowed**, **Ignore P&L**, **Credit**, and **Currency** fields as needed.

   Note: Risk settings and product limits disable when **Risk Check** is unchecked.

7. If traders using this gateway login need a different credit limit for TT SIM trading, check the **Override credit for TT SIM** and enter the TT SIM credit limit into the **TT SIM credit** field.
8. Click **Save**.

Note: You must assign an account if either of the following is true: The **Add to Guardian** option is checked, or the Gateway Login is a TTORD and **DisableProductLimitPublishingMode** is on.

Creating Product Limits for Gateway Logins

You set up and change product limits for specific gateway logins using the **New Product Limit** and **Edit Product Limit** windows.

You can access these windows through the **Gateway Logins** window, the **Gateway Logins** tab on the **Edit User** window, or by selecting **Product Limits** from the **User Admin** menu.

Note: You can also create product limits per account or account group. For more information, refer to the "Creating Product Limits for Accounts and Account Groups" on page 176 topic.

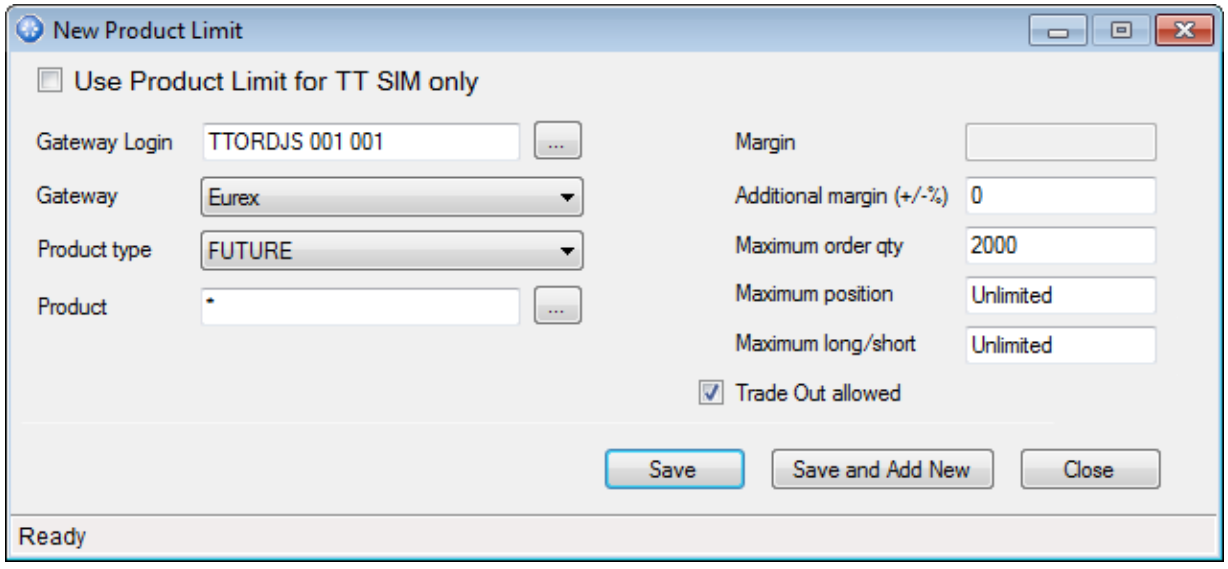
This section describes creating product limits from the **Gateway Logins** window.

To create a new product limit from the Gateway Logins window:

1. From the **Gateway Logins** window, select a gateway login and then click **Edit**.
2. In the **Product Limits** section of the **Gateway Login Info** tab, click **New Product Limit**.

   Note: To copy one of the product limits listed in the **Product Limits** table, select the product limit and then click **Copy**. To copy one of the product limits that are available to the Gateways listed in the **Gateways** section, click **Copy from Existing** and then select the product limit to copy.

   The **New Product Limit** window appears.



Note: Product Limits created via the **Product Limits** window are available only to the users who are assigned to the MGT ID (gateway login).

3. Select or enter a value in the applicable fields as needed.

   Product limit fields include the following:

   - **Gateway**: Specifies the gateway to which the limits apply.
   - **Product type**: Specifies whether this limit applies to an option, future, spread, etc.
   - **Product**: Specifies the product (e.g. FGBL ODAX, etc.) to which the limits apply. An asterisk indicates that the limit applies to all products of the specified product type, unless an additional product limit exists with a specific product.

     For example:Assume you have two product limits configured for the CME-A Gateway: for one limit the product is * (all products) with a maximum position of 10, and for the other limit the product is ES with a maximum position of 5. When trading ES, the account is limited to a maximum position of 5, and when trading all other products on the CME-A Gateway, the maximum position limit is 10.

   - **Margin**: Displays the margin that is currently configured for the specified product.
   - **Additional margin (%)**: Specifies a percentage above or below the margin that a trader must have to trade the contract. In other words, additional margin increases or decreases the margin requirement when calculating risk limits.
   - **Maximum order qty**: Specifies a limit on the maximum individual order size that can be entered for a specified product. To set the order quantity to unlimited, enter 0.
   - **Maximum position**: Specifies a position limit for a given product; maximum position can have various meanings depending on whether it's related to a Future, Option, Spread, or Strategy. For details, refer to the **Defining Maximum Position** section of this topic. To set the maximum position to unlimited, enter 0.

     Note: If you enter 0 in the **Max Ord Qty** or **Max Pos** fields, the 0 is defined, converted to, and displayed as "Unlimited".

   - **Maximum long/short**: Limits the worst case total of long or short contracts per product. For more detailed information about using this limit, refer to the **Defining Maximum Long Short** section of this topic. To set the maximum long and short position to unlimited , enter 0.

     Note: The Maximum long/short feature requires a specific **X_TRADER** 7.8.

   - **Trade Out allowed** - Determines whether the trader can exceed maximum order quantity and/or available credit limits to reduce risk for the specified contract.
4. Click **Save**.

Note: Use the **Save and Add New** functionality to add many similar limits.

The limit you created appears in the **Product Limits** section.

Defining Maximum Position

The following describes the differences in maximum position depending on whether maximum position is related to a Future, Option, Spread, or Strategy.

- **Future**: Limits the maximum outright futures position to the value in the **Maximum Position** field. In other words, it limits the maximum position (long or short) that a trader may accumulate at the product level (the sum total of all delivery months). Traders that only trade calendar spreads, for example, will never reach this limit because their positions in one contract offset the positions in another contract.
- **Spread**: A spread can be either an Intra-Product spread (e.g., all legs belong to the same product) or an Inter-Product spread (e.g., legs will belong to multiple products).
    - **Intra-Product Spread**: Limits the maximum contract-level position for each delivery month to the value in the **Maximum Position** field. The **Maximum Position** field does not put a hard limit on the number of spreads that a trader may enter; it only limits the position for each contract of a product.
    - **Inter-Product Spread**: Does not use the **Maximum Position** field for risk checking. To manage position risk on Inter- Product Spreads, you must enter both FUTURE and SPREAD type position limits for each of the products that comprise that Inter-Product Spread.

      For example, if the limit is 5, an account can buy 5 calendar spreads, because each contract in the spread is limited to a long or short position of 5. This check would also apply to the futures contract being traded directly, so in the previous example, no more futures could be bought in the contract that is long 5 and no more cold be sold in the contract that is short 5.

- **Option**:Limits the maximum option position to the value in the **Maximum Position** field. In other words, limits the maximum position (long or short) that a trader may accumulate at the product-level (the sum total of all delivery months at all exercise prices). For the purposes of risk checking, calls and puts are treated as separate products. For example, buying a call and selling a put will not result in a flat position, but instead will result in two separate positions that do not offset each other.
- **Strategy**: Limits the maximum contract-level position for each call or put of a specific strike price and delivery month to the value in the **Maximum Position** field. The **Maximum Position** field does not put a hard limit on the number of strategies that a trader may enter; it only limits the position for each contract of a product.

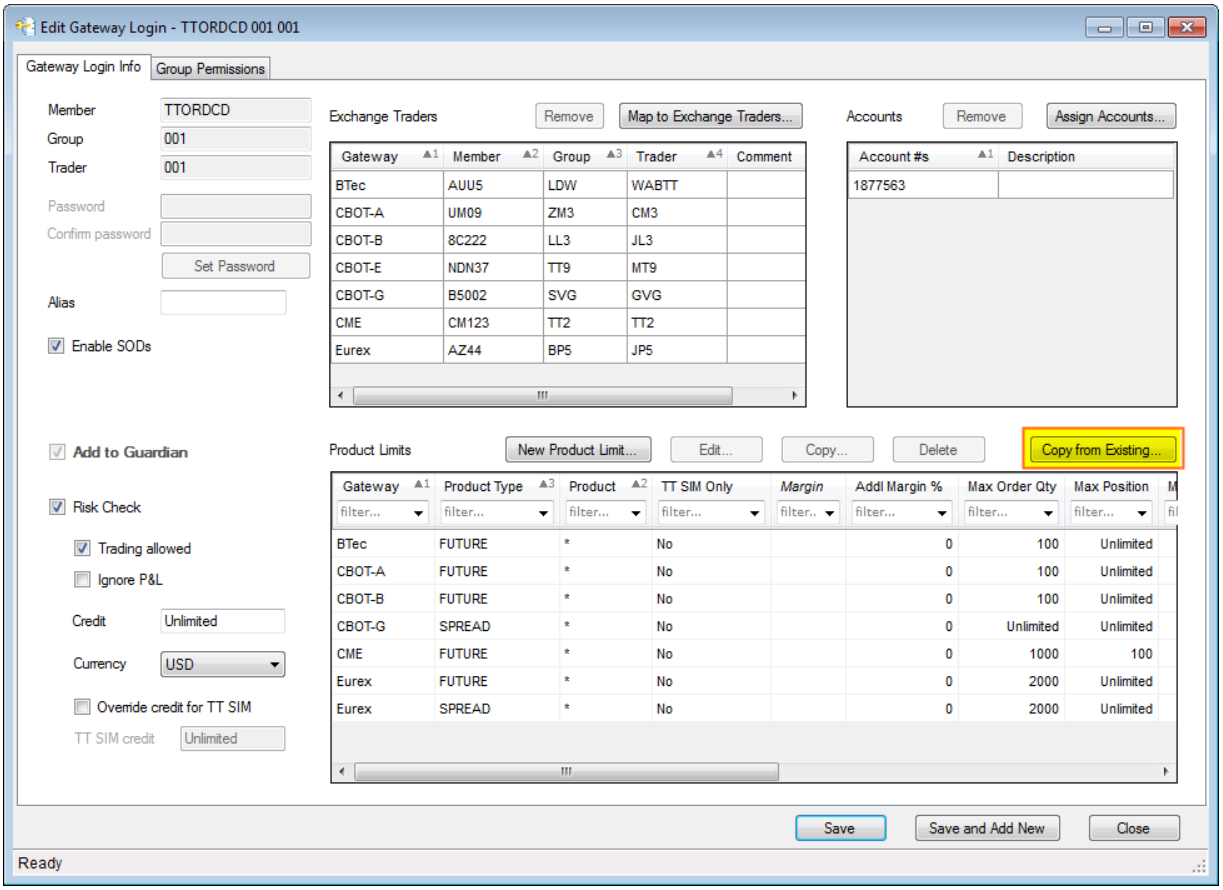
Note: To allow trading of spreads or strategies, you must also configure product limits for the products that comprise the spreads or strategies.

Note: The rules for configuring all other product types are identical to the rules for configuring futures and spreads, except that limits for energy product are configured in lots.

Copying from existing product limits

To copy existing product limits to a gateway login:

1. From the **User Admin** menu, select **Gateway Logins**.
2. From the **Gateway Logins** window, click the gateway login you want to edit, and then click **Edit**.



Note: The **Add to Guardian** option must be checked for product limits to be enabled.

3. From the **Product Limits** section of the **Edit Gateway Login** window, click **Copy from Existing**.
4. From the **Copy from Existing Product Limits** window, select the rows that you want to copy.

   Note: Hold down the **Ctrl** key to select multiple rows.

5. Click **Done**.

   The copied product limits appear in the **Product Limits** pane.

6. On the **Edit Gateway Login** window, click **Save**.

   You have successfully copied existing product limits.

Copying Product Limits to Additional Gateways or Gateway Logins

You can copy product limits from one or more gateways to another gateway, or you can copy product limits from one or more gateway logins (e.g., MGTs) to additional gateway logins.

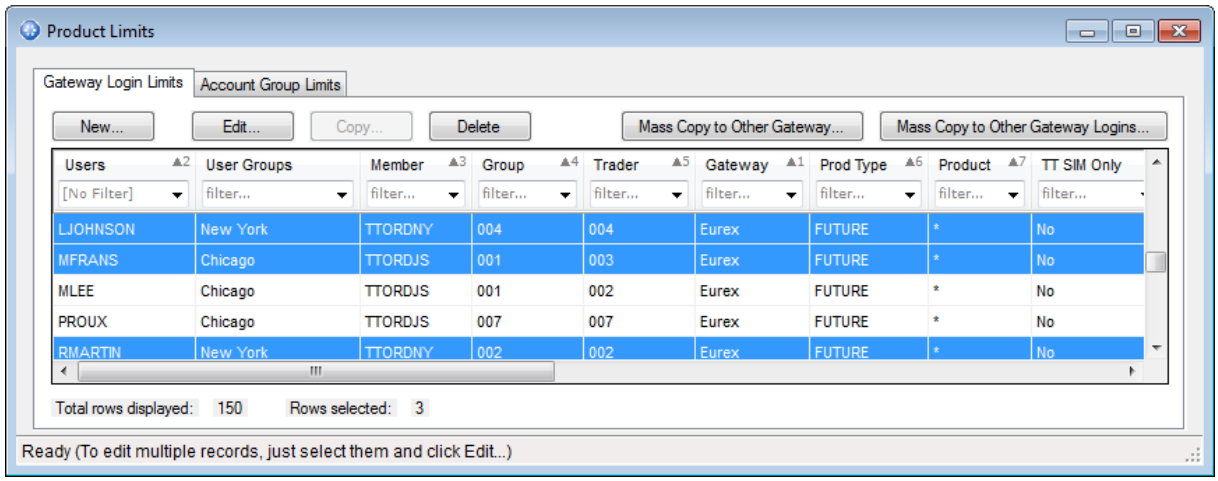
To copy product limits to additional Gateway Logins:

1. Do one of the following:
   - From the **User Admin** menu, select **Product Limits**.
   - From the **Edit User** window, select the **Gateway Logins** tab and click **View/Edit Product Limits**.

   The **Product Limits** window appears.

   Note: Accessing limits through the **Edit User** window displays only product limits that correspond with a TTORD or Exchange Trader that have been assigned to that user.

2. Highlight one or more product limit rows.



3. Click **Mass Copy to Other Gateway Logins**.

   The **Select Gateway Logins** window appears.

4. Highlight one or more Member/Group/Trader IDs to which you want the product limits assigned, and then click **Select**.

   The selected product limits are assigned to the applicable gateway logins.

To copy product limits from one or more gateways to another gateway:

1. Do one of the following:
   - From the **User Admin** menu, select **Product Limits**
   - From the **Edit User** window, select the **Gateway Logins** tab and click **View/Edit Product Limits**.

   The **Product Limits** window appears.

   Note: Accessing limits through the **Edit User** window displays only product limits that correspond with a TTORD or Exchange Trader that have been assigned to that user.

2. Highlight one or more product limit rows.
3. Click **Mass Copy to Other Gateway**.

   The **Select Gateway** window appears.

4. Highlight a gateway to which the product limits will be copied, and then click **Select**.

   TT User Setup copies each selected product limit to the selected gateway.

Account and Account Group Risk Administration

Adding Account-Level Risk Checking

At the account level, you can configure product-specific position limits, product-specific order size limits, and TT Gateway-specific margin limits. The user and gateway login's risk settings still apply, but orders submitted with an account will also be checked against the limits of the account.

Note: When an account is added to an account group, any account-based risk settings are removed and the account group's risk settings are enforced instead. To manage risk for an account group, refer to “Adding Account Group-Level Risk Checking” on page 176.

Configuring product limits per account also allows you to perform the following tasks which are not available for Gateway Logins:

- Disable trading per product (to easily prevent trading on one or more specific products without having to specifically define each individual product that is allowed to be traded).
- Configure a maximum position limit of zero (thereby limiting trading to spreads).

To add risk checking to an account, refer to the following topics:

- “Creating Product Limits for Accounts and Account Groups” on page 176
- “Creating Margin Limits for Accounts and Account Groups” on page 180

Note: To prevent a user from updating the account number on a fill, make sure the **Account changes on fills allowed** option is unchecked (the default setting for new users).

When applying account based risk checking, TT does not recommend checking the **Account changes on fills allowed** option until the users are using X_TRADER 7.17 or later. If users are not using X_TRADER 7.17, then account numbers on fills are not updated in all TT products (this includes the gateways where account-based risk checking is done). This could lead to discrepancies between what is displayed in client applications and how risk is actually being calculated.

When the **Account changes on fills** allowed option is checked, users who are using X_TRADER 7.17 or later can modify the account on a fill, and this update will be processed as a part of account based risk on the gateways. Note that no risk check actually takes place on the modification; therefore changing the account could cause an account to go over its limits. However, any subsequent orders will be risk checked based on the modified fills.

To configure the **Account changes on fills allowed** option, refer to the “Applying Basic User Properties” on page 69 topic.

Adding Account Group-Level Risk Checking

You can configure product-specific position limits, product-specific order size limits, and TT Gateway-specific margin limits, per account or account group. The user and gateway login's risk settings still apply, but orders submitted with an account will also be checked against the limits of the account group, based on the combined positions and working orders of all accounts in the group.

Note: To configure account-based risk instead of account-group risk refer to "Adding Account-Level Risk Checking" on page 175. You cannot configure account-based risk for an account that belongs to an account group.

Configuring product limits per account group also allows you to perform the following tasks, which are not available for Gateway Logins:

- Disable trading per product (to easily prevent trading on one or more specific products without having to specifically define each individual product that is allowed to be traded).
- Configure a maximum position limit of zero (thereby limiting trading to spreads).

To add risk checking to an account group, refer to the following topics:

- "Creating Product Limits for Accounts and Account Groups" on page 176
- "Creating Margin Limits for Accounts and Account Groups" on page 180

Note: To prevent a user from updating the account number on a fill, make sure the **Account changes on fills allowed** option is unchecked (the default setting for new users).

When applying account based risk checking, TT does not recommend checking the **Account changes on fills allowed** option until the users are using X_TRADER 7.17 or later. If users are not using X_TRADER 7.17, then account numbers on fills are not updated in all TT products (this includes the gateways where account-based risk checking is done). This could lead to discrepancies between what is displayed in client applications and how risk is actually being calculated.

When the **Account changes on fills** allowed option is checked, users who are using X_TRADER 7.17 or later can modify the account on a fill, and this update will be processed as a part of account based risk on the gateways. Note that no risk check actually takes place on the modification; therefore changing the account could cause an account to go over its limits. However, any subsequent orders will be risk checked based on the modified fills.

To configure the **Account changes on fills allowed** option, refer to the "Applying Basic User Properties" on page 69 topic.

Creating Product Limits for Accounts and Account Groups

You can set up and change product limits for a single account or for an account group. If an account belongs to an account group, only the account group settings are used. Account and Account Group risk requires TT Gateways 7.17 and later.

Note: You can also create product limits per Gateway Login. For more information refer to the “Creating Product Limits for Gateway Logins” on page 168 topic.

When configuring product limits for an account or account group you can determine which products are tradable, specify various limits on maximum order size and position per product, and configure additional margin per product.

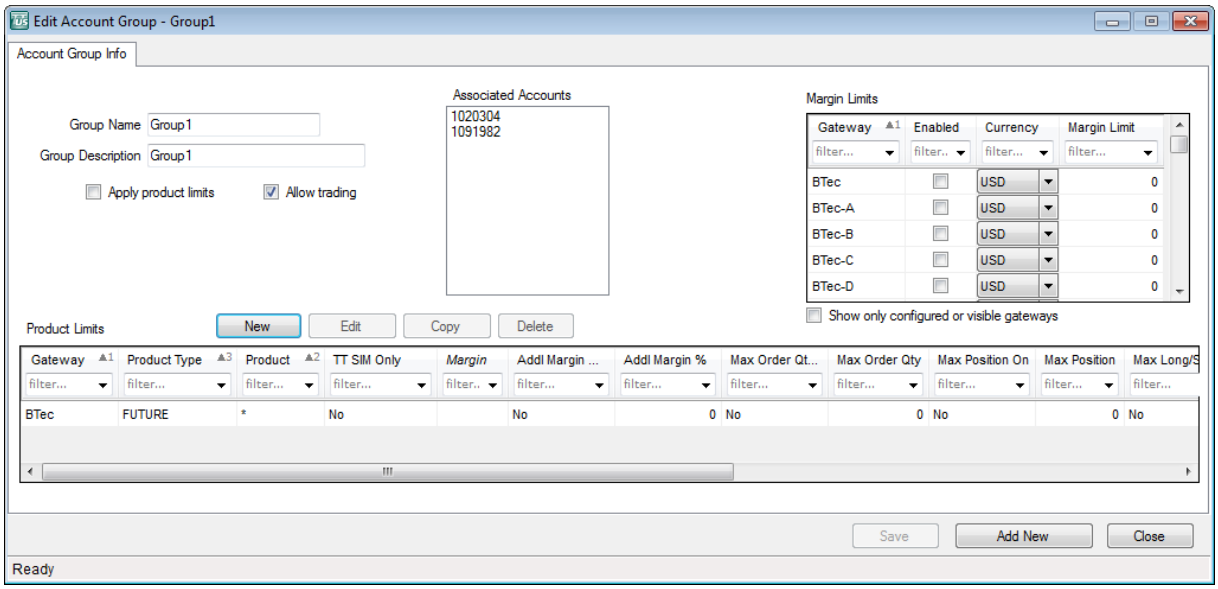
Note: Account-based product limits do not have a **Trade out allowed** option like Gateway Login-based product limits. Traders can always trade out of account positions.

This procedure describes creating product limits from the **Account Group** window, but the same procedure applies when creating product limits from the **Accounts** window. You can also edit account group product limits from the **Account Group Limits** tab of the **Product Limits** window using the field descriptions in step 4 of the following procedure.

To create a new product limit from the Account Groups window:

1. From the **User Admin** window, select **Account Groups** to manage product limits for an account group.
2. From the **Account Groups** window, create or edit an account group. If you have assigned accounts to an account group, you can also edit that group by selecting any assigned account in the **Accounts** window and clicking **Edit Account Group**.

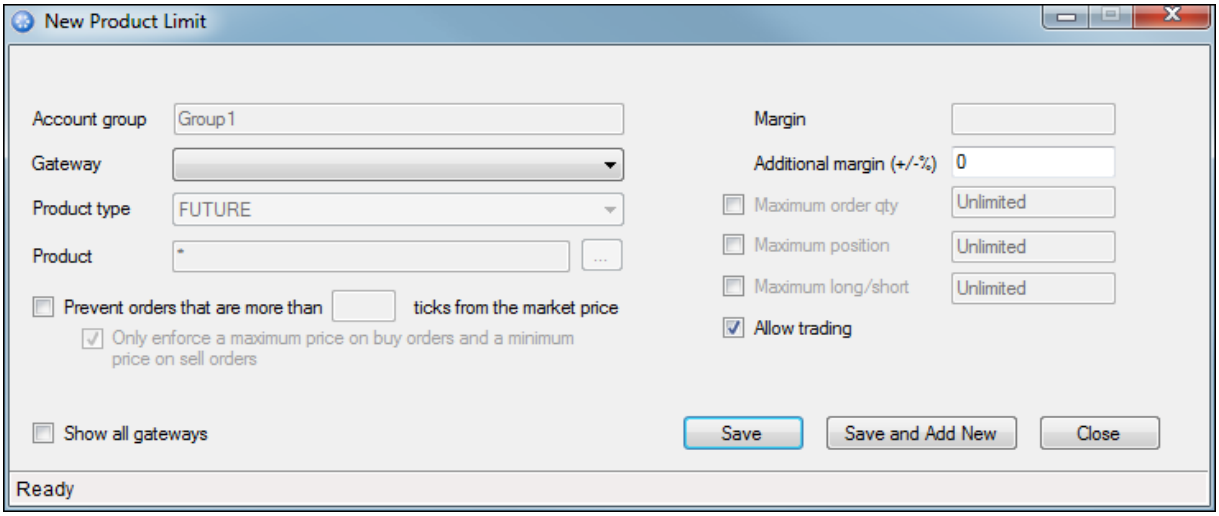
   The **Account Group** window appears.



3. In the **Product Limits** section, click **New**.

   Note To copy one of the product limits listed in the **Product Limits** table, select the product limit and then click **Copy**.

The **New Product Limit** window appears.



4. Select or enter a value in the applicable fields as needed.

   Product limit fields include the following:

   - **Account Group**: Specifies the account group to which the limits apply.
   - **Gateway**: Specifies the gateway to which the limits apply. Check the **Show all gateways** option to populate the Gateway drop-down with all gateways.
   - **Product type**: Specifies whether this limit applies to an option, future, spread, etc.
   - **Product**: Specifies the product (e.g. FGBL ODAX, etc.) to which the limits apply. An asterisk indicates that the limit applies to all products of the specified product type, unless an additional product limit exists with a specific product.

     For example:Assume you have two product limits configured for the CME-A Gateway: for one limit the product is * (all products) with a maximum position of 10, and for the other limit the product is ES with a maximum position of 5. When trading ES, the account is limited to a maximum position of 5, and when trading all other products on the CME-A Gateway, the maximum position limit is 10.

   - **Prevent orders that are more than X ticks from the market price** - Determines how far from the market price a user may enter an order (in ticks). You can allow traders to sell above this range and buy below it by checking the **Only enforce a maximum price on buy orders and a minimum price on sell orders** option.
   - **Margin**: Displays the margin that is currently configured for the specified product.
   - **Additional margin (%)**: Specifies a percentage above or below the margin that a trader must have to trade the contract. In other words, additional margin increases or decreases the margin requirement when calculating risk limits.
   - **Maximum order qty**: Specifies a limit on the maximum individual order size that can be entered for a specified product. To apply a maximum order quantity, check the **Maximum order qty** option and enter a value.
   - **Maximum position**: Specifies a position limit for a given product; maximum position can have various meanings depending on whether it's related to a Future, Option, Spread,

or Strategy. For details, refer to the **Defining Maximum Position** section of this topic. To apply a maximum position, check the **Maximum position** option and enter a value.
    - **Maximum long/short**: Limits the worst case total of long or short contracts per product. For more detailed information about using this limit, refer to the **Defining Maximum Long Short** section of this topic. To apply a limit, check the **Maximum long/short** option and enter a value.
    - **Allow trading**: Specifies whether the product in the product field can be traded.
5. Click **Save**.

   Note: Use the **Save and Add New** functionality to add many similar limits.

   The limit you created appears in the **Product Limits** section.

6. To enable the product limits, check the **Apply product limits** option.
7. Click **Save**.

Defining Maximum Position

The following describes the differences in maximum position depending on whether maximum position is related to a Future, Option, Spread, or Strategy.

- **Future**: Limits the maximum outright futures position to the value in the **Maximum Position** field. In other words, it limits the maximum position (long or short) that a trader may accumulate at the product level (the sum total of all delivery months). Traders that only trade calendar spreads, for example, will never reach this limit because their positions in one contract offset the positions in another contract.
- **Spread**: A spread can be either an Intra-Product spread (e.g., all legs belong to the same product) or an Inter-Product spread (e.g., legs will belong to multiple products).
    - **Intra-Product Spread**: Limits the maximum contract-level position for each delivery month to the value in the **Maximum Position** field. The **Maximum Position** field does not put a hard limit on the number of spreads that a trader may enter; it only limits the position for each contract of a product.
    - **Inter-Product Spread**: Does not use the **Maximum Position** field for risk checking. To manage position risk on Inter- Product Spreads, you must enter both FUTURE and SPREAD type position limits for each of the products that comprise that Inter-Product Spread.

      For example, if the limit is 5, an account can buy 5 calendar spreads, because each contract in the spread is limited to a long or short position of 5. This check would also apply to the futures contract being traded directly, so in the previous example, no more futures could be bought in the contract that is long 5 and no more cold be sold in the contract that is short 5.

- **Option**: Limits the maximum option position to the value in the **Maximum Position** field. In other words, limits the maximum position (long or short) that a trader may accumulate at the product-level (the sum total of all delivery months at all exercise prices). For the purposes of risk checking, calls and puts are treated as separate products. For example, buying a call and selling a put will not result in a flat position, but instead will result in two separate positions that do not offset each other.

- **Strategy**: Limits the maximum contract-level position for each call or put of a specific strike price and delivery month to the value in the **Maximum Position** field. The **Maximum Position** field does not put a hard limit on the number of strategies that a trader may enter; it only limits the position for each contract of a product.

Note: To allow trading of spreads or strategies, you must also configure product limits for the products that comprise the spreads or strategies.

Note: The rules for configuring all other product types are identical to the rules for configuring futures and spreads, except that limits for energy product are configured in lots.

Creating Margin Limits for Accounts and Account Groups

Margin limits allow you to configure credit limits per account or account group that apply to individual TT Gateways. Because P&L per account can span all exchanges, account-based margin limits ignore P&L. Additionally, margin limits apply, even if product limits are not applied. This allows you to create margin limits without creating product limits.

Margin Example: Account ABC has a $7,000 margin limit. If the margin for 1 ES contract is $3500, and Trader_1 buys 1 ES contract in account ABC, the available credit in account ABC would be $3500. If Trader_2 then buys 1 ES contract in the same account, the available credit in account ABC would be $0. No additional ES contracts can be bought in account ABC, and up to four can be sold.

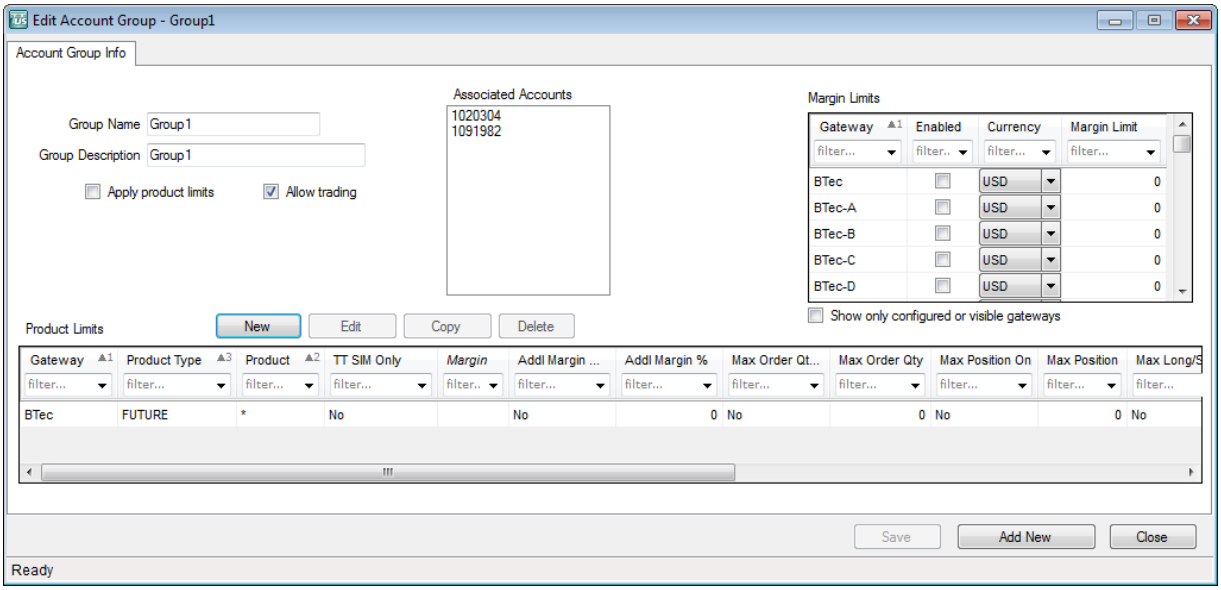
You can set up and change margin limits for a single account or for an account group. If an account belongs to an account group, only the account group settings are used.

This section describes creating margin limits from the **Account Group** window. You can also create margin limits from the **Accounts** window.

To create a new margin limit from the Account Groups window:

1. From the **User Admin** window, select **Account Groups**.
2. From the **Account Groups** window, create or edit an account group. If you have assigned accounts to an account group, you can also edit that group by selecting any assigned account in the **Accounts** window and clicking **Edit Account Group**.

   The **Account Group** window appears.



3. In the **Margin Limits** section, enable margin checking for any applicable gateway by checking the **Enabled** option. To show to only gateways that are running or have been previously configured, check the **show only configured or visible gateways** option.
4. For each gateway you enable, enter a **Margin Limit** and the **Currency** for the limit.
5. Click **Save**.

Copying Product Limits to Additional Accounts or Account Groups

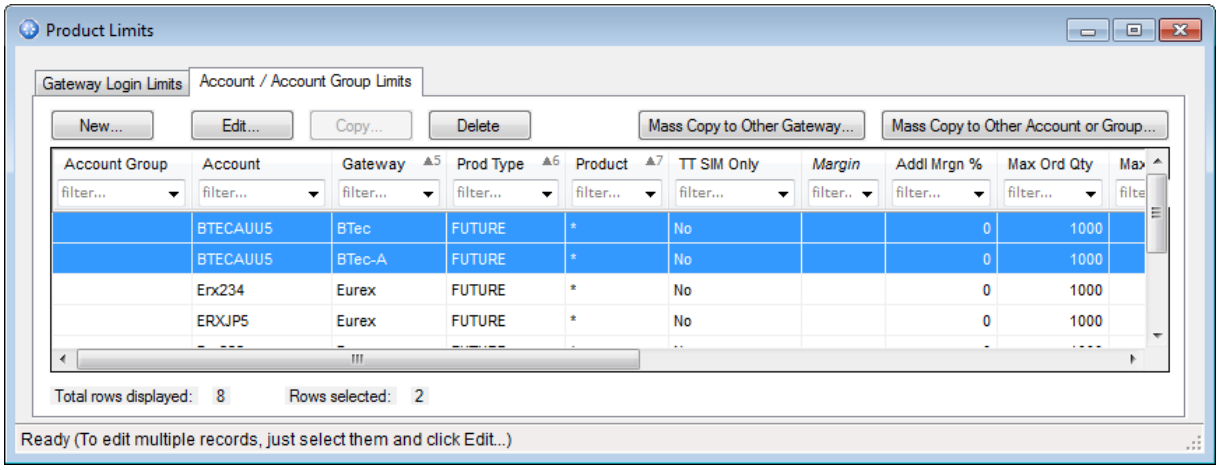
You can copy product limits from one or more account/account groups to another account/account group.

To copy product limits to additional accounts or account groups:

1. From the **User Admin** menu, select **Product Limits**.

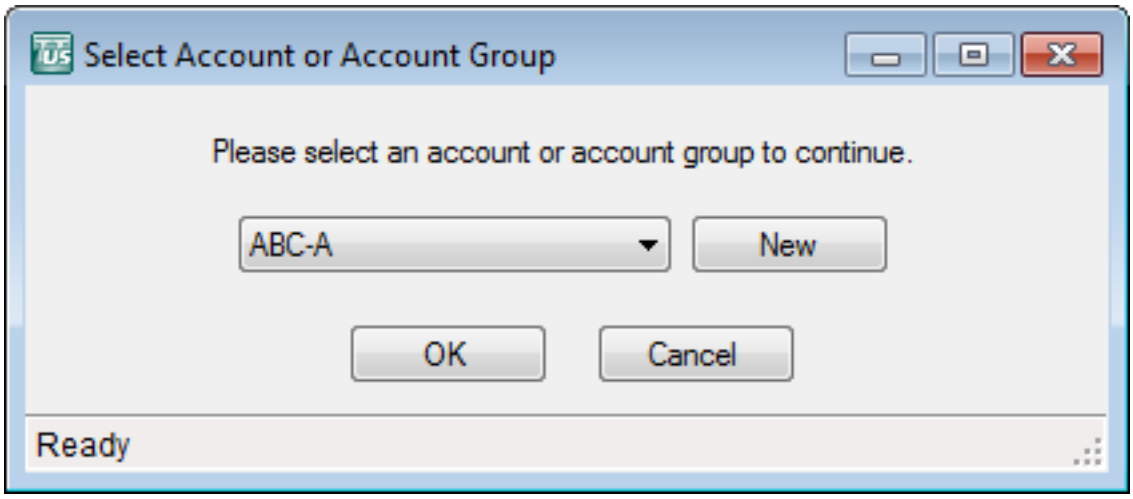
   The **Product Limits** window appears.

2. Select the **Account/Account Group Limits** tab.
3. Highlight one or more product limit rows.



4. Click **Mass Copy to Other Account or Account Group**.

   The **Select Account or Account Group** window appears.



5. Select an account or account group, or click **New** to create a new account or account group.

   The selected product limits are assigned to the applicable account/account group.

Copying Account-Based Product Limits to Additional Gateways

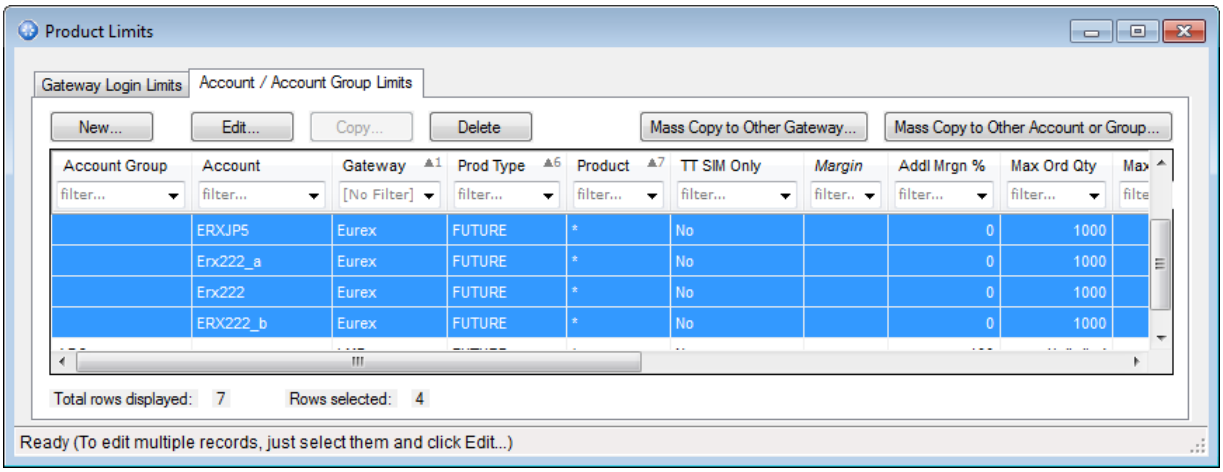
You can copy one or more account/account group-based product limits to additional gateways.

To copy product limits to additional Gateway Logins:

1. From the **User Admin** menu, select **Product Limits**.

   The **Product Limits** window appears.

2. Select the **Account/Account Group Limits** tab.
3. Highlight one or more product limit rows.



4. Click **Mass Copy to Other Gateway**.

   The **Select Gateway** window appears.

5. Highlight a gateway to which the product limits will be copied, and then click **Select**.

   TT User Setup copies each selected product limit to the selected gateway in the appropriate account.

User Level Risk Checking

Adding User-Level Risk Checking

You can configure risk settings on a per-user basis in addition to the risk settings configured for individual gateway logins. This allows you to set overall credit and currency settings that apply to all the user's trades using any or all of the gateway logins. The gateway login's risk settings still apply, but the trader will have an additional overall credit restriction.

Note: User level risk checking requires **X_TRADER** 7.8 or later or FIX Adapter 7.6 or later.

The user-level risk checking fields and options include:

- **Credit** - Specifies the sum of money available at the start of a trading session, which can be affected by a trader's margin and P&L. Enter 0 to reset the credit to **unlimited**.
- **Currency** - Specifies the currency for the **Credit** field (e.g. USD = United States Dollar).
- **Trading allowed** - Determines whether a user can trade.
- **Use P&L risk algorithm** - Determines whether or not to use the P&L risk algorithm to risk check this user. The **P/L based on** setting in X_TRADER defaults to *Risk Algorithm* and is uneditable. If the **Use P&L risk algorithm** is not checked, risk checking uses the Last Traded Price and the **P/L based on** setting in X_TRADER remains editable.
- **Prevent orders that are more than X ticks from the market price** - Determines how far from the market price a user may enter an order (in ticks). You can allow traders to sell above this range and buy below it by checking the **Only enforce a maximum price on buy orders and a minimum price on sell orders** option.
- **Per TT Gateway, prevent more than X orders per second** - Limits the number of orders per second, per TT Gateway.
- **Override credit for TT SIM** - Provides a different credit limit for TT SIM Trading.

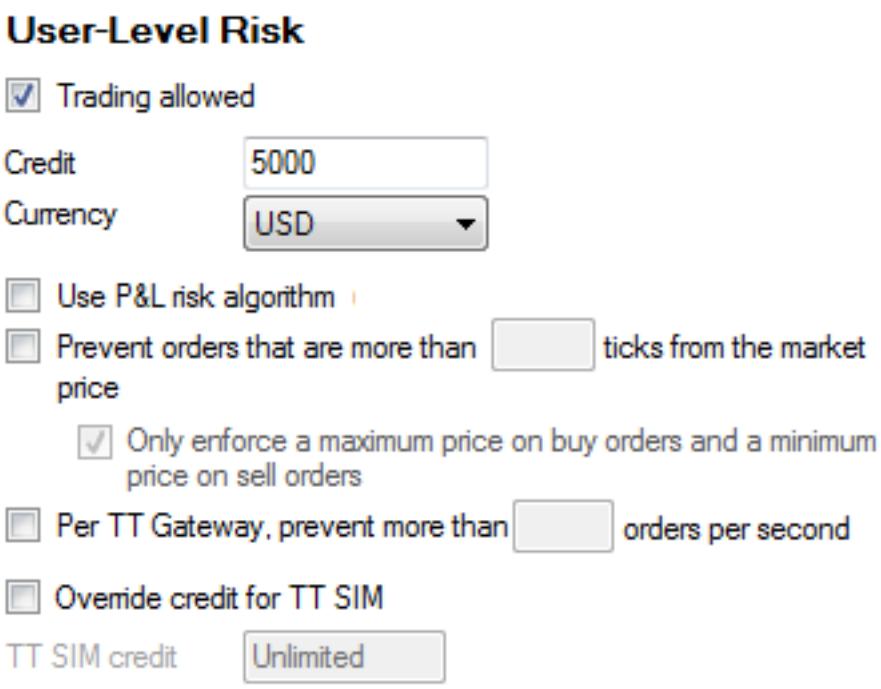
To add user-level checking to an existing user:

1. From the **User Admin** menu, select **Users**.
2. From the **Users** window, click a user row and then click **Edit**.

   The **Edit User** window appears and defaults to the **Main** tab.

3. In the **User-Level Risk** section, check the **Trading allowed** option to allow the user to trade.

   Note: Trading allowed is checked by default.



4. In the **Credit** field, enter a monetary limit as needed.

   Note: The default setting is for unlimited credit. Enter 0 to reset the credit to **unlimited**.

5. In the **Currency** field, enter the currency of the configured credit limit.
6. To risk check this user using the P&L risk algorithm, check the **Use P&L risk algorithm** option. This also sets the **P/L based on** setting in X_TRADER to *Risk Algorithm* (and makes the **P/L based on** setting unedtable). To use the Last Traded Price for risk checking, uncheck the **Use P&L risk algorithm** option (the **P/L based on** setting in X_TRADER remains editable).
7. To configure how far from the market price a user may enter an order (in ticks), check the **Prevent orders that are more than X ticks...** checkbox and enter the number of ticks (from 1 to 100000). If you only want to enforce this setting for buy orders above the limit and sell orders below the market check the **Only enforce...** checkbox. For more information about pre-trade price controls, refer to “Setting Pre-Trade Price Controls” on page 187.
8. To prevent more than a specific number of orders per second, check the **Per TT Gateway, prevent more than X orders...** checkbox and enter the number of orders per second. For more information about pre-trade order throughput controls, refer to “Setting Order Throughput Controls” on page 191.
9. If the user needs a different credit limit for TT SIM trading, check **Override credit for TT SIM** and enter the TT SIM credit limit into the **TT SIM credit** field. Enter 0 to reset the credit to **unlimited**.
10. Click **Save**.

Setting Pre-Trade Price Controls

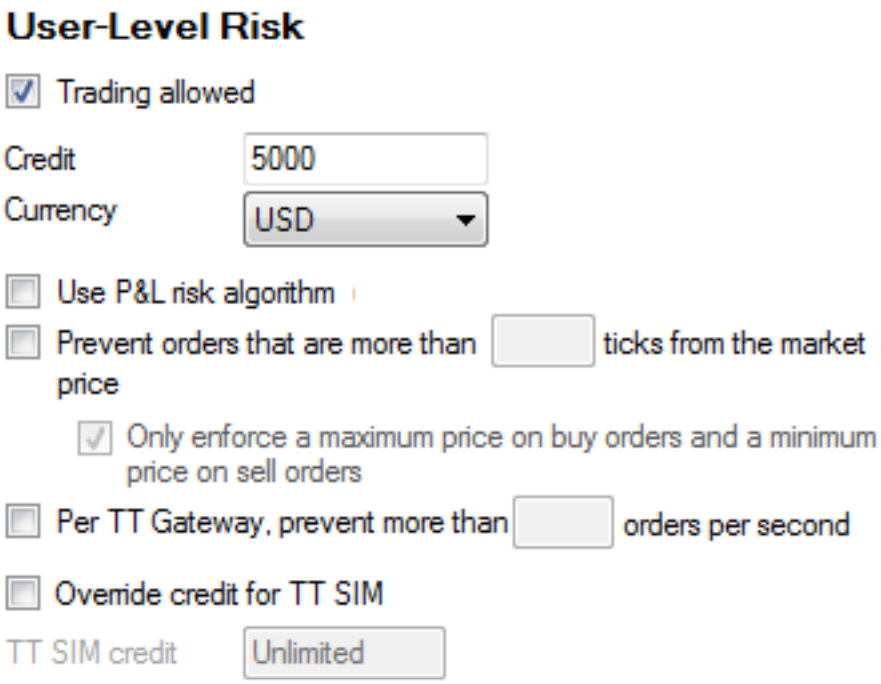
The price control features allow an administrator to configure how far from the market price a user may enter an order. Orders submitted outside the defined price band will be rejected.

This topic contains the following sections:

- "Price Controls Overview" on page 187
- "Price Checking Overview" on page 188
- "Example: Static Price Range Control" on page 188
- "Example: Directional Price Range Control" on page 189
- "Enabling and Setting the Pre-trade Price Controls" on page 190

Price Controls Overview

The **User-Level Risk** section on the **Main** tab of the User profile contains the pre-trade price controls. To configure how far from the market price a user may enter an order (in ticks), check the **Prevent orders that are more than X ticks from the market price** checkbox and enter the number of ticks.



The administrator can set the number of ticks to a static range or a directional range by checking or unchecking the **Only enforce a maximum price on buy orders and a minimum price on sell orders** checkbox:

- **Static range (uncheck the enforce option)** - Buy and sell orders must be within the configured price band. Orders submitted outside the defined price band will be rejected in all TT order routing applications.
- **Directional range (check the enforce option)** - Buy orders must be below the maximum price, and sell orders must be above the minimum price. Orders submitted outside the defined price band or will be rejected in all TT order routing applications.

These pre-trade price controls are also configurable on the **New Product Limit** window when configuring Accounts and Account Groups.

Price Checking Overview

The price check uses the **last traded price** as the market price, as long as it falls between the **bid** and **ask**. Otherwise, the price check uses the midpoint of the **bid** and **ask**. If the **bid** and **ask** are not both available, then the price check will use the first available price from the **ask**, **bid**, **settlement**, or **close**, in that order.

The price check is performed as follows:

- The price check is performed on all real orders, both new and changed, at the time the orders are executed.
- The price check is not performed on synthetic or parent orders.
- For exchange traded spreads and/or strategy orders, the price check is applied based on the spread/strategy price. If the order contains multiple legs, the check is applied to each individual leg.
- The price check does not apply to NYSE Liffe Block orders sent via X_Block.
- The price check applies to exchange prices only, not to implied price functionality.

Example: Static Price Range Control

In this example an administrator has configured a user with a price control of 4 ticks and has also specified that the range **is not** directional. If the current last traded price is **2.0**, then the user will only be able to place an order that is above **0.0** (the low point of the price band) and below **4.0** (the high point of the price band). All other orders will be rejected by the software.

Static Price Range Example

Example: Directional Price Range Control

In this example an administrator has configured a user with a price control of 4 ticks and has also specified that the range **is** directional. If the current last traded price is **2.0**, then the user will only be able to place a buy order that is below **4.0** (the high point of the price band) or a sell order that is above **0.0** (the low point of the price band). All other orders will be rejected by the software.

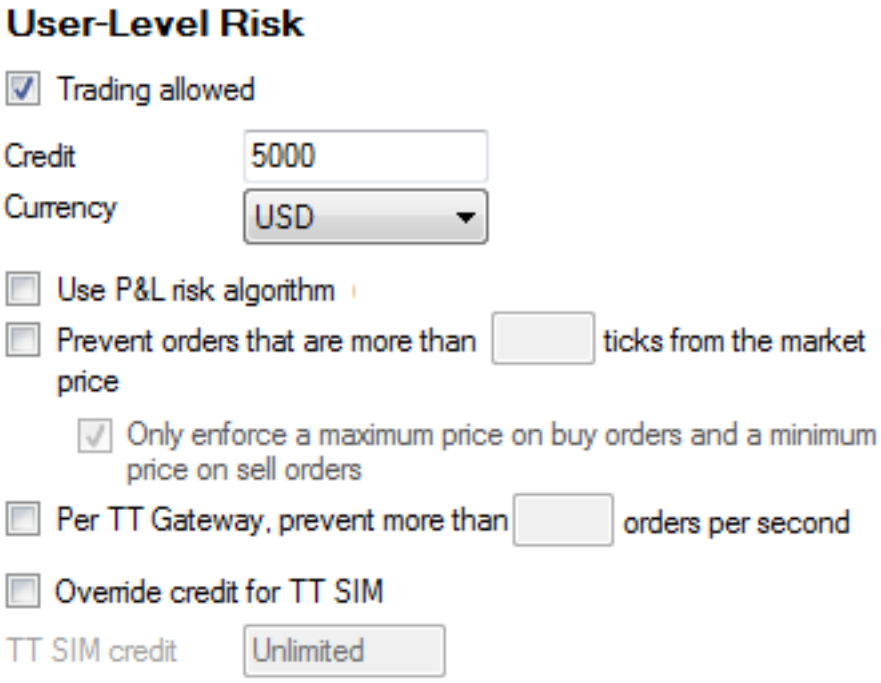
Directional Price Range Example

Enabling and Setting the Pre-trade Price Controls

To enable and set the pre-trade price controls:

1. From the **User Admin** menu, select **Users**.
2. From the **Users** window, click a user row and then click **Edit**.

   The **Edit User** window appears and defaults to the **Main** tab. The **User-Level Risk** section contains the pre-trade price controls.



3. To configure how far from the market price a user may enter an order (in ticks), check the **Prevent orders that are more than X ticks from the market price** checkbox and enter the number of ticks. If you only want to enforce this setting for buy orders above the market and sell orders below the market check the **Only enforce a maximum price on buy orders and a minimum price on sell orders** checkbox.
4. Click **Save**.

Setting Order Throughput Controls

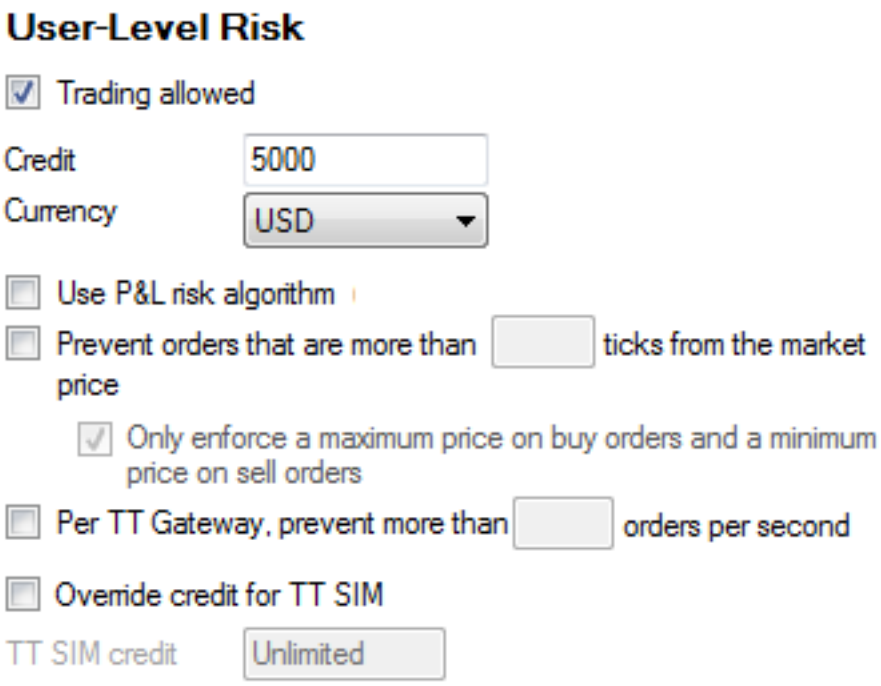
The order throughput control feature allows an administrator to configure the number of orders per second that a trader may send to a given TT Gateway. The TT Gateway will reject orders submitted in excess of the configured limit per second.

This topic contains the following sections:

- "Order Throughput Controls Overview" on page 191 .
- "Order Rejection Overview" on page 192 .
- "Example: Order Throughput Control" on page 192 .
- "Enabling and Setting the Order Throughput Controls" on page 193 .
- "Overriding the Order Throughput Controls" on page 194 .

Order Throughput Controls Overview

The **User-Level Risk** section on the **Main** tab of the User profile contains the order throughput controls. To prevent more than a specific number of orders per second, check the **Per TT Gateway, prevent more than X orders per second** checkbox and enter the number of orders per second.



Note: Use the **Prevent more than X orders per second (overrides the User-Level setting)** option to set the maximum rate of orders per second allowed per TT Gateway and override the user-level setting. For more details, refer to "Overriding the Order Throughput Controls" on page 194.

The TT Gateway calculates the number of orders per second as follows:

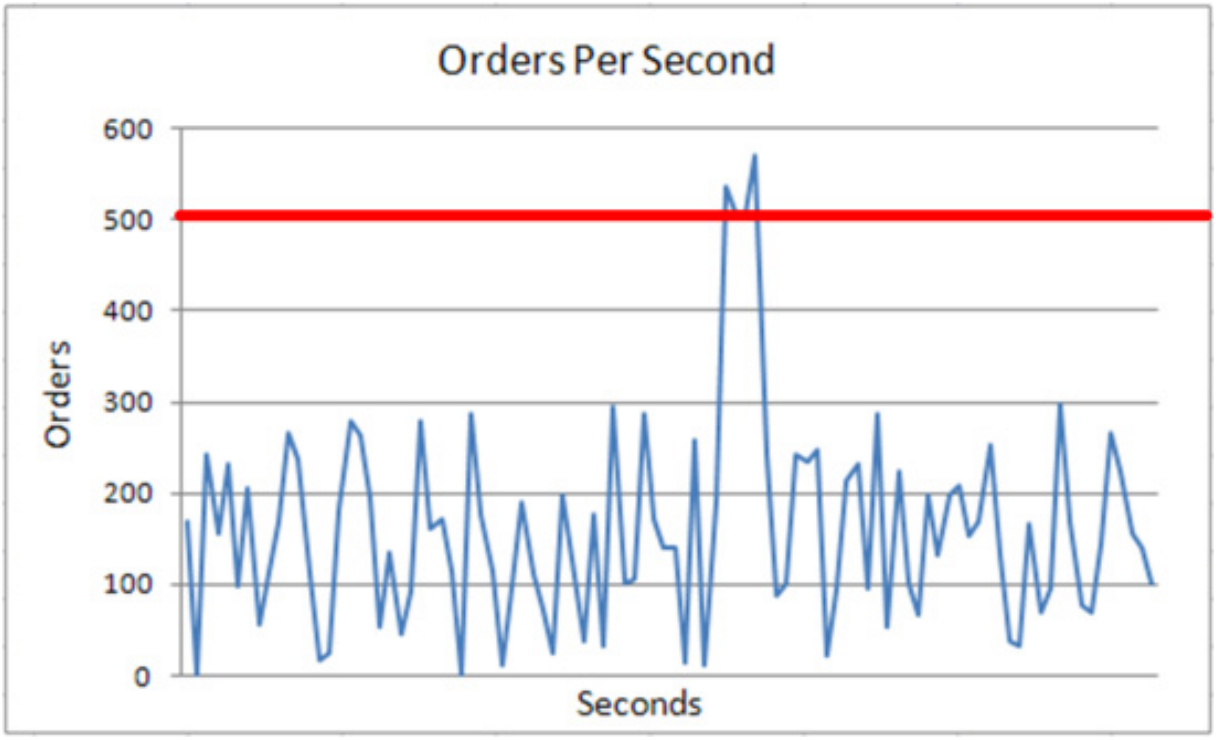
- Each add, change, and delete message to the exchange counts as an individual message.
- Cancel/replace actions count as two messages (a delete and an add).
- Cross/Intention to Cross (ITX)/Wholesale/Over-the-counter (OTC)/Inquire/series create/RFQs do not count towards the number of orders per second limitation.

Order Rejection Overview

The TT Gateway accepts orders while the number of orders in a one-second time frame remains at or below the configured maximum. When the maximum number of orders allowed in a second is exceeded, the TT Gateway rejects all new add orders. When one or both messages in a cancel/replace action exceeds the limits, the TT Gateway rejects both the delete and the add portion of the cancel/replace action, and the order remains working. The TT Gateway counts, but will never reject stand alone delete orders.

Example: Order Throughput Control

In this example an administrator has configured a user with an allowed order throughput of 500 orders per second. The TT Gateway will allow no more than 500 orders per second for that user. It will accept all orders up to and including the 500th order in a one-second time frame, and will reject ALL subsequent orders within that second.



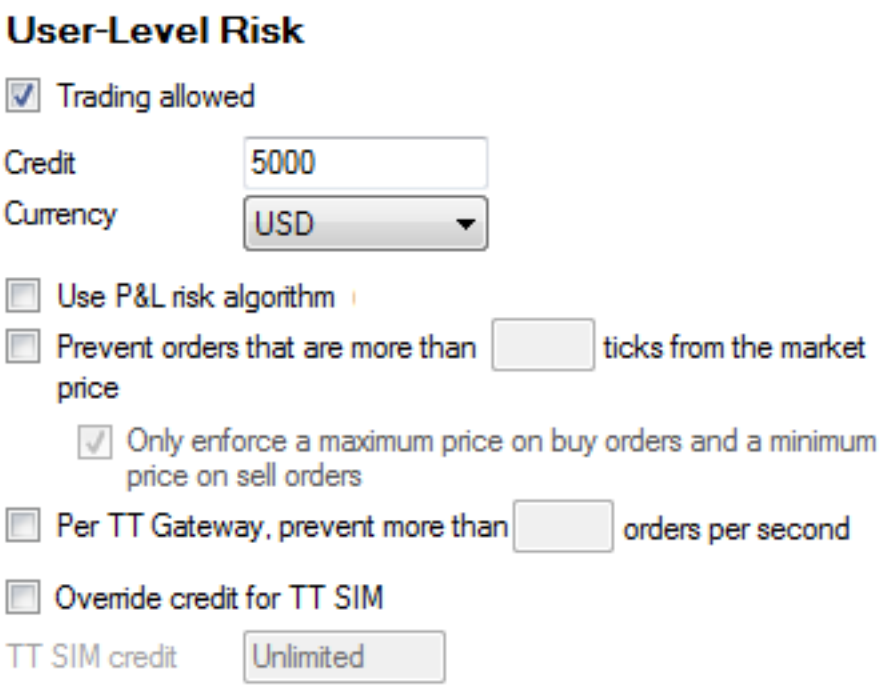
Order Throughput Example

Enabling and Setting the Order Throughput Controls

To enable and set the order throughput controls:

1. From the **User Admin** menu, select **Users**.
2. From the **Users** window, click a user row and then click **Edit**.

   The **Edit User** window appears and defaults to the **Main** tab. The **User-Level Risk** section contains the order throughput controls.



3. To prevent more than a specific number of orders per second, check the **Per TT Gateway, prevent more than X orders per second** checkbox and enter the number of orders per second.

   Note: Use the **Prevent more than X orders per second (overrides the User-Level setting)** option to set the maximum rate of orders per second allowed per TT Gateway and override the user-level setting. For more details, refer to “Overriding the Order Throughput Controls” on page 194.

4. Click **Save**.

Overriding the Order Throughput Controls

To override the maximum orders per second allowed for all TT Gateways assigned to a selected user, check the **Prevent more than X orders per second (overrides the User-Level setting)** option on the **Assign Gateway Login to Available Users** or **Edit User Gateway Login** window. This option allows you to set the maximum rate of orders per second allowed per TT Gateway.

The value entered for this option also appears in the **Max Order/Sec (Override)** column in the **Selected Users** pane of the **Assign to Available Users** window. For each selected user, you can edit the value in this column on a per TT Gateway basis to control the rate per gateway instead of assigning one rate for all gateways assigned to a user.

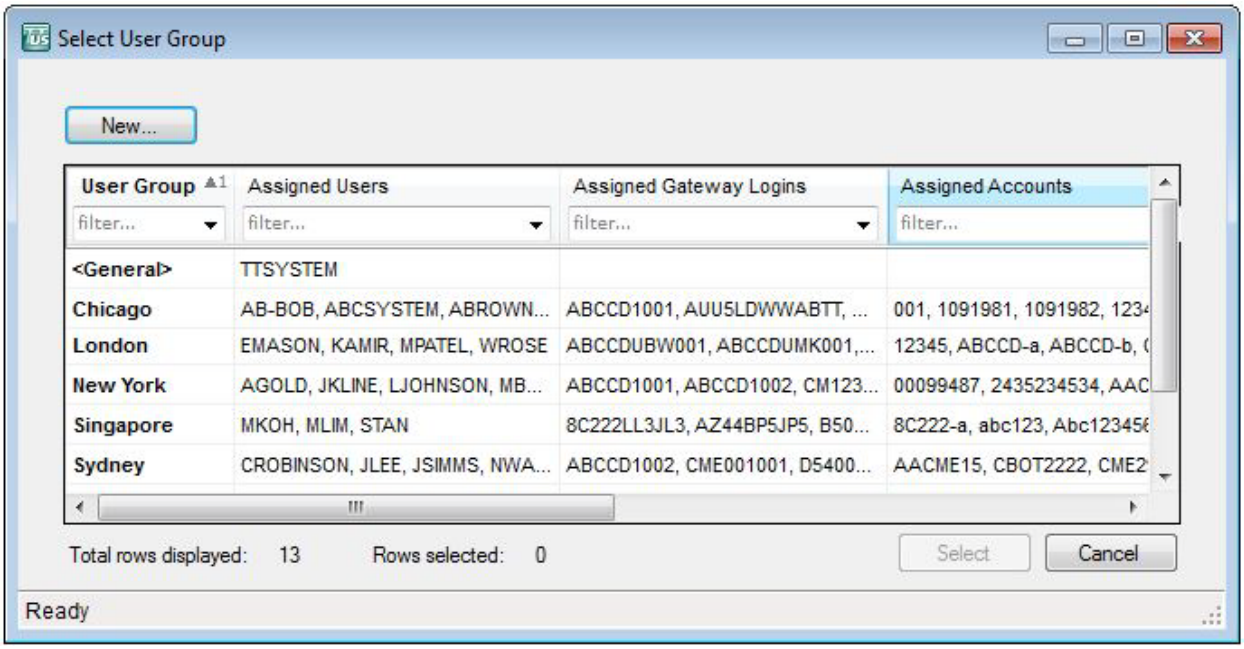
To set the **Prevent more than X orders per second (overrides the User-Level setting)** option, refer to “Editing a User's Gateway Login Attributes” on page 146 and “Assigning Users to a Gateway Login” on page 144.

User Group Administration

User Group Administration Overview

User groups allow you to group users, accounts, and gateway logins. You can then limit an administrator to managing one or more specific user group(s) (and therefore only a subset of users and gateway logins within a given trading network) by editing the TT User Setup Permissions for that administrator.

From the **Select User Group** window you can select an existing user group, or create a new user group.



- To add or edit a user group, refer to the "Creating User Groups" on page 195 topic.
- To assign gateway logins to a selected user group, refer to the "Assigning User Groups to Gateway Logins" on page 200 topic.
- To create an administrative user that is limited to managing specific user groups, refer to "Creating a Group Administrator" on page 86.

Note: The User Groups window is a standard data grid except that you cannot copy or mass-edit user groups. Refer to the "Data Grid Functionality" on page 25 topic if needed.

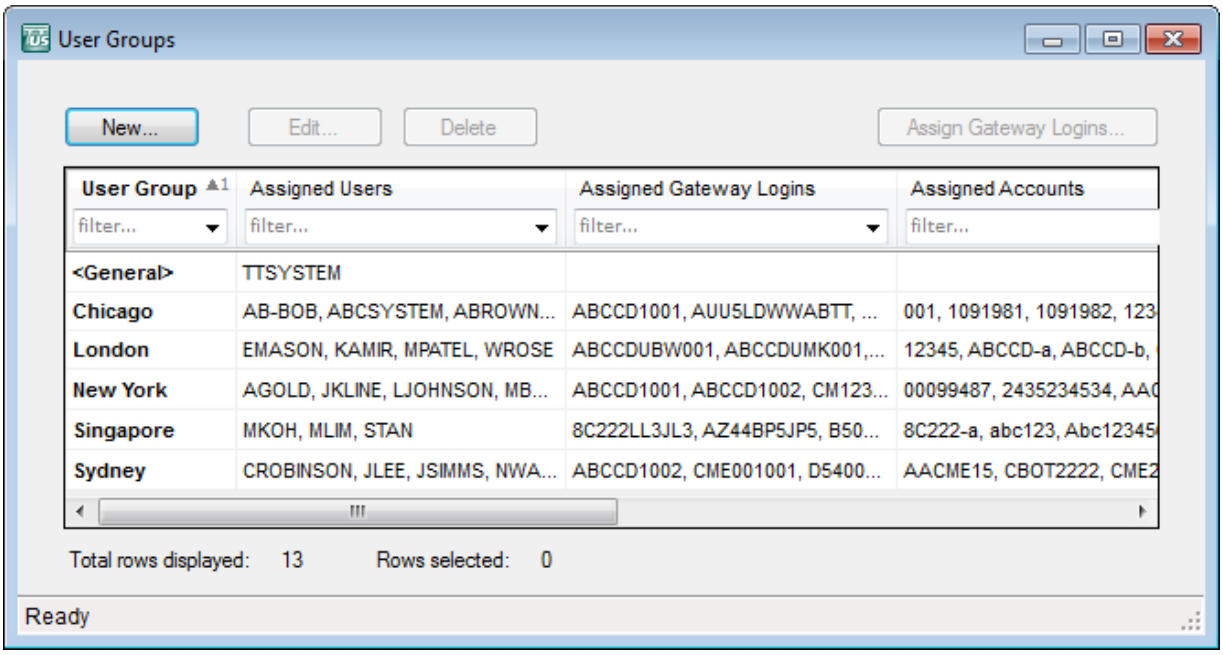
Creating User Groups

From the **User Groups** window, you can create user groups to set up divisions in your organization. After you create user groups, you can assign users, gateway logins, and accounts to those user groups. X_RISK administrators can then use the user groups to group P/L or positions for multiple traders via X_RISK's **Position** window. You can also set up TT User Setup Administrators to manage particular user groups.

Note: A Group Administrator can create user groups, but cannot edit or delete them.

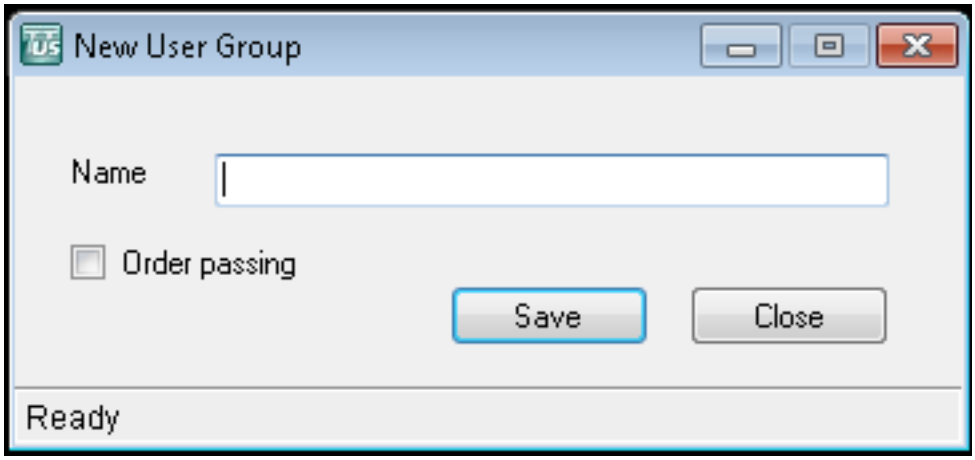
To create a new user group:

1. From the **User Admin** menu, select **User Groups**.



Note: You can also access the **User Groups** window by clicking **Select Group** on the **Edit User** window.

2. From the **User Groups** window, click **New**.



3. In the **New User Group** window, enter the new user group name into the **Name** field.
4. Click **Save**.

Newly-created user groups appear in the **User Groups** window.

Note: When a Group Administrator or Gateway Login Administrator creates a new user group, that user group is added automatically to the list of groups the administrator can manage.

You have successfully created a new user group.

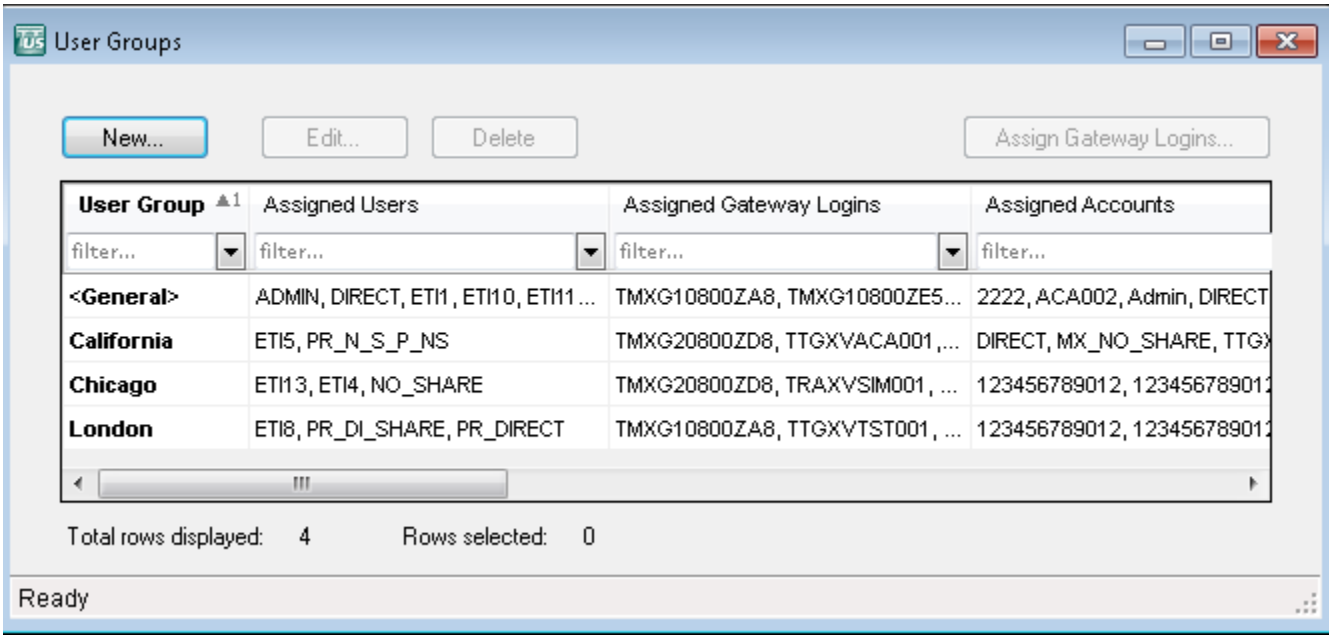
Creating User Groups for Order Passing

Order passing allows a user group (e.g., execution traders) to "pass" visibility and management of open, working orders to another user group. Using X_TRADER® 7.17.10 or higher, the order originator always has full visibility of the current order status and sees all order updates and partial fills that occur while the order is being "watched" by another user group. The two user groups do not need to share their order books; the passing action just adds temporary visibility and management of the order to the other group.

Note: Only Super Administrators can configure order passing for a user group. A Group Administrator can create user groups, but cannot edit or delete them or configure them for order passing. However, they can view the order passing settings.

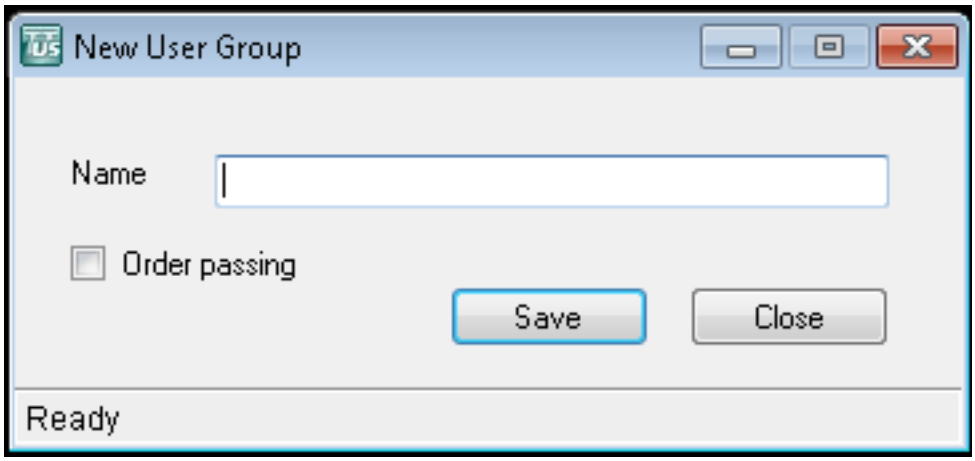
To create a new user group for order passing:

1. From the **User Admin** menu, select **User Groups**.



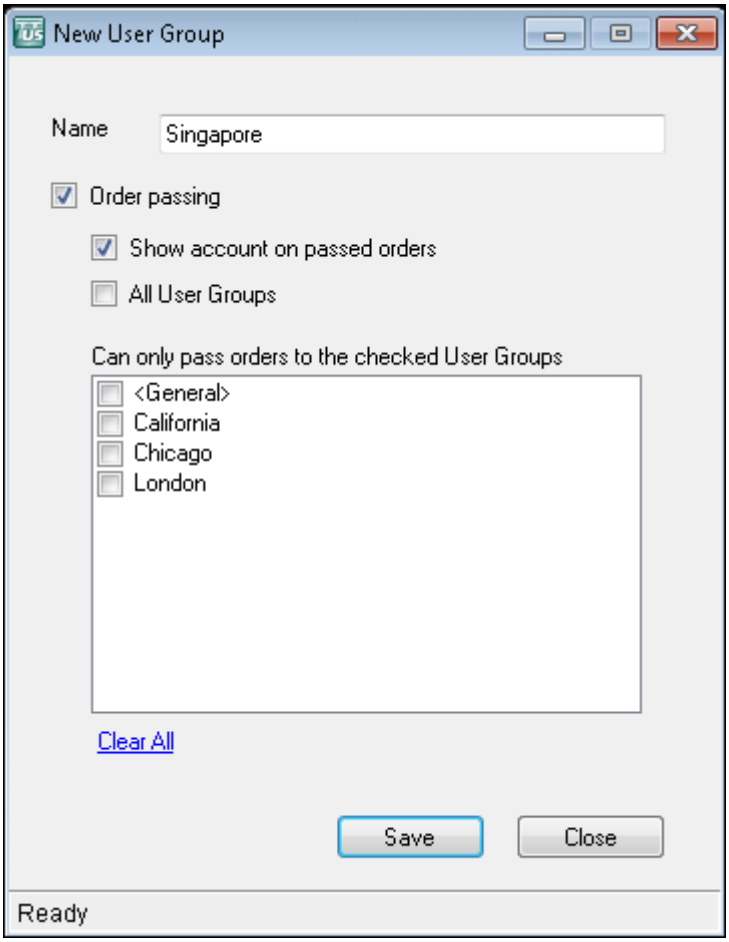
Note: You can also access the **User Groups** window by clicking **Select Group** on the **Edit User** window.

2. From the **User Groups** window, click **New**.



3. In the **New User Group** window, enter the new user group name into the **Name** field.
4. Click **Order passing**.

   The Order passing fields appear in the New User Group window.



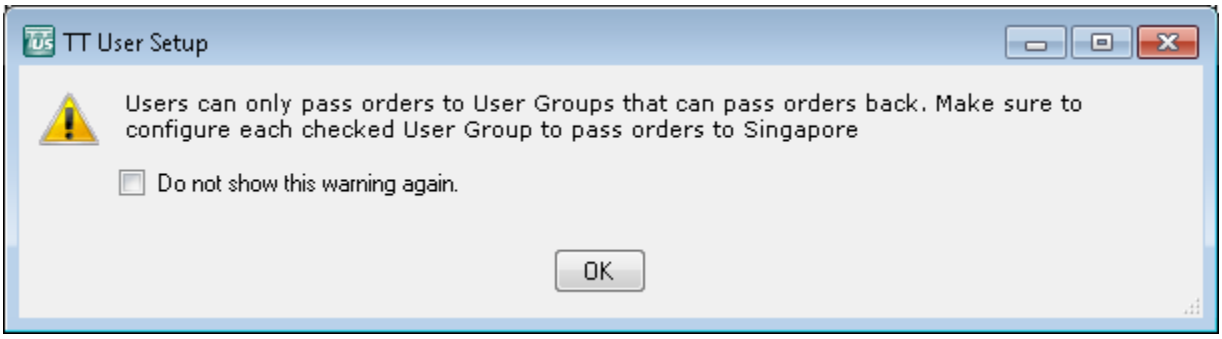
5. Click an available User Group to pass orders with the new User Group.

Select as many User Groups as necessary. Click **All User Groups** to select all the available groups.

The **Show account on passed orders** option is checked by default to allow accounts to be shown on the working orders passed in X_TRADER. Uncheck this option to hide assigned accounts from the other user groups.

6. Click **Save**.

   The following warning message appears. The message is a reminder to configure each selected User Group for order passing.



   Newly-created user groups appear in the **User Groups** window.

   Note: When a Group Administrator or Gateway Login Administrator creates a new user group, that user group is added automatically to the list of groups the administrator can manage.

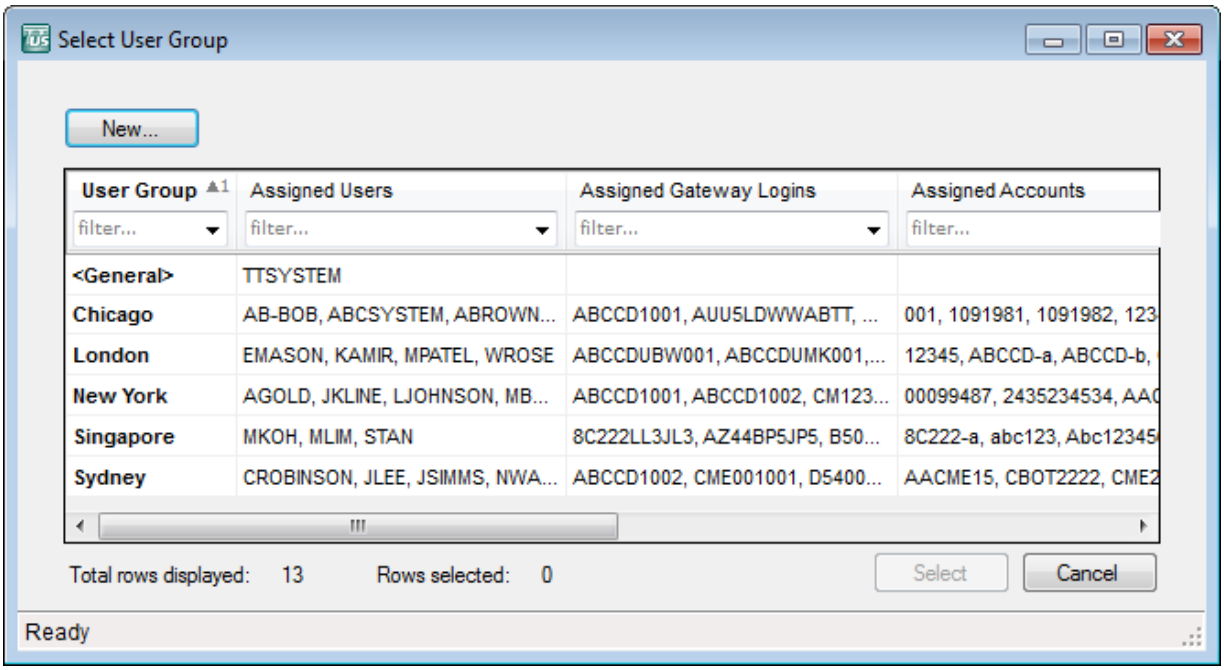
You have successfully created a new user group for order passing.

Assigning Users to a User Group

Use the **New User** or **Edit User** window to assign users to a user group. Users can exist in only one user group at any given time. However, multiple users can belong to the same user group.

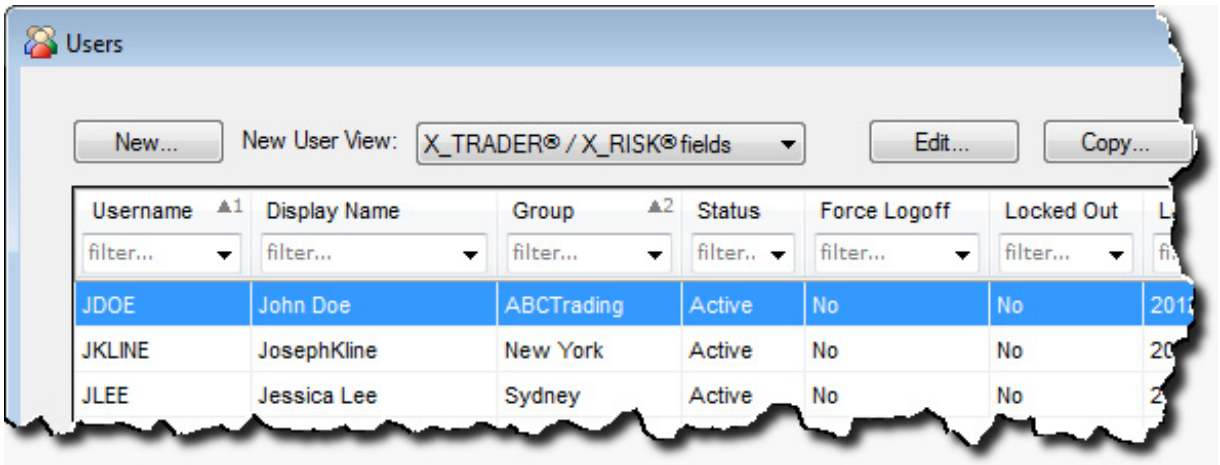
To assign existing users to a user group:

1. From the **User Admin** menu, select **Users**, and then select one or more users to assign to a user group.
2. Click **Edit**.
3. On the **Main** tab of the **New User** or **Edit User** window, click the **User group** field's **Select Group** button.



4. On the **Select User Group** window, select a user group and then click **Select**.
5. Click **Save**.

   The selected user group appears in the **Users** window's **Group** column for the applicable username.



You have successfully assigned one or more users to a user group.

Assigning User Groups to Gateway Logins

As with users, gateway logins can be assigned to user groups. If a gateway login is assigned to a user group, any administrator of that user group can manage the gateway login.

However, gateway logins automatically inherit the user groups associated with any users mapped to those gateway logins. consequently, you only need to assign groups to gateway logins for users that do not have gateway logins assigned.

The rules for inheriting user group permissions include the following:

- When a user is mapped to a gateway login, the gateway login automatically inherits the user's user group.
- User groups inherited by a gateway login change if the parent is changed. For example, when a user's user group changes, the inherited user group for the user's gateway login also changes.
- A Direct Trader gateway login is automatically assigned any user group of a TTORD to which it is mapped.

For example, if an account (123) is assigned to a gateway login (TTORDTT001001), and the gateway login is mapped to a user (JDOE) who belongs to a user group (XT Traders), the account 123 and gateway login TTORDTT001001 become part of the user group (XT Traders). A Group Administrator who can manage the XT Traders user group, can also manage the JDOE user, the 123 account and gateway login TTORDTT001001.

You can either assign Groups to a gateway login, or you can assign gateway logins to a group.

Assigning User Groups to a Gateway Login

To assign a user group to a gateway login manually:

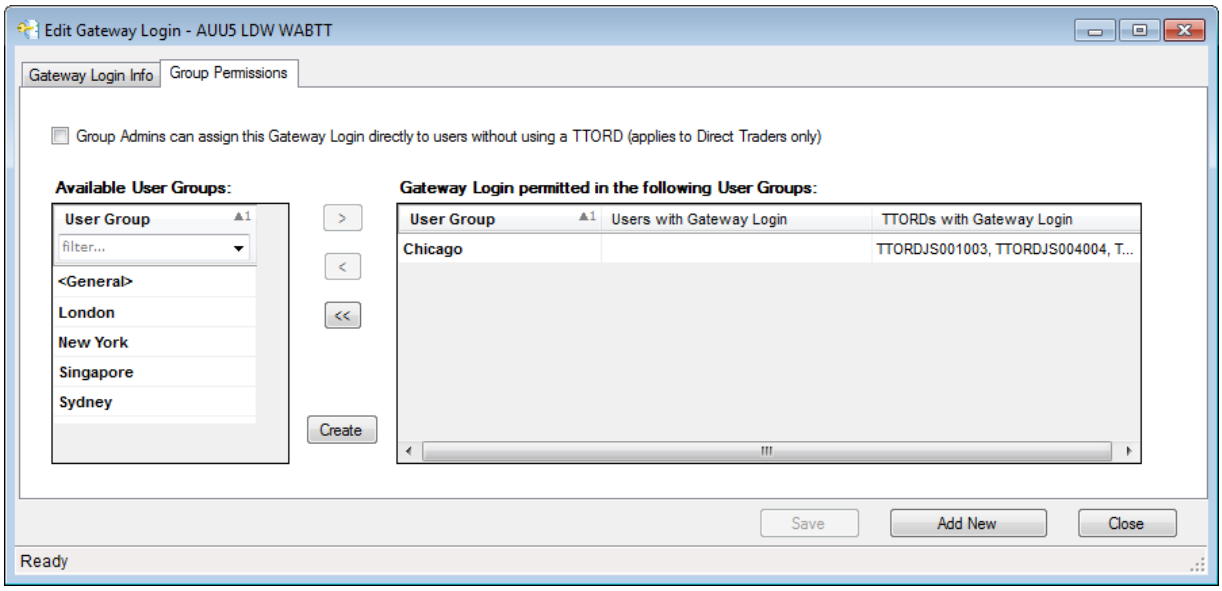
1. From the **User Admin** menu, select **Gateway Logins**.
2. Select a gateway login row and then click **Edit**.

   The **Edit Gateway Login** window appears with the **Gateway Login Info** tab selected.

3. Click the **Group Permissions** tab.
4. Use the transfer buttons (<, <<, >, >>) to move selected user groups from the **Available User Groups** list, to the **Gateway Login permitted in the following User Groups** list.

   The **Gateway Login permitted in the following User Groups** section contains the following fields:

5. **User Group:** Displays the name of the user group.
6. **Users with Gateway Login:** Displays users in the given user group to whom the gateway login is assigned.
7. **TTORDs with Gateway Login:** Displays TTORDs in the given user group that are mapped to this Direct Trader gateway login.
8. To allow a group administrator to edit and directly assign this gateway login, check the **Group Admins can assign this Gateway Login directly to users without using a TTORD** option. If this option is unchecked, Group Administrators can only map the gateway login to a TTORD (to use it indirectly).



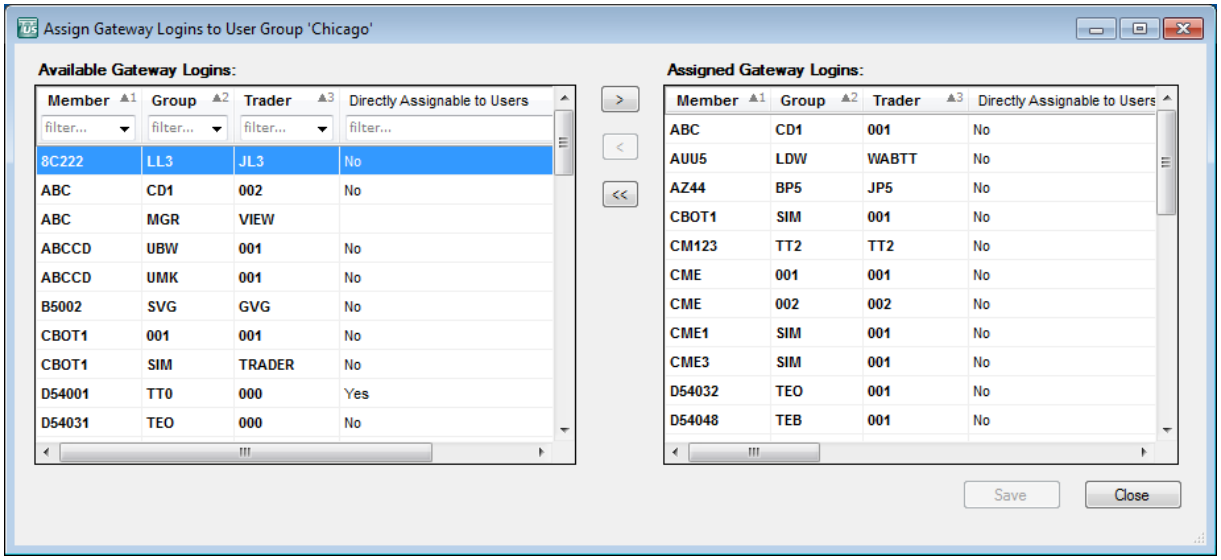
9. Click **Save**.

Assigning Gateway Logins to a User Group

To manually assign a gateway login to a user group:

1. From the **User Admin** menu, select **User Groups**.
2. Select a user group row and then click **Assign Gateway Logins**.

   The **Assign Gateway Logins to User Group** window appears.



3. Use the transfer buttons (<, <<, >, >>) to move selected user groups from the **Available Gateway Logins** list, to the **Assigned Gateway Logins** list.

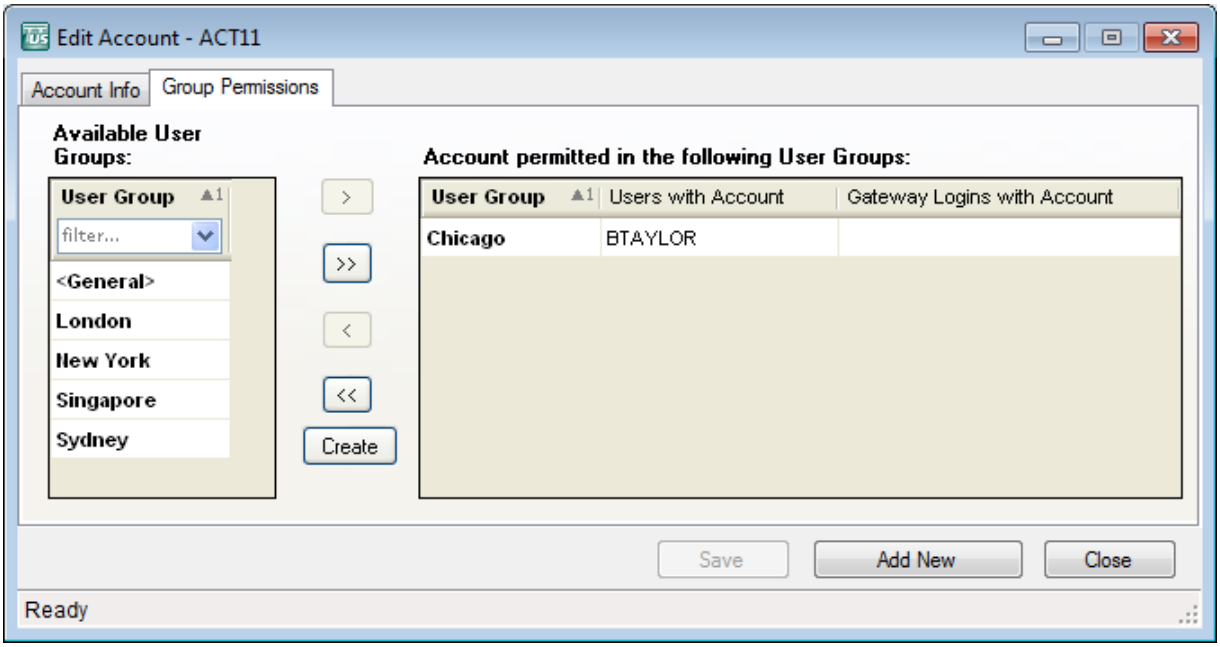
4. Click **Save**.

Assigning User Groups to an Account

When a gateway login is assigned to a user group (refer to “Assigning User Groups to Gateway Logins” on page 200), the user group automatically inherits any accounts that have been assigned to the gateway login and any user group assigned to users who have the account in their customer defaults. If an account is assigned to a user group, any administrator of that user group can manage the account. You can also manually assign user groups to an account.

To assign user groups to an account manually:

1. From the **User Admin** menu, select **Accounts**.
2. Select the account to assign, and then click **Edit** .
3. On the **Edit Account** window, click the **Group Permissions** tab.



4. Use the transfer buttons (<,<<,>>,>) to select users from the **Available User Groups** list and add them to the **Account permitted in the following User Groups** list.

   The **Account permitted in the following User Groups** section contains the following fields:

   - **User Group:** Displays the name of the user group.
   - **Users with Account:** Displays users in the given user group to whom the account is assigned.
   - **Gateway Logins with Account:** Displays gateway logins in the given user group to which this account is assigned.

5. Click **Save**.

Publishing to Guardian

Publishing to Guardian

If you make changes to the product limits or gateway login risk settings, you must publish the changes to Guardian before the changes take effect. If TT User Setup and Guardian become out of synch, the Publish icon on the control panel changes (as indicated below), to indicate that data needs to be published:

In addition, a message appears indicating that TT User Setup and Guardian are out of synch.

Note: Because publishing sends data over the trading network, which could impact trading performance, TT recommends avoiding or limiting publishing during trading hours.

When you click the Publish icon, the **Publish to Guardian** window appears and displays any differences in trader data between TT User Setup and Guardian. The differences fall into one of three categories (as listed in the **Record Exists in** column):

- **TT User Setup only** - A gateway login exists in TT User Setup, but not Guardian. For example, gateway logins have been added to TT User Setup, but have not yet been published to Guardian.
- **Guardian and TT User Setup** - Changes to a previously published gateway login have been made in TT User Setup but not published to Guardian.
- **Guardian only** - A gateway login exists in Guardian, but not TT User Setup. For example, gateway logins have been deleted from TT User Setup, but have not yet been deleted from Guardian (by publishing).

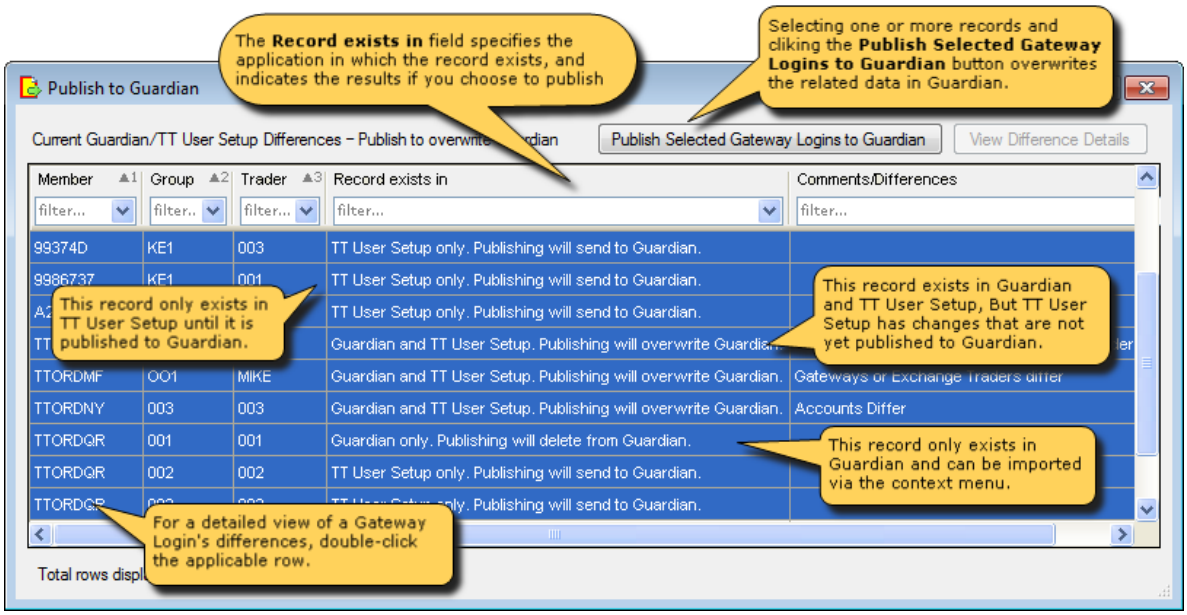
To publish records to Guardian:

1. Do one of the following:
2. From the **File** menu, select **Publish to Guardian**.
3. On the toolbar, click the Publish to Guardian icon.

   The **Publish to Guardian** window appears.

4. Highlight the records you want to publish.
5. Click **Publish Selected Gateway Logins to Guardian**.

   The following image specifies the records that require publishing.



Note: TT User Setup includes an optional server-side setting, *DisableProductLimitPublishing*, which causes TT User Setup to disregard all changes that are not related to order routing when checking for differences between Guardian and TT User Setup. Order routing data includes TTORD to exchange trader mappings and TTORD account numbers. This option must only be used with FIX Adapter 7.6 and later when all traders who are risk checked in the environment are using **X_TRADER** 7.8 or later. For a detailed description on disabling product limit publishing, refer to the *TT User Setup System Administration Manual*.

Displaying Detailed Differences

TT User Setup provides a detailed account of differences that exist between TT User Setup and Guardian data prior to publishing. You can use the information provided to reconcile these differences.

The **Guardian/User Setup Differences Details** window consists of three sections;

- **ID**: TTORD or Exchange Trader data, which provides specific account and gateway login information.
- **Gateway Logins/Exchange Traders**: The Gateways or Exchange Traders to which the ID is mapped.
- **Product Limits**: which show the limits established through TT User Setup for the applicable TTORD or Exchange Trader.

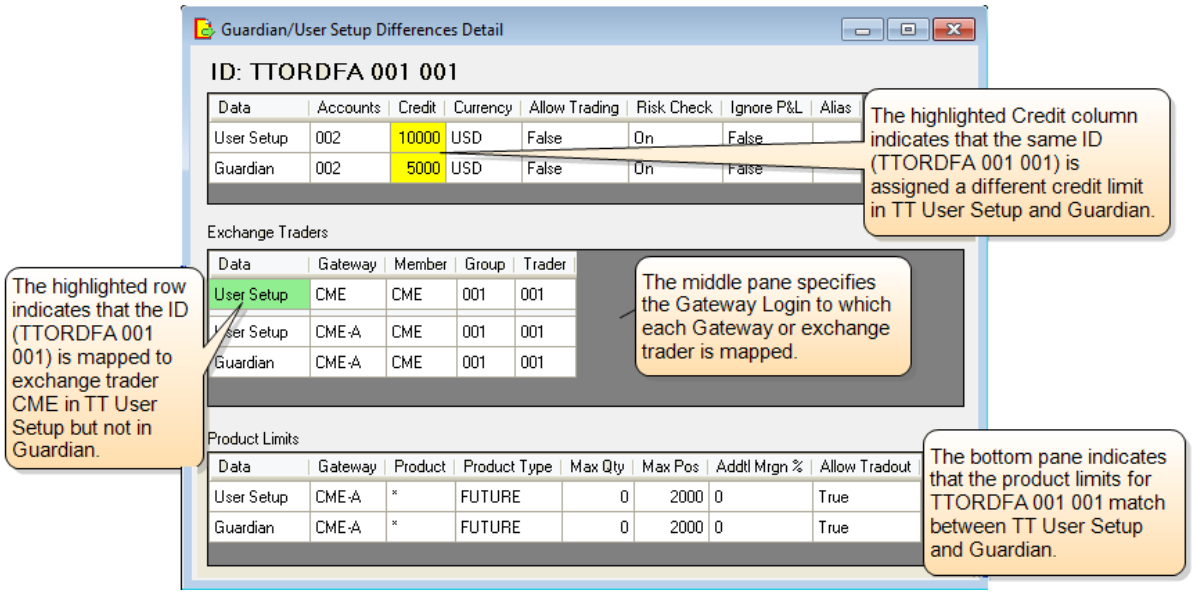
A TTORD or Exchange Trader record appears in the **Guardian/User Setup Differences Details** window when any of the following conditions apply:

- The ID is in TT User Setup, but not in Guardian.
- The ID is in Guardian, but not in TT User Setup.
- The ID is in both TT User Setup and Guardian, but there are data differences.
- The record is in both TT User Setup and Guardian, but the **Add to Guardian** option is unchecked in TT User Setup.

To access the Differences Details window:

1. From the **File** menu, select **Publish to Guardian**.
2. Select a single differences row and then click **View Differences Details**. Alternatively, you can double-click the row.

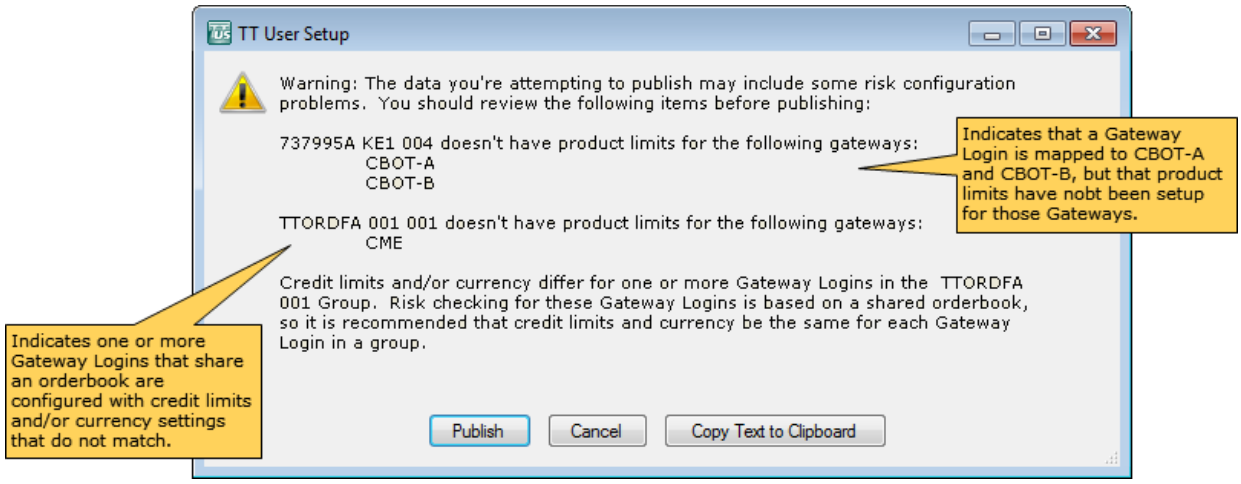
The following image shows how differences are displayed and describes some sample differences.



Note: If **DisableProductLimitPublishingMode** is on, Risk-related fields are not published and are therefore not listed in the difference detail (refer to the TT User Setup System Administration Manual for more information about the DisableProductLimitPublishingMode parameter).

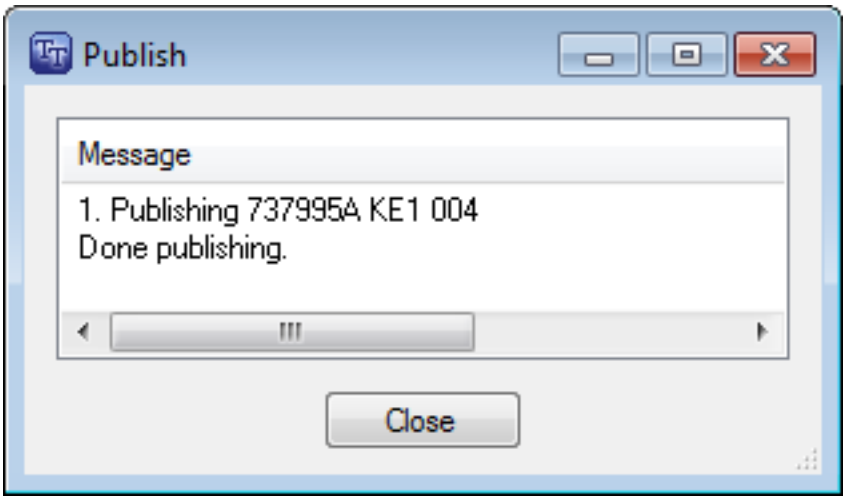
Understanding Publish Warnings

After publishing, TT User Setup provides some helpful hints about your data that might indicate erroneous setups. For example:



Note: Gateway logins where Member and Group are the same will share an order book.

After clicking **Publish**, a status window appears and shows each successfully-published gateway login. The message for a successful publish concludes with **Done Publishing**.



Server Administration

Collecting Log Files

TT User Setup allows you to collect remote log files from other machines on your gateway directly from your client-side machine. The machines from which you collect log files must be set up in the same trading environment as your own.

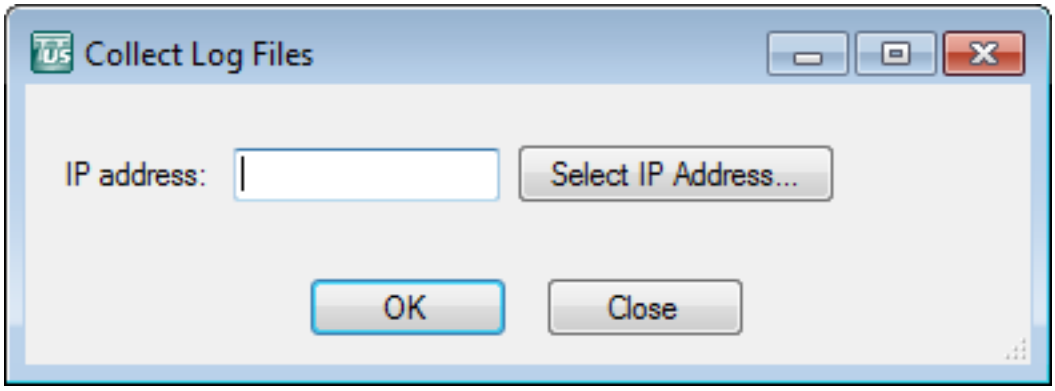
Note: Collecting log files could cause significant network traffic. As such, it is recommended that large log files not be collected during peak trading hours.

Note: You can also collect specific logfiles from the TT User Setup server's logfiles folder using the TT User Setup Command Line Client application. Refer to the **Advanced Data Collection** topic in chapter 4 of the *TT User Setup System Administration Manual* for more information.

To collect log files:

1. From the **Server Admin** menu, select **Collect Log Files**.

   The **Collect Log Files** window appears.



2. In the **IP address** field, enter the address of the remote machine from which you want the log file data collected, or, click **Select IP Address** and select the IP Address from the list of user-names.
3. Click **OK**.

   The zip file, **<IP address>_<DDMMYYYY>.zip**, will be placed in your **<root drive>:\tt\log-files** directory.

   If they are present on the local machine, some of the following types of files will be included in the zip file:

- TT application and local machine-specific diagnostic settings. For example, netstat, ipconfig, tcpip registry, etc.
- TT application installation log files for each installed product version.
- TT application log files.
- TT application crash dump files.
- TT client application audit logs.
- TT application-specific CSV export files.
- TT server or client-specific data files. For example, order tables, risk limits, risk audit files, license files, currency table, etc.
- Guardian Product Table fields.
- TT Gateway audit files.
- TT application configuration files, including **Aconfig.xml** and **Aconfig_local.xml**.
- The Tick Table.
- The Windows Dr. Watson error log .
- Information about the local host.
- Login profile-specific information on a local machine.

You have successfully collected log files.

Using Version Control Rules

TT User Setup allows a Super Administrator (non-MultiBroker) or TT Adminstrators (MultiBroker) to define rules for which versions of TT software can be used within a trading environment. By using version rules, you can, for example, prevent potential issues related to logging in with X_TRADER applications that are too old.

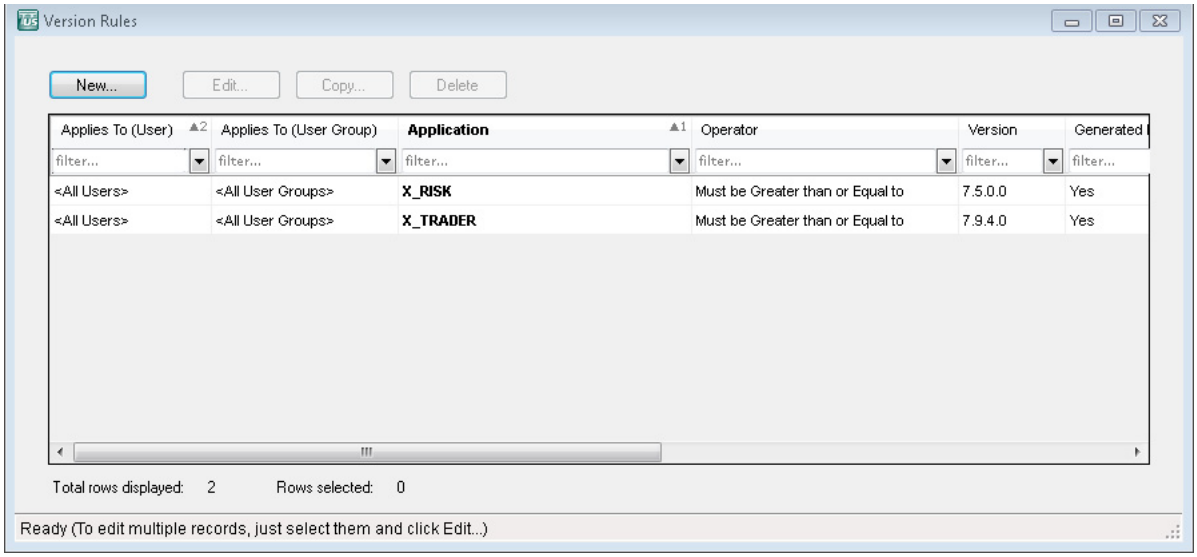
For example, to reject logins from X_TRADER versions prior to version 7.8.1.1, you would create a rule that specified that the X_TRADER application must be greater than or equal to 7.8.1.1.

When creating rules, consider the following:

- A user can have only one rule per application.
- Rules configured for a specific user take precedent over rules configured for all users.

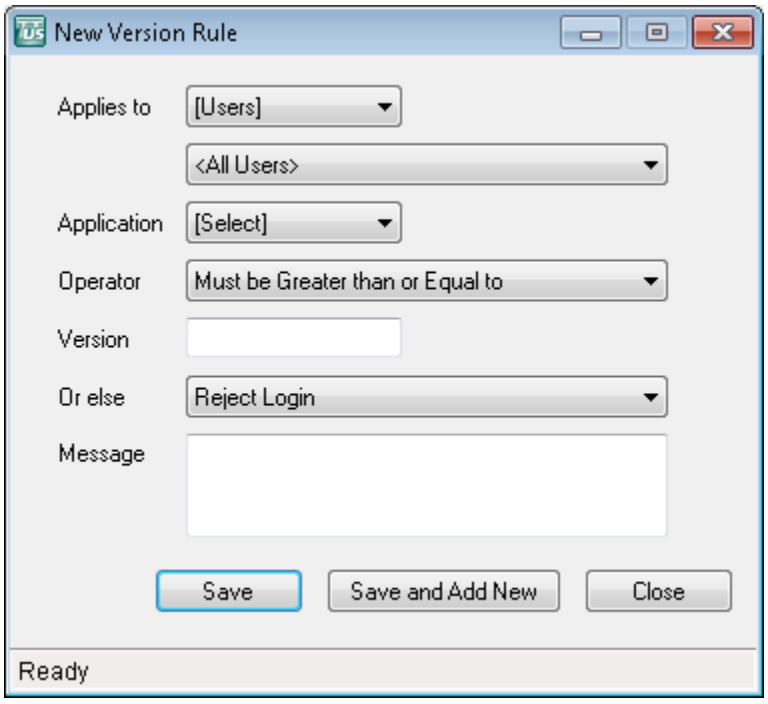
To create a new version control rule...

1. From the **Server Admin** menu, select **Version Rules**.



2. Click **New**.

   The **New Version Rule** window appears.



3. From the **Applies To** list, select the user or user group to whom a rule applies. (or select **All Users** or **All User Groups**).
4. From the **Application** list, select the application to which you want the rules to apply.
5. From the **Operator** list, choose from the following:
   - Must be between
   - Must be equal to
   - Must be greater than or equal to

- Must be less than or equal to

6. In the **Version** field, input a version in the following format: 1.1.1.1.

   Note: If the selected application is managed by TT Update, select a TT Client version from the drop-down menu in the **Version** field.

7. In the **Or Else** field, select one of the following:
   - Select **Reject a Login** if the user's login will be rejected with a message that indicates why the login is rejected.

     Note: If the selected application is managed by TT Update, users will be required to upgrade or downgrade to a version that complies with this version rule.

   - Select **Warn User** if a message will alert the user to the warning, but login will be allowed.

     Note: If the selected application is managed by TT Update, users will be allowed but not required to upgrade or downgrade to a version that complies with this version rule.

8. In the **Additional Message** field, define text that displays after the message that appears indicating the reason the user was warned or had their login rejected.
9. Click **Save**.

Resetting the Guardian Exchange Tree

The **Reset Guardian Exchange Tree** option removes any exchanges and IP addresses where there are no running services, for all Guardians in the environment.

To reset the Guardian exchange tree:

1. From the **Server Admin** menu, select **Reset Guardian Exchange Tree**.
2. When prompted to confirm the reset, click **Yes**.

   The Guardian exchange tree resets.

Editing the Currency Exchange Rates

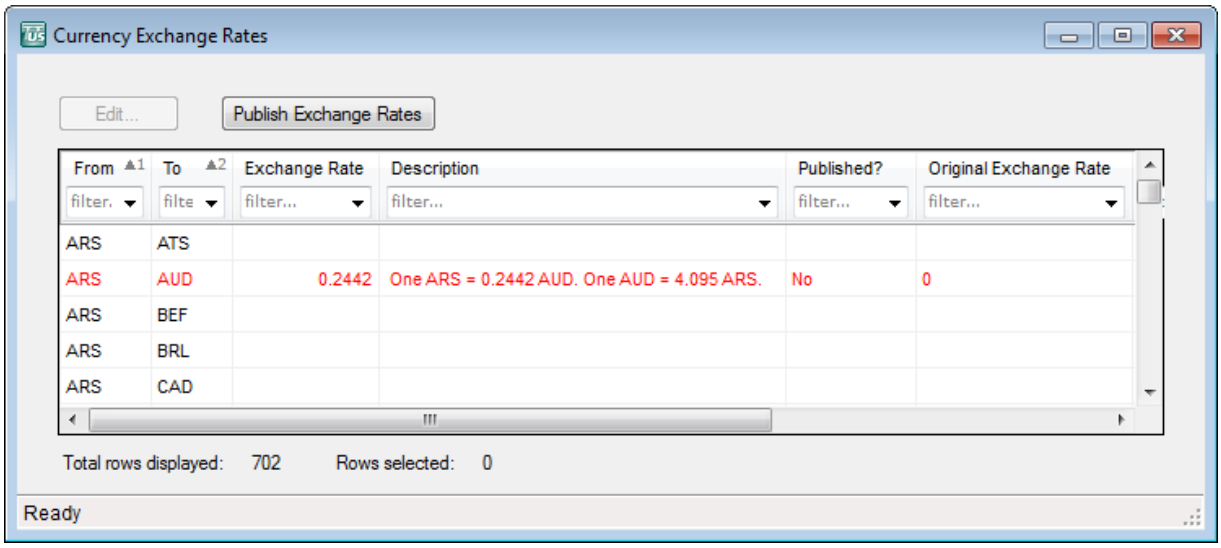
The **Edit Currency Exchange Rates** feature allows you to edit the exchange rates listed in Guardian. These exchange rates are used in P&L and risk calculations in X_TRADER and X_RISK.

Note: If you use TT User Setup to edit the currency exchange rates, do not edit currency rates with Guardian.

To edit the currency exchange rates:

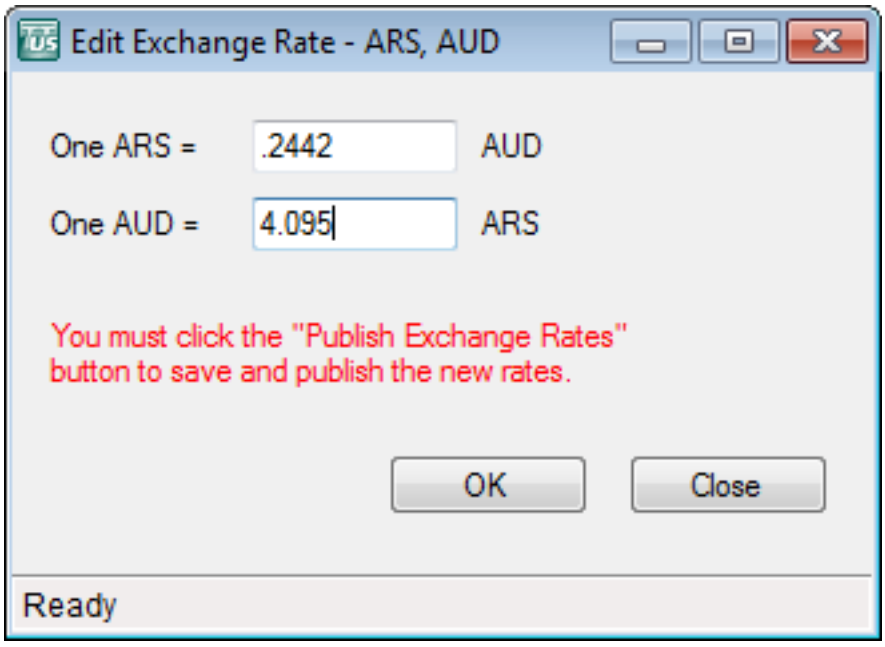
1. From the **Server Admin** menu, select **Currency Exchange Rates**.

   The **Currency Exchange Rates** window appears.



2. Select the currency you want to edit, and click **Edit** (you cannot select multiple currencies).

   The **Edit Exchange Rate** window appears.



3. Enter the exchange rate into either field; TT User Setup calculates the other field value for you.

   In the example above, one Argentinean Peso exchanges to 0.2442 Australian Dollars. TT User Setup automatically calculates the reverse exchange at one Australian Dollar to 4.095 Argentinean Pesos.

4. Click **OK**.

   Note: To reset an exchange rate, access the **Edit Exchange Rate** window and set both values to 0.

5. When you are finished editing exchange rates, click **Publish Exchange Rates**.

   You have successfully edited the currency exchange rates.

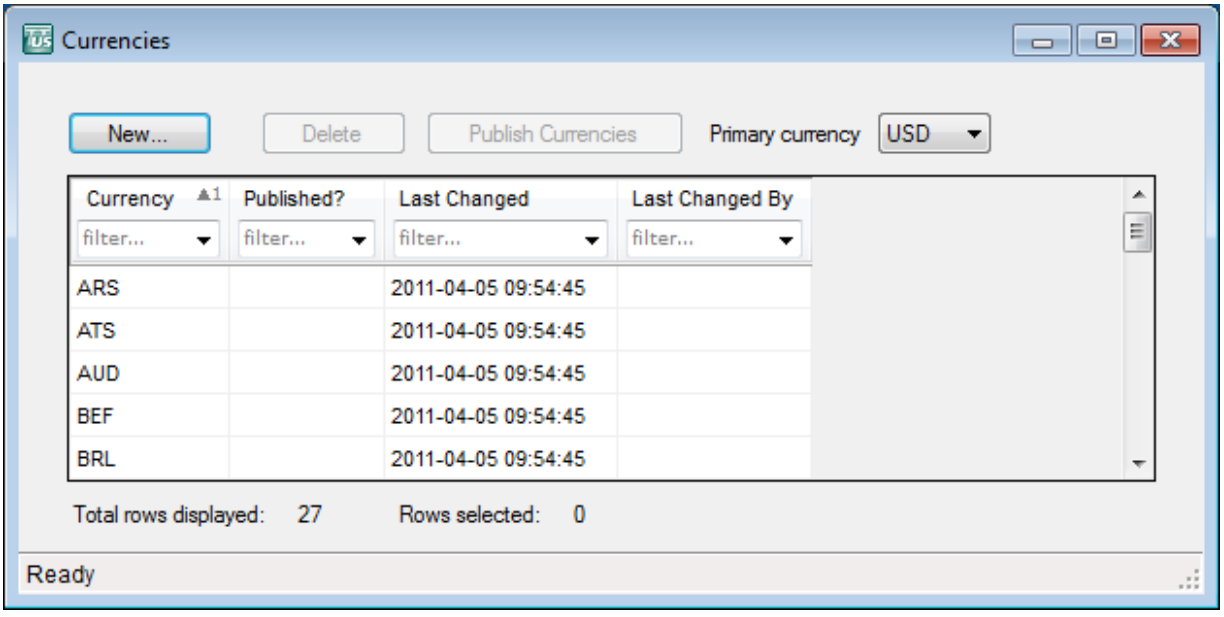
Adding and Deleting Currencies

When logged on as a Super Administrator you can add or delete currencies, and you can select the primary currency that clients applications use when displaying P/L and available credit. Administrators previously performed these tasks from the **Currency Table** window in Guardian. In X_TRADER and X_RISK 7.11 and later, the currency display option is configured within X_TRADER/X_RISK.

To add a currency:

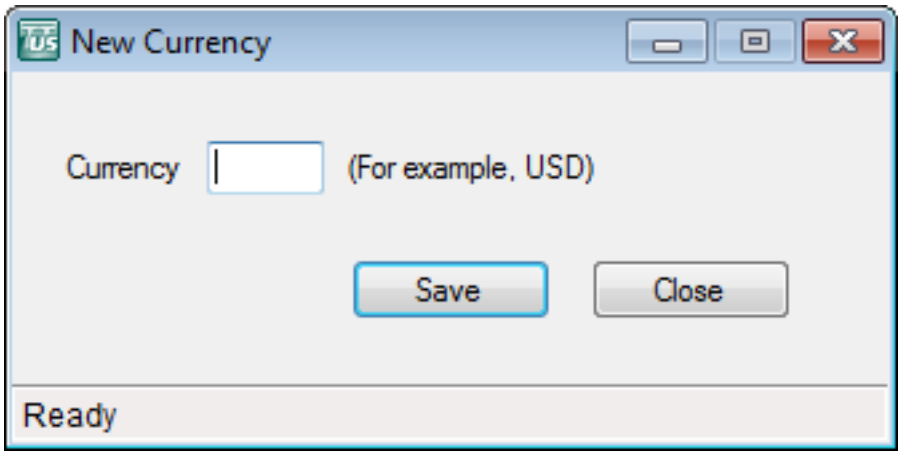
1. From the **Server Admin** menu, select **Add/Remove Currencies**.

   The **Currencies** window appears.



2. Click **New**.

   The **New Currency** window appears.



3. Enter the 3-letter designation for the new currency, and then click **Save**.

   The new currency appears in the currencies table as *Unpublished*.

4. Repeat steps 2 and 3 as needed to add more currencies.
5. When you are finished adding currencies, click **Publish Currencies** to publish the currencies to Guardian.

You have successfully added currencies.

▶ To delete a currency:

1. From the **Currencies** window, select the currency to delete.
2. Click **Delete**.
3. When prompted to permanently delete the currency, click **OK**.
4. Repeat steps 2 and 3 as needed to delete more currencies.
5. When you are finished deleting currencies, click **Publish Currencies** to publish the currency changes to Guardian.

You have successfully deleted currencies.

▶ To change the primary currency:

1. From the **Currencies** window, select the primary currency from the **Primary currency** drop-down list.
2. Click **Publish Currencies** to publish the currency changes to Guardian.

You have successfully set the primary currency.

Editing Product Margins

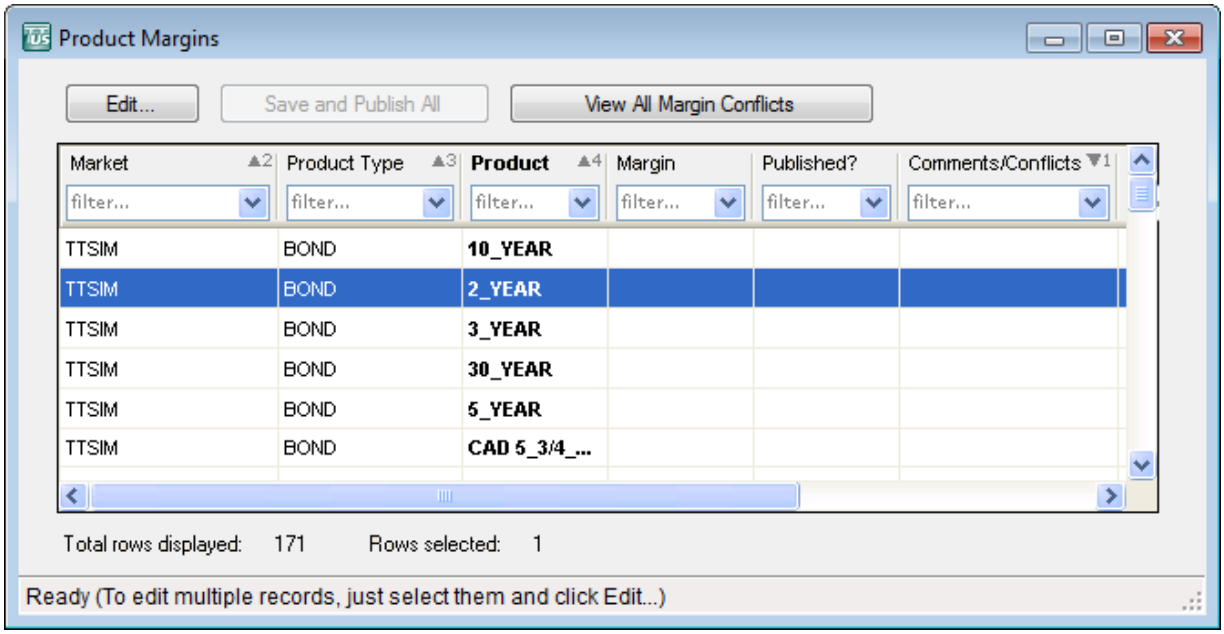
The **Product Margins** window displays a list of products for each market, as well as information related to those products such as Product Type and Margin. When Super Administrators edit and then publish margin values for a given product, the changes are published to each gateway flavor within the market that lists the product.

When TT User Setup detects multiple gateways with different margins for the same products, TT User Setup adds a comment to the **Comments/Conflicts** column and also makes an entry in the **Product Table Conflicts** window. The Super Administrator can view and clear the conflicts. Refer to the "Viewing and Clearing Product Margin Conflicts" on page 217 topic.

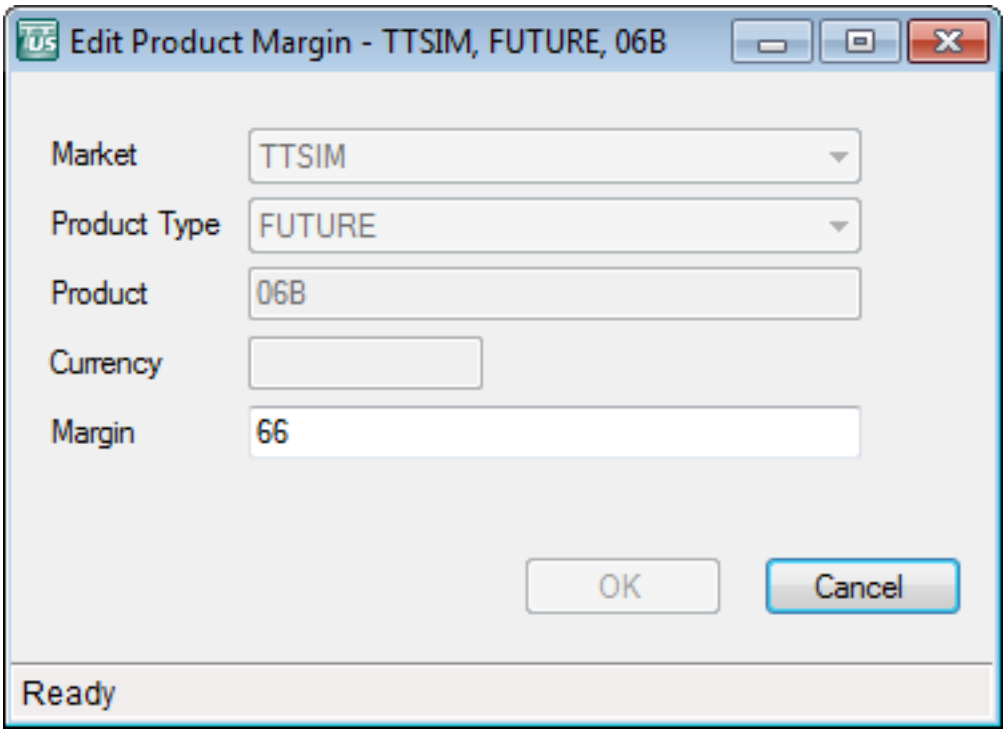
To edit the product margins:

1. From the **Server Admin** menu, select **Product Margins**.

   The **Product Margins** window appears.



2. Select one or more product margins, and then click **Edit**.



3. In the Margin field, enter the new margin, and then click **OK**.
4. When you are finished editing margins, click **Save and Publish All**.

You have successfully edited the project margins.

Note: Although the Guardian product tables are updated, the Guardian GUI on the TT User Setup Server will not display the new settings from TT User Setup until the Guardian service is restarted.

Viewing and Clearing Product Margin Conflicts

When TT User Setup detects multiple gateways with different margins for the same products, TT User Setup adds a comment to the **Comments/Conflicts** column and also makes an entry in the **Product Table Conflicts** window. Conflicts typically happen when a product margin has been changed outside of TT User Setup. A TT User Setup Super administrator can view and clear the conflicts.

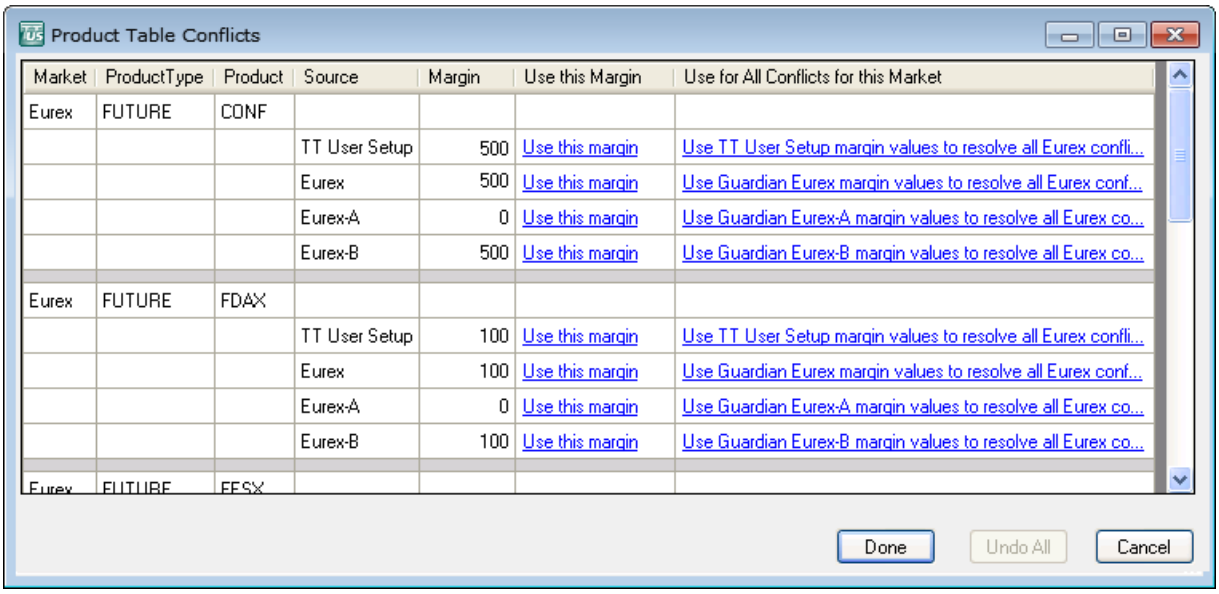
To view and clear any product margin conflicts:

1. From the **Server Admin** menu, select **Product Margins**.

   The **Product Margins** window appears.

2. Click **View All TTUS Guardian Conflicts**.

   The **Product Table Conflicts** window appears.



   Each conflict is listed separately; TT User Setup allows you to resolve the conflict by selecting the TT User Setup value or the Guardian value for each product.

3. Select the TT User Setup or Guardian values as needed:
   - To use the value in TT User Setup, click **Use this margin** for the TT User Setup row. Or if you want to use the value in TT User Setup for all conflicts in this market, click **Use TT User Setup value to resolve all <gateway> conflicts**.
   - To use the value in Guardian, click **Use this margin** for the Guardian row. Or if you want to use the value in TT User Setup for all conflicts in this market, click **Use Guardian value to resolve all <gateway> conflicts**.

   Example: In the above example , the CONF, FDAX, and other products have different margins on EUREX, EUREX-A, and EUREX-B. To resolve the conflicts, you could select the appropriate **Use this margin** for each product. Alternatively, if you always want to use the EUREX-B margin, you could select **Use Guardian Eurex-B margin values to resolve all Eurex conflicts** just once.

4. To undo changes, click **Undo**, or **Undo All**.
5. When you are finished resolving conflicts, click **Done**.

   TT User Setup returns to the **Product Margins** window.

6. Click **Save and Publish**.

   Note: Although the Guardian product tables are updated, the Guardian GUI on the TT User Setup Server will not display the new settings from TT User Setup until the Guardian service is restarted.

Viewing and Publishing Licenses

TT licenses and bills its products using license files, which define the number and type of TT client and server applications that the customer has paid to use. Most TT software except TT's Guardian application requires license files. These license files are as follows:

- **TTLICENSE.LMT** (referred to as the .LMT file): This file is the actual license file that must be loaded into the TT trading environment in order to run TT software. Only one .LMT file controls the entire TT system. However, this file must be updated whenever the customer installs new products or renews his license with TT. TT encrypts this license file. All licenses in the .LMT file include an expiration date after which you can no longer use the software.
- **TT1300SW.dll**. The .dll file contains the keys used to decrypt the TTLICENSE.LMT file.

Customers must review and renew their licenses on a quarterly basis. You can use TT User Setup to monitor the number of licensed applications (and their associated IP addresses) that are logged into the system, and to load license files. This functionality was previously provided only by Guardian.

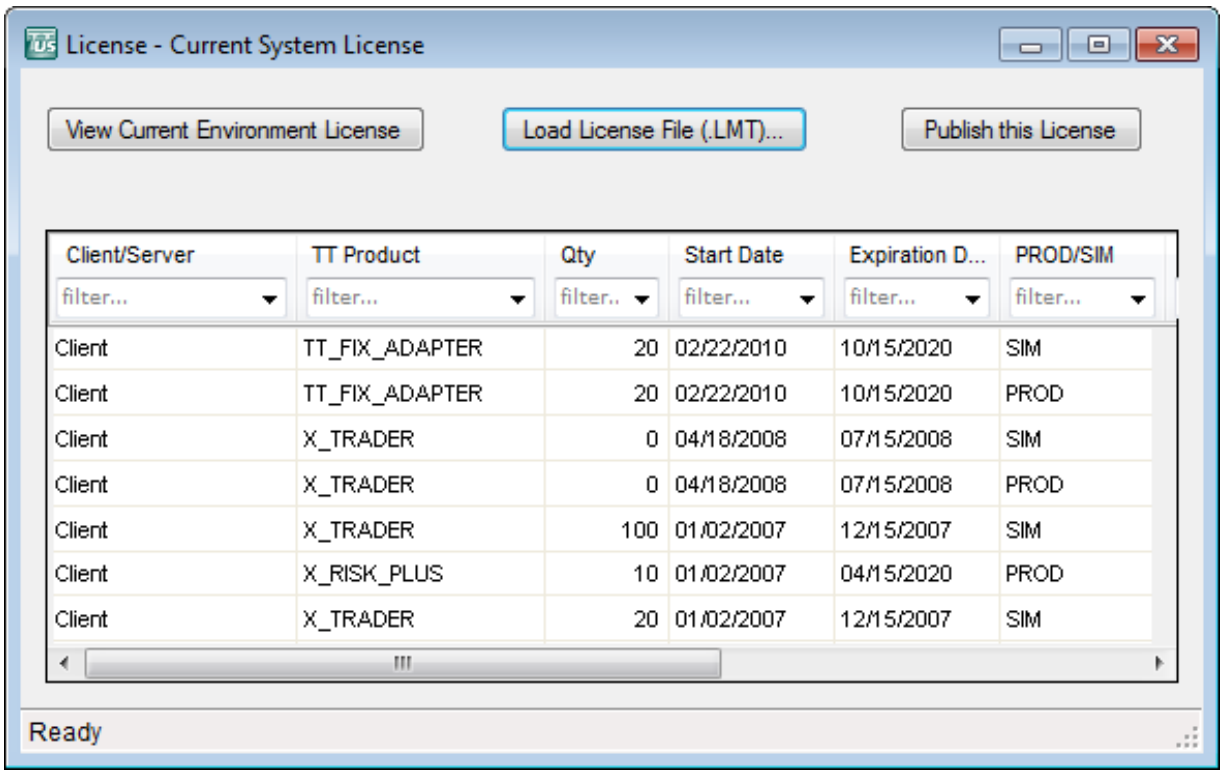
This topic contains the following sections:

Viewing Licenses

To view a TT license:

1. Log onto TT User Setup as a Super Administrator.
2. From the **Server Admin** menu select **License Setup**.

   The **License Setup** window appears:



The license table contains the following information:

Field	Description
Client/Server	Lists whether this license is a Client license or a Server license.
TT Product	Lists the TT Product to which the license applies.
Qty	Lists the number of licenses assigned.
Start Date	The date the license becomes valid.
Expiration Date	The date the license expires.
Prod/SIM	Lists whether the license applies to environments running in Prod mode or SIM mode.
Min Version	Internal use only.

Field	Description
In Effect	If the current date is between the license Start Date and Expiration Date, and if the Prod/SIM setting for the license matches the Prod/SIM setting in guardian, the license is considered in effect (In Effect is set to yes). If the license is expired or set to a different Prod/SIM setting than guardian, the license is not in effect.
# of Markets	The number of markets to which the license applies. If the license applies to all market the value is "All".
Exchange	The exchange to which this license applies. If this field is blank, the license applies to all exchanges for the product.
IP Address	Used by server products to specify the IP address that the server product is allowed to run on.

3. When you are finished viewing the licenses, close this window. Or, to load and publish licenses, continue to the next topic.

Loading and Publishing Licenses

Before traders can use the TT Trading System, you must install the appropriate license file.

Note: A TT Gateway does not appear in Guardian until its license has been loaded.

Note: If you replace a pre-existing license file with a newer one (i.e., you've added new components to your network such as X_TRADER® workstations), TT recommends that you verify that the filename of the new license matches the filename of the old license file, and the date of the license file is more recent than the old license file.

To load the license in TT User Setup:

1. Copy the .LMT, .dll, and license text files to a folder that is accessible to this TT User Setup client.
2. Log onto TT User Setup as a Super Administrator.
3. From the **Server Admin** menu select **License Setup**.

   The **License Setup** window appears.

4. Click **Load License File**, navigate to the folder that contains the license files, and then click **Open**.

   TT User Setup returns to the **License Setup** window.

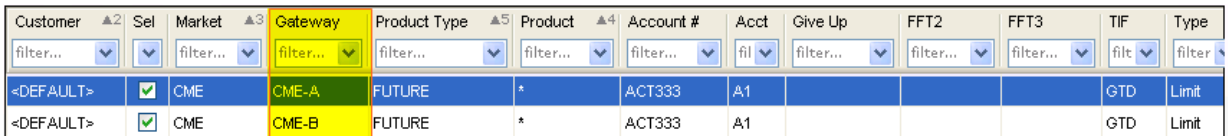
5. Click **Publish this License**.
6. When TT User Setup alerts you that the license file was published, click **OK**.

Migrating Users to a New Gateway

TT User Setup includes a tool to migrate users from one gateway to another. This is useful when you are adding another flavor of a gateway to your environment (i.e. adding a CME-B Gateway as a backup in an environment that contains a CME-A Gateway), or if a gateway is rebranded (i.e. migrating users that connect to a CBOT-A Gateway to a CME-A Gateway).

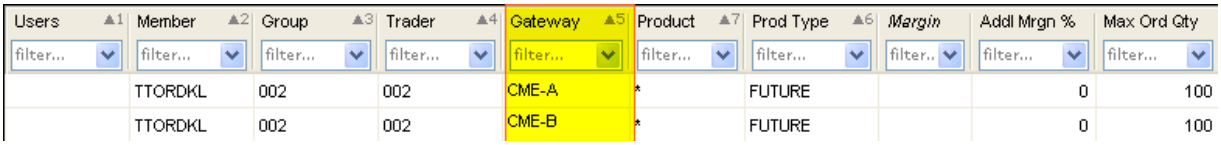
When you migrate users, all data related to the source gateway is copied for all the users that are mapped to the source gateway.

- **Customer Defaults**: Any gateway-specific customer defaults are copied and saved as a customer default for the target gateway. For example, if the user had a customer default that applied to the source CME-A Gateway, then the customer default is copied and applied to the target CME-Gateway. Market-specific customer defaults are unaltered.



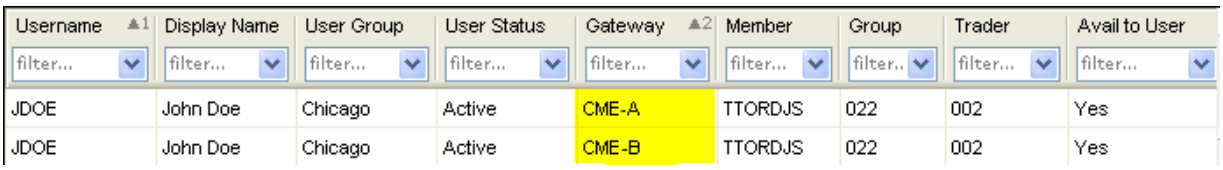
Customer	Sel	Market	Gateway	Product Type	Product	Account #	Acct	Give Up	FFT2	FFT3	TIF	Type
<DEFAULT>	☑	CME	CME-A	FUTURE	*	ACT333	A1				GTD	Limit
<DEFAULT>	☑	CME	CME-B	FUTURE	*	ACT333	A1				GTD	Limit

- **Product Limits**: Any product limits that apply to the source gateway are copied and saved as product limits that apply to the target gateway. For example, product limits for the source CME-A Gateway are copied and saved as product limits for the target CME-B gateway.



Users	Member	Group	Trader	Gateway	Product	Prod Type	Margin	Addl Mrgn %	Max Ord Qty
	TTORDKL	002	002	CME-A	*	FUTURE		0	100
	TTORDKL	002	002	CME-B	*	FUTURE		0	100

- **MGTs**: Any MGTs that a user may have for the source gateway are copied and saved as MGTs for the target gateway. For example, MGTs for the source CME Gateway are copied as MGTs for the target CME-B Gateway.



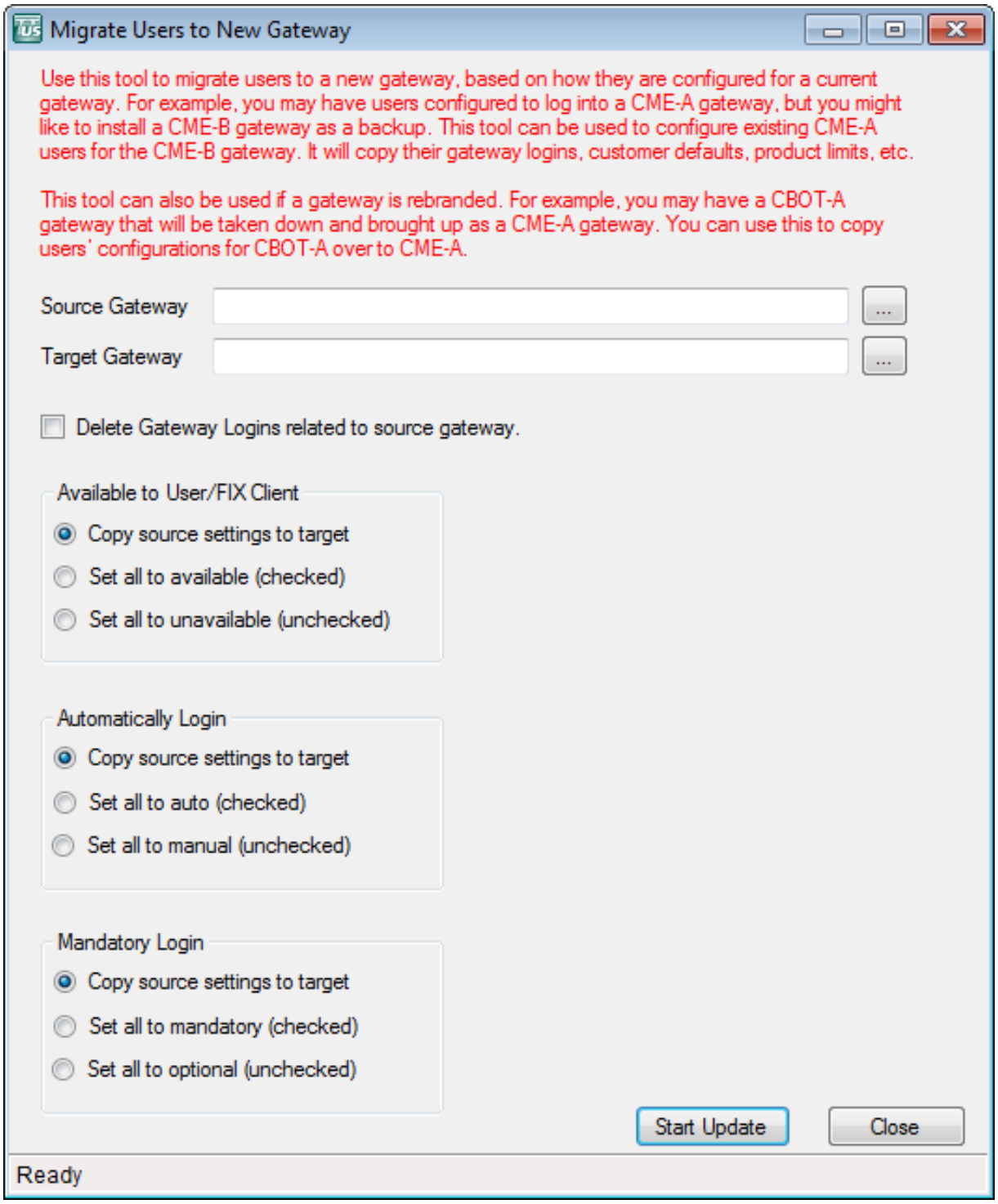
Username ▲1	Display Name	User Group	User Status	Gateway ▲2	Member	Group	Trader	Avail to User
filter...	filter...	filter...	filter...	filter...	filter...	filter..	filter...	filter...
JDOE	John Doe	Chicago	Active	CME-A	TTORDJS	022	002	Yes
JDOE	John Doe	Chicago	Active	CME-B	TTORDJS	022	002	Yes

Note: When migrating, you can chose to remove the gateway login information for the original gateway, or you can keep the gateway login information for both the original and the new gateways.

To migrate users to a new gateway:

1. From the **Server Admin** menu, select **Migrate Users to New Gateway**.

   The **Migrate Users to New Gateway** window appears.



2. Use the browse buttons to select the **Source Gateway** (the gateway from which the users will be migrated) and the **Target Gateway** (the gateway to which the users will be migrated).
3. Check or uncheck the **Delete Gateway Logins related to source gateway** checkbox.
    - If the users will retain the gateway login information for the source gateway, leave the checkbox unchecked. This option is typically used when adding additional gateways.
    - To delete the gateway login information for the source gateways, check the checkbox. This option is typically used when gateways have been rebranded.

4. Select how the **Available to User or Available to FIX Client** login attributes will be set for the new gateway logins.
    - Select **Copy source settings to target** to use the source gateway's settings.
    - Select **Set all to available (checked)** to set the option on for all users that were mapped to the source gateway, regardless of the current setting.
    - Select **Set all to unavailable (unchecked)** to set the option off for all users that were mapped to the source gateway, regardless of the current setting.
5. Select how the **Automatically Login** login attribute will be set for the new gateway logins.
    - Select **Copy source settings to target** to use the source gateway's settings.
    - Select **Set all to auto (checked)** to set the **Automatically Login** login attribute on for all users that were mapped to the source gateway, regardless of the current setting.
    - Select **Set all to manual (unchecked)** to set the **Automatically Login** login attribute off for all users that were mapped to the source gateway, regardless of the current setting.
6. Select how the **Mandatory Login** login attribute will be set for the new gateway logins.
    - Select **Copy source settings to target** to use the source gateway's settings.
    - Select **Set all to mandatory (checked)** to set the **Mandatory Login** login attribute on for all users that were mapped to the source gateway, regardless of the current setting.
    - Select **Set all to optional (unchecked)** to set the **Mandatory Login** login attribute off for all users that were mapped to the source gateway, regardless of the current setting.
7. Click **Start Update**.

You have successfully migrated users to a new gateway.

Understanding Server Messages

The TT User Setup Server (Master or Slave) frequently updates its local database with the most current data. You can monitor all server activity through a **Server Messages** window, which is available through the TT User Setup Client.

Note: You do not need to be logged in to view server messages.

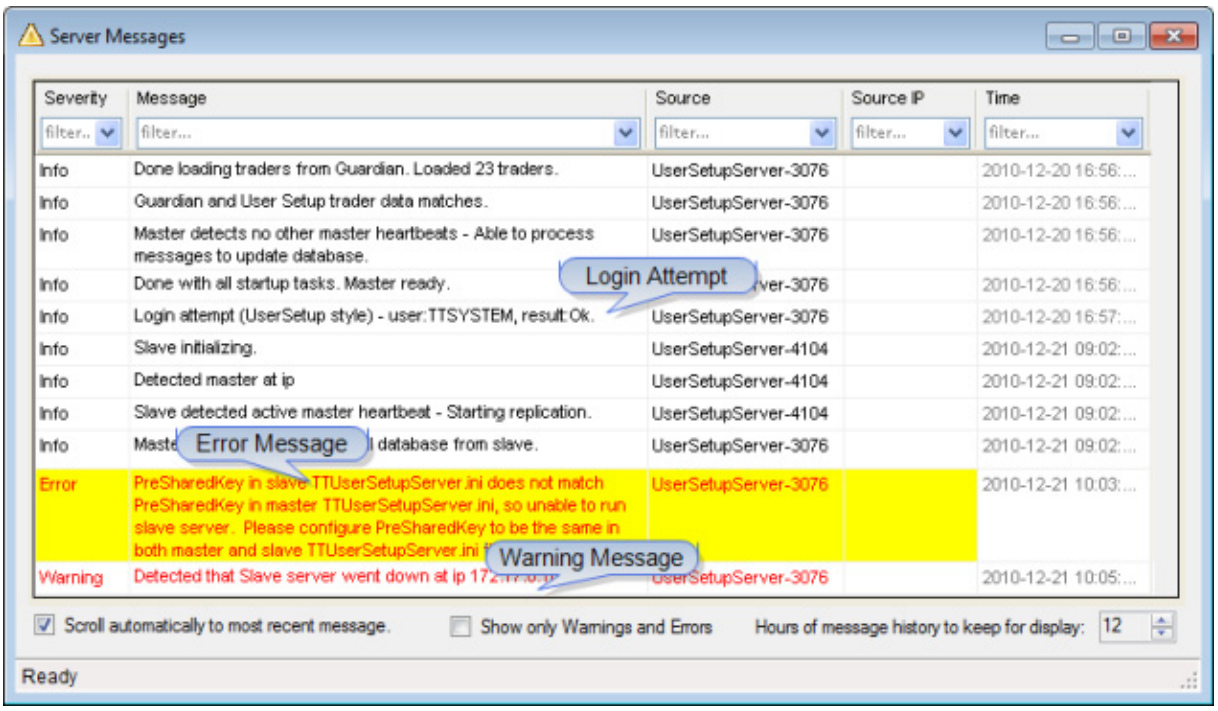
You use the **Server Messages** window to monitor server activity including login attempts, server ups or downs, error conditions, etc,. In addition, the window shows occurrences of database replication whereby administrator changes processed by the Master server are replicated by any Slave servers running in the environment. For detailed information regarding server replication refer to the **TT User Setup System Administrator Manual**.

Note: When logged in as a non-Super Administrator, the administrator can only view logins for users the administrator is designated to manage.

To access the Server Messages window:

1. From the **Reports** menu, select **Server Messages**.

   The following is an example of the **Server Messages** window and some of the types of messages it displays:



Note: The **Server Messages** window appears automatically whenever an error is received.

The **Server Messages** window displays only messages that occur while the client is running. Refer to the server log files (in the ~tt/logfiles directory) for current and previous log messages.

2. To stop the **Server Messages** window from scrolling automatically to the most recent message (at the bottom), uncheck the **Scroll automatically to most recent message** option.
3. To display only warnings and errors, check the **Show only Warnings and Errors** checkbox.
4. To configure the number of hours of messages the **Server Messages** window displays, set the **Hours of message history to keep for display** field.

System Settings

Introducing System Settings

Use the **System Settings** window to configure server properties like:

- **Concurrent Logins**: Limits the number of times a single username can be logged in concurrently.
- **Password Locking**: Prevents users from logging in after certain limits are surpassed (i.e., incorrect login attempts or days of inactivity). An administrator can configure a message for a user whose login attempt fails for any reason.
- **Password Rules**: Defines the level of password complexity required for all users changing their password, the number of unique passwords required before reusing a prior password, and the length of time a password is valid.

- **Automatic Diagnostics**: Determines which potential problems TT User Setup Diagnostic Checks automatically searches for.
- **X_STUDY and FMDS Settings**: Allows an administrator to enable or disable X_STUDY and its related FMDS settings.

Note: Only Super Administrators have access to the System Settings because these properties apply to all users.

Configuring Concurrent Login Rules

Administrators can limit the number of times a single user can be logged in concurrently (based on the number of IP addresses from which a user has logged in). If a user attempts to log in with a username that has already reached the assigned maximum number of logins, the login fails until that user ID closes a client connection and releases a license. TT SIM logins do not affect concurrent license counts.

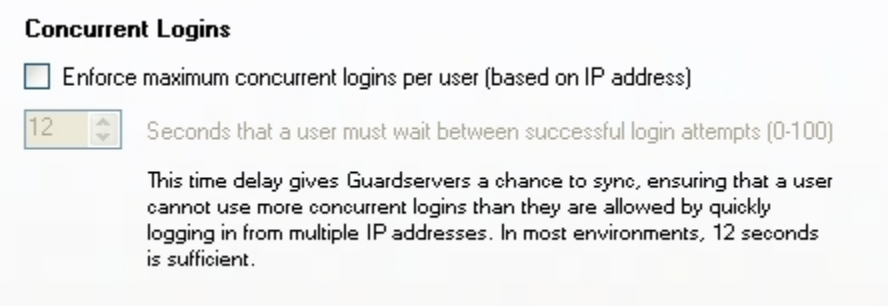
Note: The concurrent login feature works for users logged in using Universal Login only.

Warning: To correctly control time delays, you must synchronize the machine times for each TT User Setup server.

To limit the number of concurrent logins:

1. From the **Server Admin** menu, select **System Settings**.

   The **System Settings** window appears and defaults to the **General** tab.



2. Check the **Enforce maximum concurrent logins per user** option.
3. In the **Seconds that a user must wait between successful login attempts** field, select the number of seconds (between 0 and 100) that must pass before a single user is allowed to perform any subsequent logins. Select a value long enough to allow all GuardServers to synchronize and have an accurate count of the number of current logins for each user. The default value of 12 seconds is sufficient for most networks.

Note: If the number of seconds defined for this setting is too low, a user could log into a second or third machine before Guardian ever realizes that the first login took place. Be sure to set the seconds high enough to ensure that users cannot surpass their concurrent login limitations.

4. Click **Save**.
5. For this setting to affect a user, you must check the **Limit the number of concurrent logins** option for that user and set the **Max number allowed** field to an appropriate value. These settings are located on the **Main** tab of the user's **New User** or **Edit User** window.

You have successfully limited the number of concurrent logins.

Configuring Password Locking Rules

Use the password locking feature to prevent users from logging in after defined limits are surpassed. As an administrator, you may not lock out a user. However, you can configure users to be locked out when either of the following conditions occurs:

- A user enters an incorrect password too many times.
- A user does not attempt a login within a certain number of days.

TT User Setup provides the user with a notification whenever the user's status has changed to "locked". You can unlock users from the **Edit User** window.

Note: The **Locked Out** column on the **Users** window lists all the locked out users in your trading environment.

To set password locking rules:

1. From the **Server Admin** menu, select **System Settings**.

   The **System Settings** window appears and defaults to the **General** tab.

2. Check the **Automatically lock out users due to failed attempts or inactivity** option.

3. In the **Number of failed login attempts before user status is set to LOCKED** field, select a number between 1 and 100 to designate how many incorrect passwords a user can enter before the user's status is set to "locked".

   Note: The default value is 3.

4. In the **Days of inactivity allowed before user status is set to LOCKED** field, select a number between 1 and 100 to designate the number of days of inactivity before a user's status is set to "locked".

   Note: The default value is 30.

5. Click **Save**.

You have successfully set password locking rules.

Customizing the Failed Login Attempt Message

If a user login fails, TT User setup prompts the user with a standard message. From the **Failed Login Rules** section in the **System Settings** window, you can configure a custom message that appears after the standard message.

▶ To activate and customize the failed login attempt message:

1. From the **Server Admin** menu, select **System Settings**.
2. On the **System Settings** window, click the **General** tab.
3. In the **Failed Login Rules** section, check the **Apply an additional failed login message to users** option.

4. In the text box, edit the default message or create a new message.
5. Click **Save**.

Note: The message in the text box appears after a failed login attempt.

Configuring Password Rules

Use the **Password Rules** to configure password complexity, password reuse, and password expiration rules.

- The **Password Complexity** section defines the level of password complexity required for all users changing their password. In addition, you may incorporate password reuse restrictions.

  Note: Password complexity changes are enforced the next time the user changes their password.TT User Setup initiates a password change when password expiration rules take effect, when a user manually changes their password, or when the administrator manually resets the user's password.

- The **Password Reuse** section defines the number of unique passwords required before allowing a login to reuse a password.

  Note: Password reuse restrictions are calculated from the last n times a user's password was changed, not from when password reuse restrictions were enabled or edited.

- The **Password Expiration** properties define the length of time a password is valid.

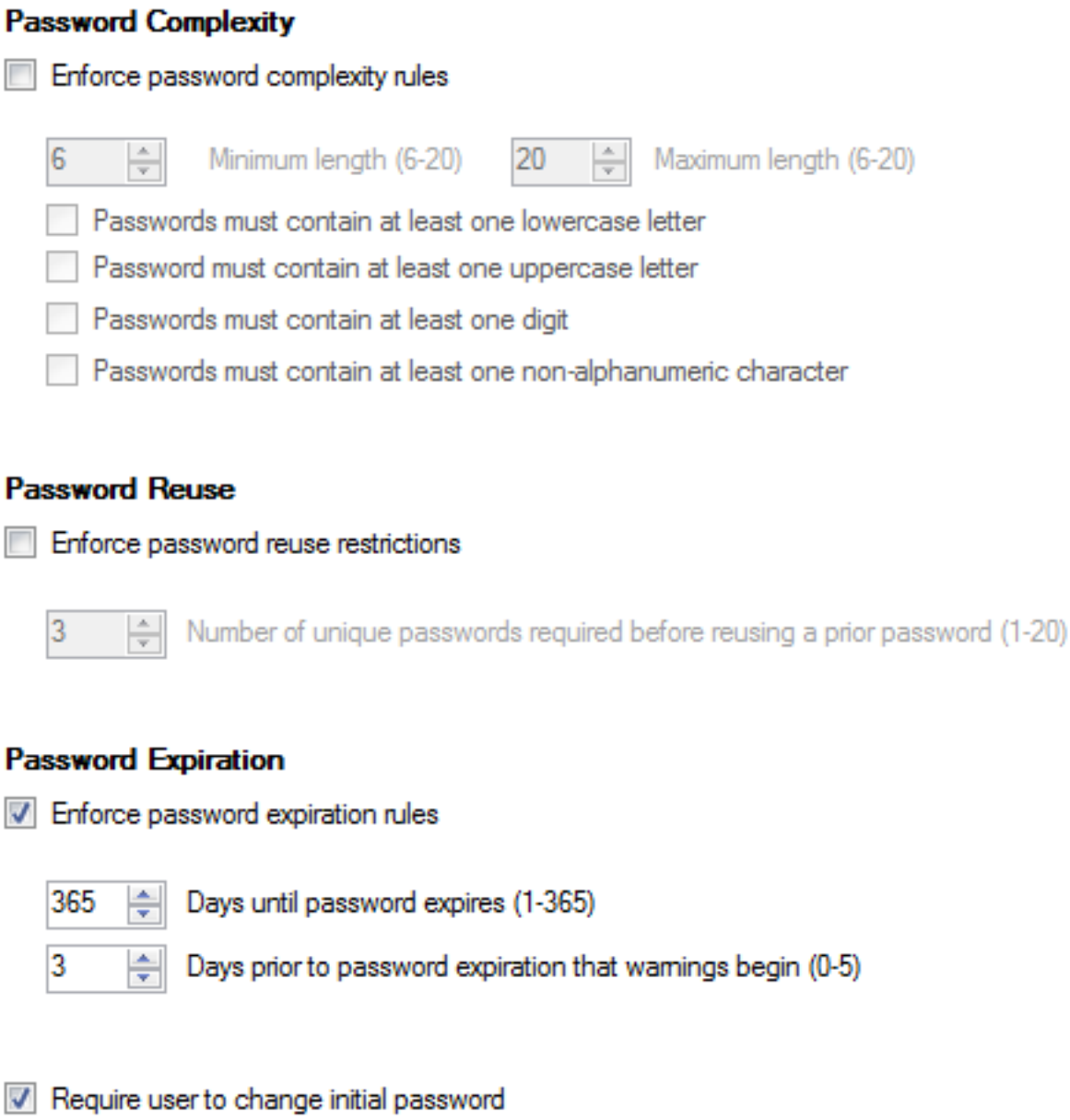
  As an administrator you can require a user's password to expire after a fixed number of days. However, if you want to prevent a specific user's password from expiring, check the **Password never expires** option on the **Create New User** or **Edit User** window.

  Note: Password expiration is calculated from the last time a user's password was changed, not from when password expiration rules were enabled or edited.

To set password rules:

1. From the **Server Admin** menu, select **System Settings**.

   The **System Settings** window appears and defaults to the **Password Rules** tab.



2. Check the **Enforce password complexity rules** option to enable related fields.
3. Specify values in the **Minimum length (6-20)** and **Maximum length (6-20)** fields to set minimum and maximum password lengths.

   Note: The default values are 6 and 20.

4. Check any or all of the following options:
   - Passwords must contain at least one lowercase letter
   - Passwords must contain at least one uppercase letter
   - Passwords must contain at least one digit
   - Passwords must contain at least one non-alphanumeric character

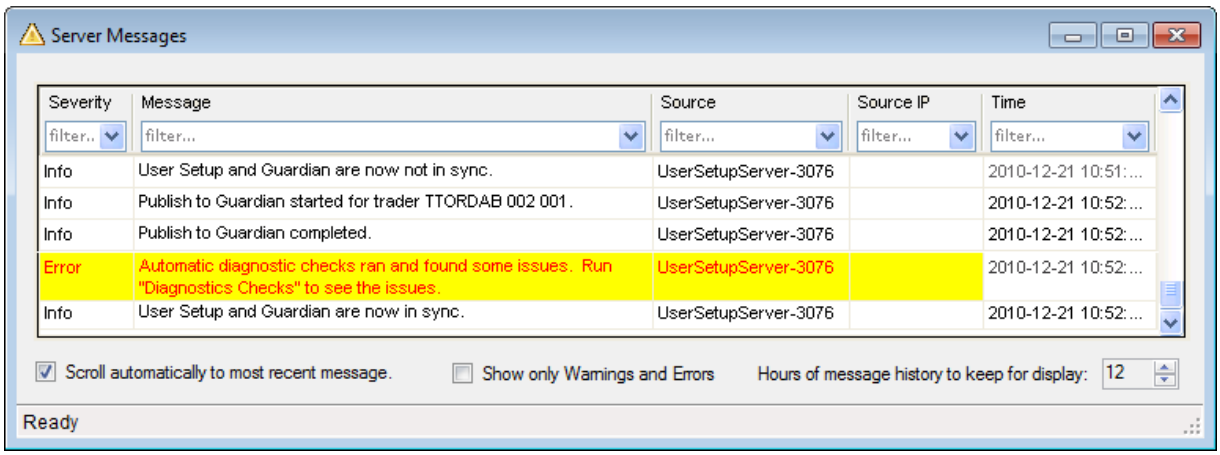
5. To configure the system to enforce password reuse restrictions, select the check box next to **Enforce password reuse restrictions** and then select the **Number of unique passwords required before reusing a prior password**.
6. To configure the system to enforce password expiration rules, select the check box next to **Enforce password expiration rules** , and then select the number of days until the password expires and the number of days prior to password expiration that the system will begin issuing expiration warnings. This setting does not apply to users with passwords that never expire.
7. If users must change their initial password after login or after an administrator updates the password, check the **Require user to change initial password** option. This setting does not apply to users with passwords that never expire.
8. Click **Save**.

   You have successfully set password expiration rules.

Automatic Diagnostics

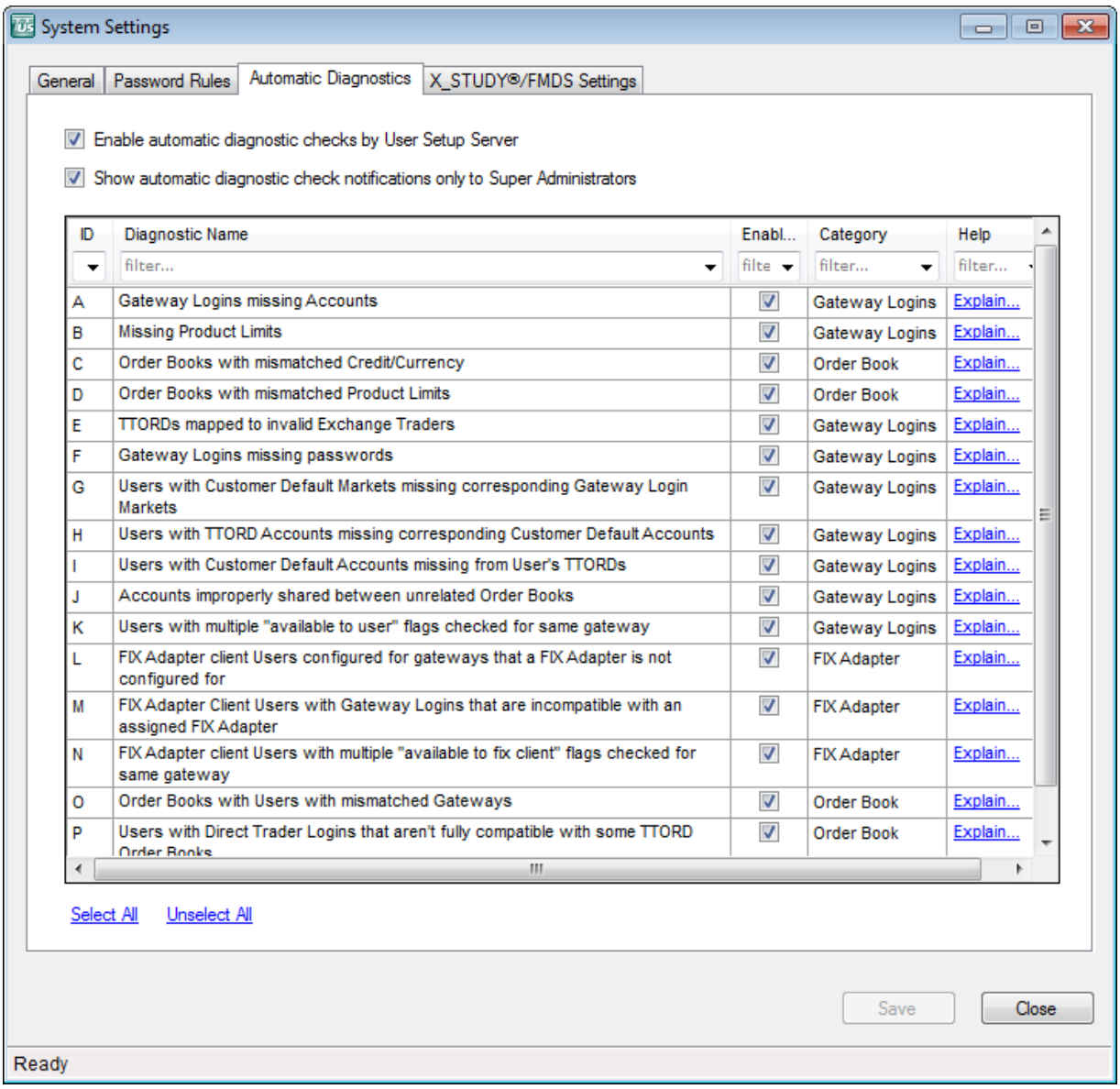
TT User Setup allows you to run diagnostic checks that list potential set up issues based on the information available in the TT User Setup database. For example, **Gateway Logins missing Accounts** and **Missing Product Limits**.

The Automatic Diagnostics window allows you to select the diagnostics checks that all clients will automatically run. When the TT User Setup Server detects one of the automatically configured errors, it opens the Server Messages window and displays an Automatic diagnostics checks error.



To configure Automatic Diagnostics:

1. From the **Server Admin** menu, select **System Settings**.
2. Select the **Automatic Diagnostics** tab.



3. Select the diagnostics that TT User Setup will automatically detect and report.
4. Click **Save**.

Enabling and Configuring X_STUDY and FMDS System Settings

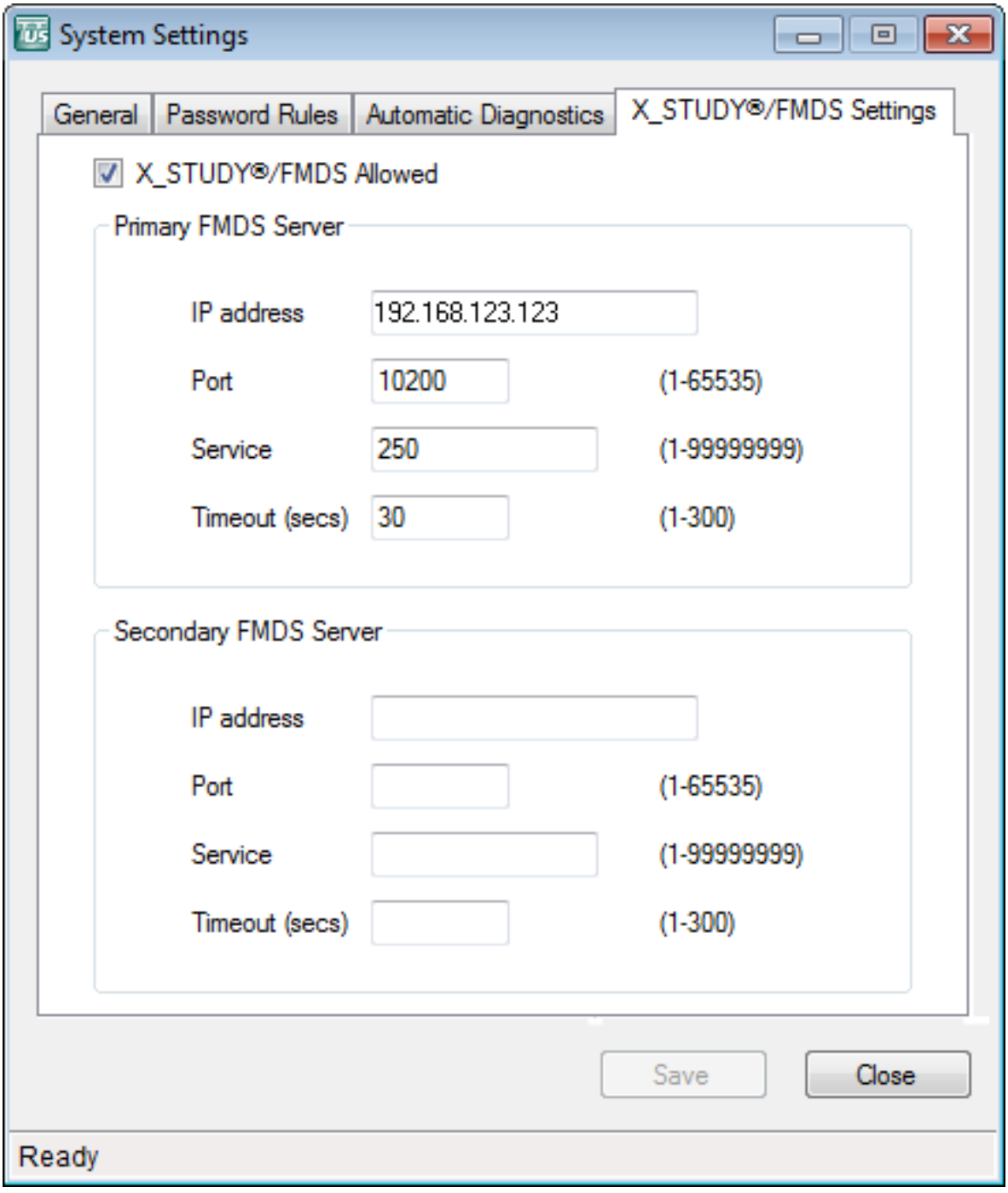
X_STUDY uses the FMDS server to obtain historical data to display in a chart for a given contract. The X_STUDY/FMDS settings available in TT User Setup allow you to designate or change the FMDS server to which one or more user's X_STUDY(s) connects. In addition, you can set up a secondary FMDS server to which X_STUDY connects if the primary server is down.

X_STUDY and FMDS must be enabled and configured at a system level before it can be enabled and configured at a user level. To enable and configure X_STUDY and FMDS for a user, refer to the “Configuring X_STUDY and FMDS” on page 80 topic in the *User Administration* section.

Note: This option is only available for **X_TRADER** version 7.7.3 or later and X_STUDY 7.0.3 or later.

To enable X_STUDY/FMDS functionality for this TT User Setup system:

1. From the **Server Admin** menu, select **System Settings**.
2. On the **System Settings** window, click the **X_STUDY/FMDS Settings** tab.



3. Ensure the **X_STUDY/FMDS Allowed** option is checked.

4. For the **Primary FMDS Server** section, enter the **IP address** and **Port** of the FMDS Server.

   You cannot save X_STUDY/FMDS settings unless the **IP address** field is populated.

5. In the **Service** field, type the service number.

   The **Service** field is an additional qualifier used to differentiate multiple FMDS machines within a network. This value must match the X_STUDY workstations' Communications setting. The default setting is 250.

6. In the **Timeout (secs)** field, type the number of seconds to wait to connect to each FMDS server.

   Note: Typically the default value can be used in the **Port**, **Service**, and **Timeout** fields.

7. To set up a secondary FMDS server, repeat steps 4-6 in the **Secondary FMDS Server** section.
8. Click **Save**.

You have successfully configured your FMDS server(s).

Reports

Displaying and Exporting Reports

Use the **Run Reports** option to view reports of user's login and gateway information and to check for possible setup errors.

The available reports include:

Report	Description
TT Product Version/User Usage	Displays version information for client applications (e.g. **X_TRADER**) that have logged in.
Most Recent X_TRADER Version	Displays the most recent version of X_TRADER, per user, that have logged in.
Gateway Versions	Displays a list of Gateways running in the environment. Currently, TT User Setup only displays the 7.15.1 (and later) ICE Price Server.
Users and their Gateway Logins	Displays a list of users by username and includes each user's MGT data.
Users and their Gateway Login counts	Displays a list of the number of gateway logins for each user.
Users and their Risk Parameters (collapsed)	Displays a list of users and their associated risk parameters including Credit, Currency, Ignore P&L, etc.
Users and their Risk Parameters (expanded)	Displays a list of users and additional risk-related parameters including Auto Login, Preferred IP, etc.
Users and their Product Limits	Displays a list of users by username and includes each user's product limit data.
Users and their Product Limits including TT SIM	Displays a list of users by username and includes each user's product limit data.

Report	Description
Product Limit Counts	Displays the quantity of product limits per MGT.
Users and their Accounts	Displays a list of users and their gateway login and customer default accounts.
Order Books with mismatched Credit/Currency	Displays MGTs that share an order book, but are associated with different credit and currencies.
Order Books with mismatched Product Limits	Displays MGTs that share an order book, but are associated with different product limits.
CME Product Group Permissions	Displays a list of users with available CME Gateway Logins, and lists whether each CME market is allowed or blocked.

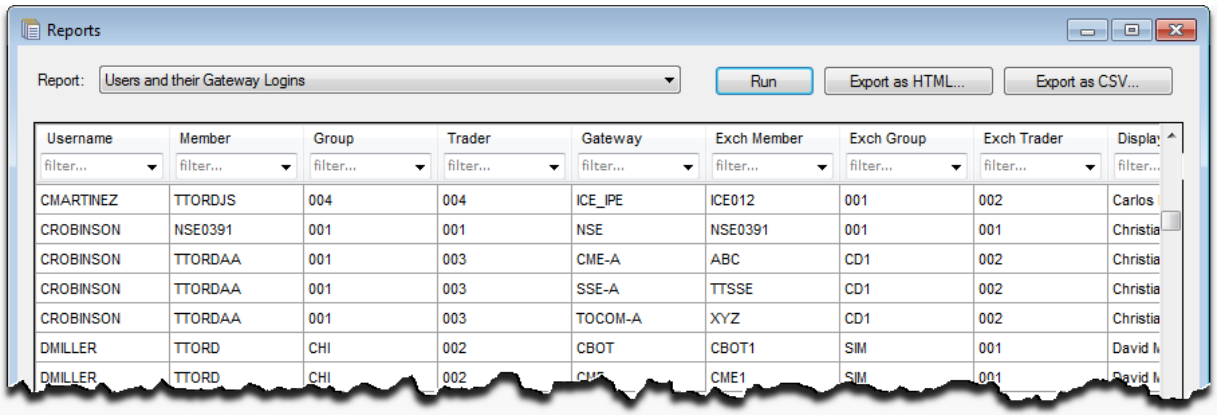
Displaying a Report

To display a report:

1. From the **Reports** menu, select **Run Reports**.

   The **Reports** window appears.

2. From the **Report** drop-down list, select a report type and then click **Run**.



You have successfully displayed a report.

Exporting a Report as HTML or CSV

You can export reports to HTML or CSV from the **Reports** window. The content of the report depends on the sorting or filtering currently applied.

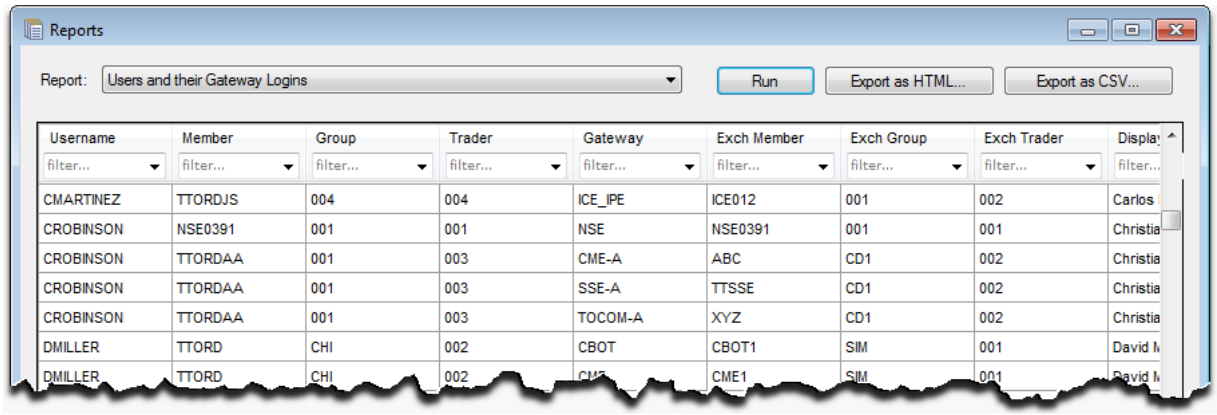
To export a report as HTML:

1. From the **Reports** menu, select **Run Reports**.

   The **Reports** window appears.

2. From the **Report** drop-down list, select a report type.
3. Click **Run**.

   The type of report you selected appears.



4. To save the report as HTML, click **Export as HTML** or to save the report as CSV, click **Export as CSV**.

   The Windows **Save As** dialog box appears.

5. Select the destination for your .html or .csv file and give the report a file name.
6. Click **Save**.

   The file saves to the location selected. If you selected **.html**, your selected report also automatically opens in your Internet browser.

You have successfully exported a report.

Note: You can also copy data directly from any report to a spreadsheet, word processor, text editor, etc by selecting the data with your mouse and pressing **Ctrl+C**. Use **Ctrl+V** or the destination application's paste function to paste the selected data.

Tracking the TT Product Version Number

Use the **TT Product Version/User Usage** report to track the use of TT product's version numbers and related login activity. Tracking version number is useful for both administrators and traders. For example, if you know what version of **X_TRADER** your traders use, you can inform those traders when they need to upgrade.

The report displays a history of client versions and logins related to specific version, username, product, and IP address keys. In the report, a new row is displayed for each combination of the four "key" fields. For example, a trader with a single username and IP address, who uses both **X_TRADER** and X_RISK is displayed in two separate rows; one for **X_TRADER** and one X_RISK.

The fields displayed in the **TT Product Version/User Usage** report include the following:

Field	Description
Username	Universal Login ID used to log into one or more TT Gateways (e.g., JDOE).
Display Name	An identifier whereby you easily recognize the user (e.g., John Doe).
User Group	An identifier used to categorize users (e.g., Chicago).
Status	An identifier as to whether the user is active or inactive.
Email	The user's email contact.
Phone	The user's telephone contact.
IP Address	An identifier of the machine on which the TT product resides.
TT Product	The specific TT product (e.g., **X_TRADER**).
Version	Version number of the TT product.
Last Recorded	The last date and time at which a report was exported.
User's Most Recent Version Record	The newest version information for client applications (e.g. **X_TRADER**) that have logged in.
First Recorded	The initial date and time a report was exported.
Number of Recordings	The total number of reports that you have exported.
File Location	The directory in which your .html or .csv file is stored.
Most Recent Recorded Login Date/Time for this Username	The date and time the user last logged in with a specific username on the specific IP address.

To display TT product version in a report:

1. From the **Reports** menu, select **Run Reports**.

   The **Reports** window appears.

2. From the **Report** drop-down list, select **TT Product Version/User Usage**.
3. Click **Run**.

The report appears.

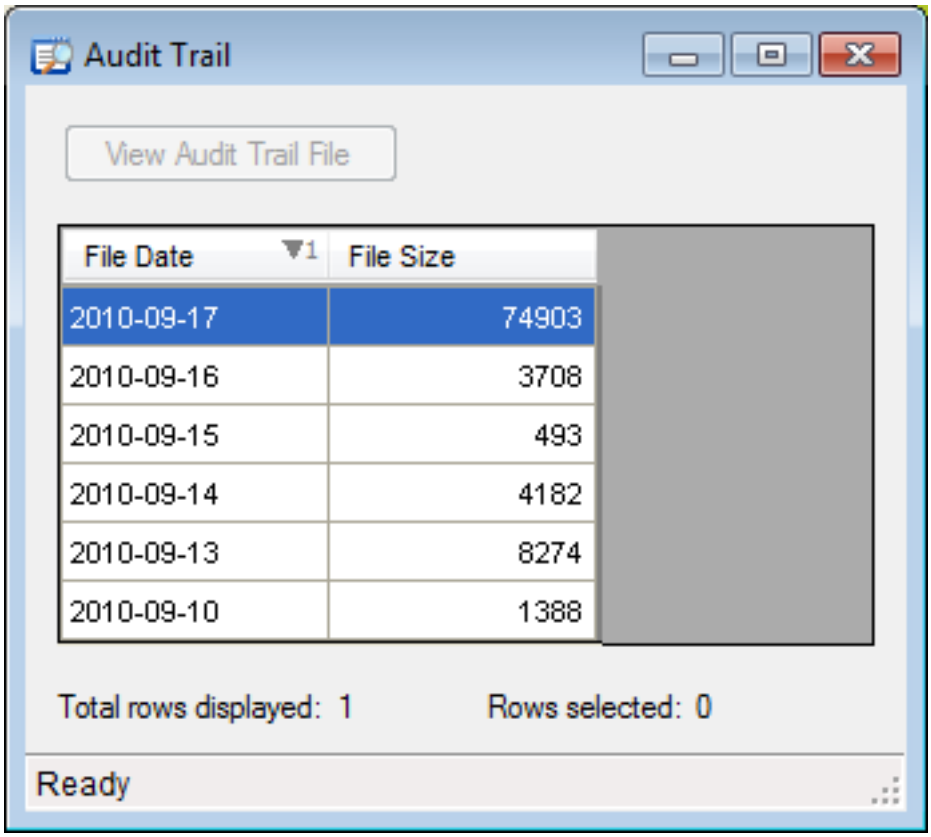
Using Audit Trail to Track Database Updates

Use the **Audit Trail** window to track updates made to the database. Database updates are logged automatically in the **UserSetupDbUpdates.ini** file and include a daily record that is viewable in a standard Internet browser. Updates are categorized based on the date and time of the update, the type of update (e.g., update user email account), the username and IP address of the user that made the update, and the application in which the update was performed.

The **Audit Trail** window displays a list of available log files, and shows the date the files were created and the size of the log files.

To display a logfile via the Audit Trail window:

1. From the **Reports** menu, select **Audit Trail**.



2. From the **Audit Trail** window, click **View Audit Trail File**.

   The **TT User Setup Database Updates** file appears in your Internet browser.

TT User Setup DB Updates

Date/time	Update Command	User ID	IP Address	Application
2010-09-17 09:06:51	Audit Trail Msg	TTSYSTEM/Administrator	192.168.8.199	TTUserSetup.exe

Column	Value
msg	TTSYSTEM logged into TTUserSetup

2010-09-17 09:31:22	Insert Mgt	TTSYSTEM/Administrator	192.168.8.199	TTUserSetup.exe

Column	Value
mgt_member	CME
mgt_group	002
mgt_trader	002
mgt_description	
mgt_credit	0
mgt_currency	USD
mgt_allow_trading	0
mgt_ignore_pl	0
mgt_risk_on	1
mgt_publish_to_guardian	0
mgt_mgt_key	CME002002
mgt_password	[hidden]
mgt_can_associate_with_user_directly	0
mgt_comp_id	0-<Company1>
mgt_enable_sods	1

Note: You can copy data into Excel or any other applicable application.

You have successfully displayed a logfile via the **Audit Trail** window.

Displaying Logged in Users

TT User Setup allows you to list all users currently logged into the trading environment. You can display a list of logged in users based on username, gateway connection, product license, and product license per number of markets. Viewing the logged in users report allows you to determine how your licenses are currently being used and how many licenses you have available.

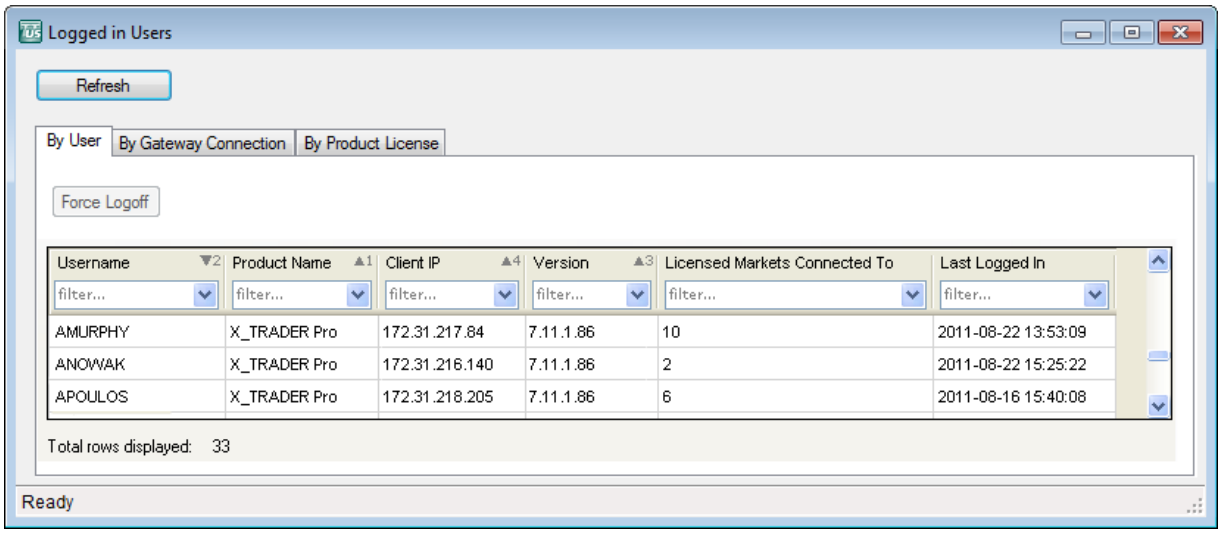
Note: When logged in as a Group Administrator, TT User Setup only displays the user and gateway logins that exist in one of the user groups the administrator has permission to manage.

To view connected users:

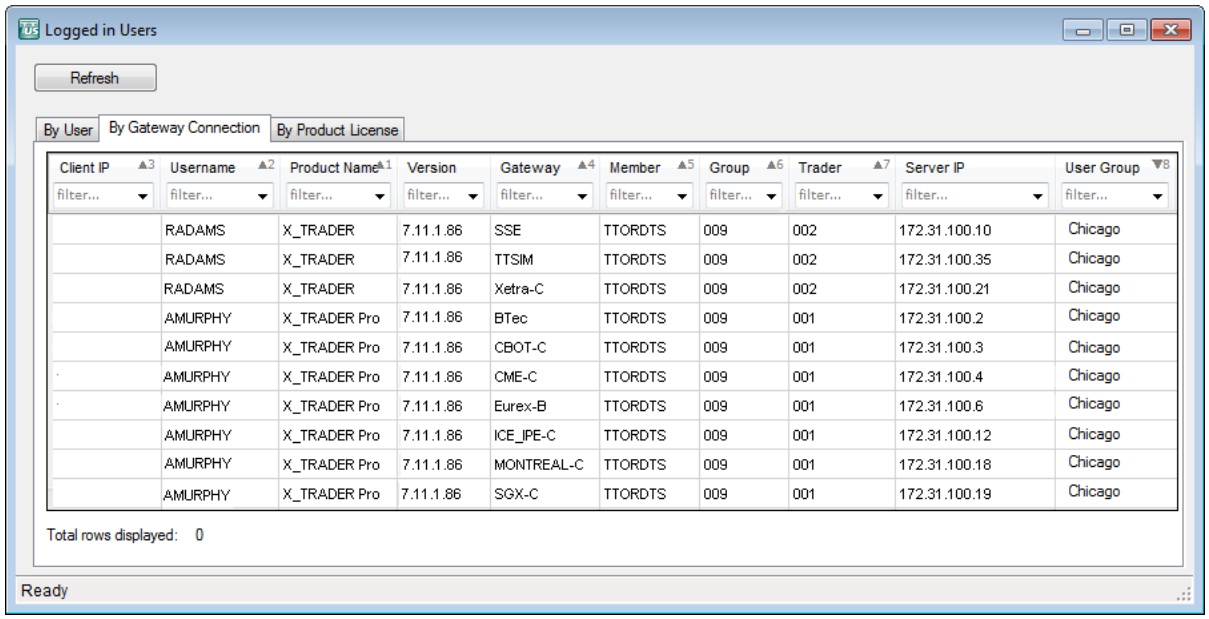
1. From the **Reports** menu, select **Logged in Users**.

   The **Logged in Users** window appears.

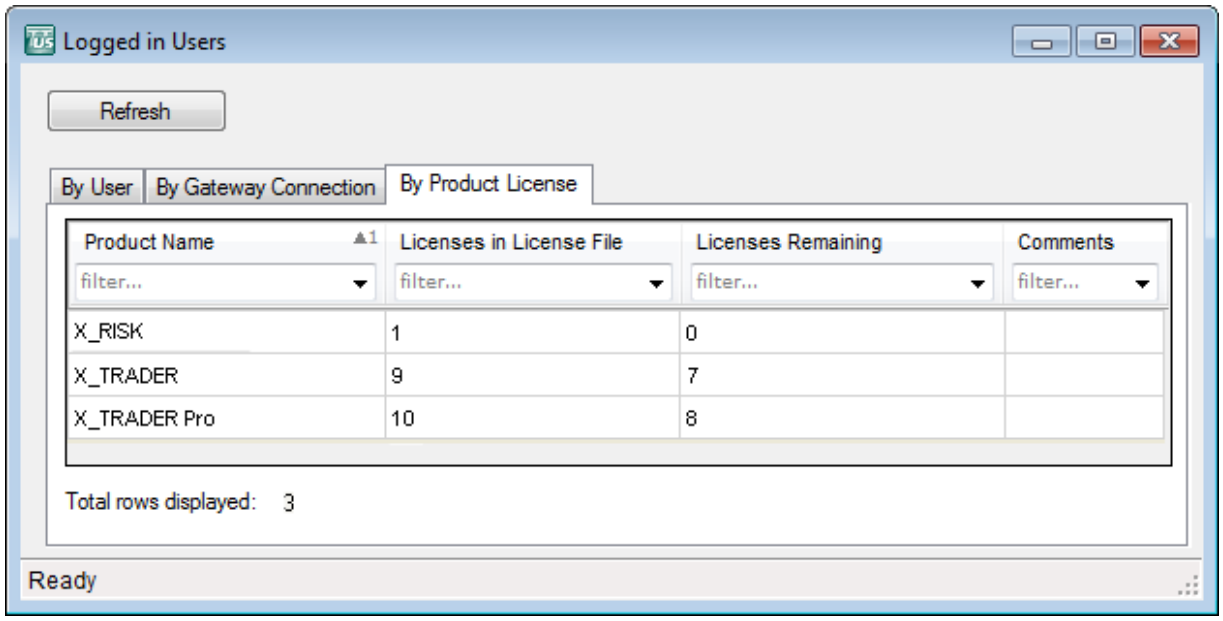
2. To refresh the window, click **Refresh**.
3. View the Logged in Users window tabs as needed:
   - Use the **By User** tab to list each user that is currently consuming a license. You can also force a logoff from this tab.



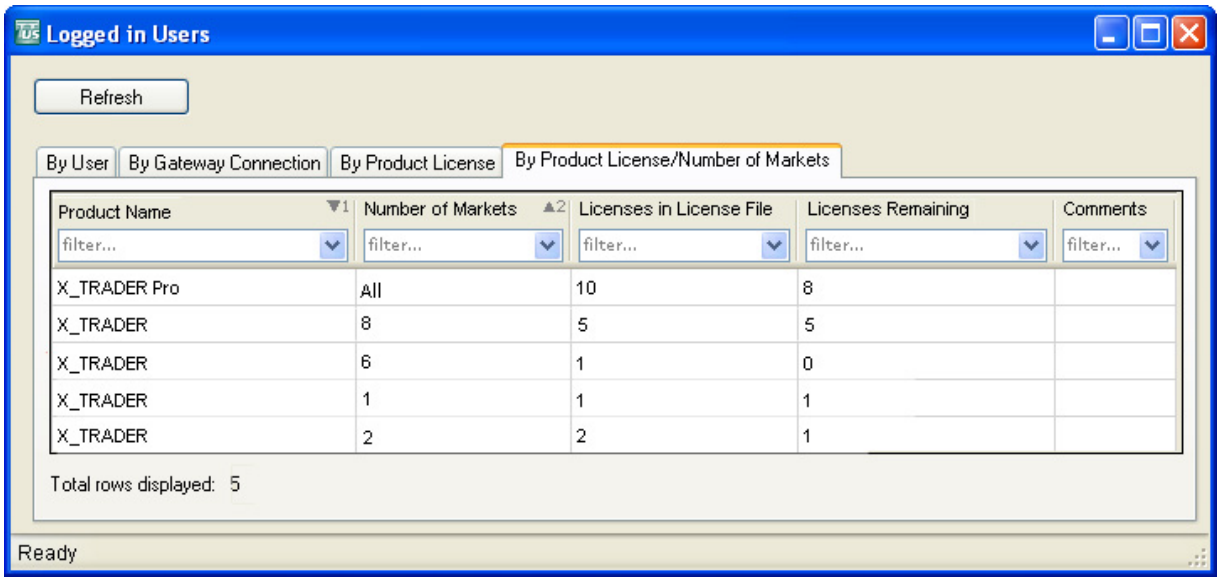
   - Use the **By Gateway** tab to determine which users are connected to which gateways using which MGTs.



- Use the **By Product License** tab to determine how many licenses are available for each product.



- Use the **By Product License/Number of Markets** tab to determine how many licenses are available for each license type. For example, you may have five 5-license X_TRADER licenses and one 1-license X_TRADER license available.



You have successfully viewed the connected users.

Viewing Server Messages

The TT User Setup Server (Master or Slave) frequently updates its local database with the most current data. You can monitor all server activity through a **Server Messages** window, which is available through the TT User Setup Client.

Note: You do not need to be logged in to view server messages.

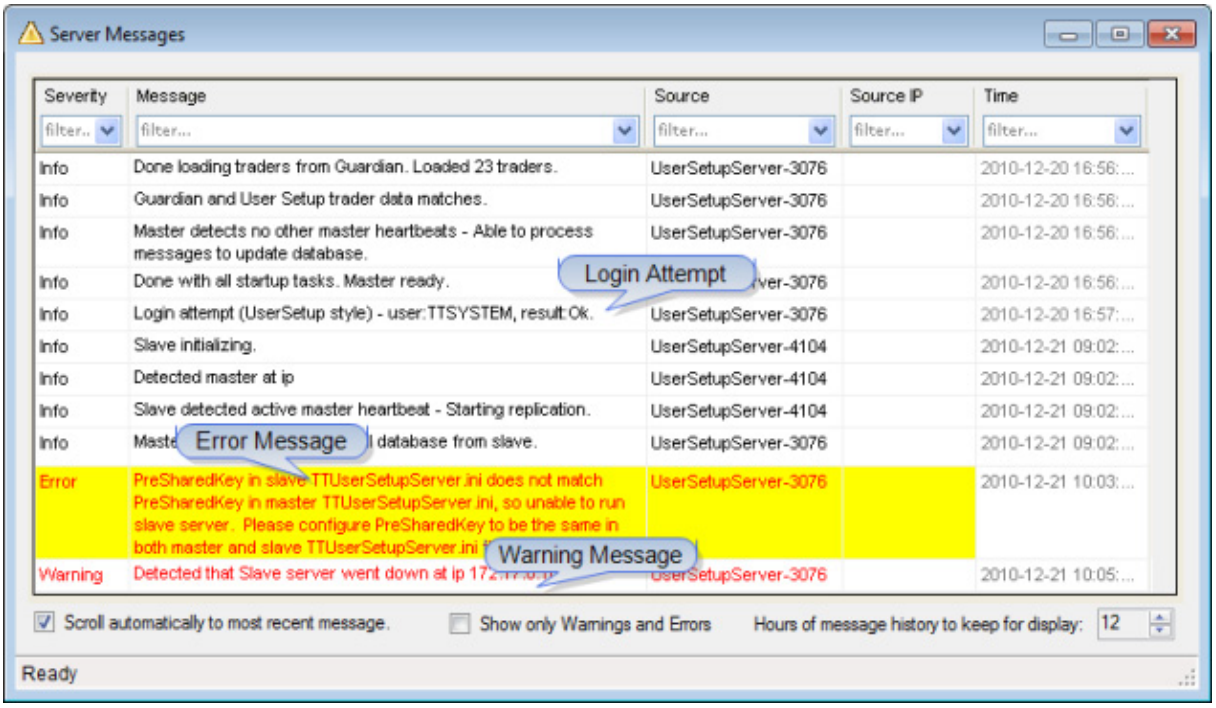
You use the **Server Messages** window to monitor server activity including login attempts, server ups or downs, error conditions, etc,. In addition, the window shows occurrences of database replication whereby administrator changes processed by the Master server are replicated by any Slave servers running in the environment. For detailed information regarding server replication refer to the **TT User Setup System Administrator Manual**.

Note: When logged in as a non-Super Administrator, the administrator can only view logins for users the administrator is designated to manage.

To access the Server Messages window:

1. From the **Reports** menu, select **Server Messages**.

   The following is an example of the **Server Messages** window and some of the types of messages it displays:



Note: The **Server Messages** window appears automatically whenever an error is received.

The **Server Messages** window displays only messages that occur while the client is running. Refer to the server log files (in the ~tt/logfiles directory) for current and previous log messages.

2. To stop the **Server Messages** window from scrolling automatically to the most recent message (at the bottom), uncheck the **Scroll automatically to most recent message** option.
3. To display only warnings and errors, check the **Show only Warnings and Errors** checkbox.
4. To configure the number of hours of messages the **Server Messages** window displays, set the **Hours of message history to keep for display** field.

Displaying Running Servers

TT User Setup allows you to view all TT User Setup servers currently running. This list of servers appears in the **TT User Setup Servers** window.

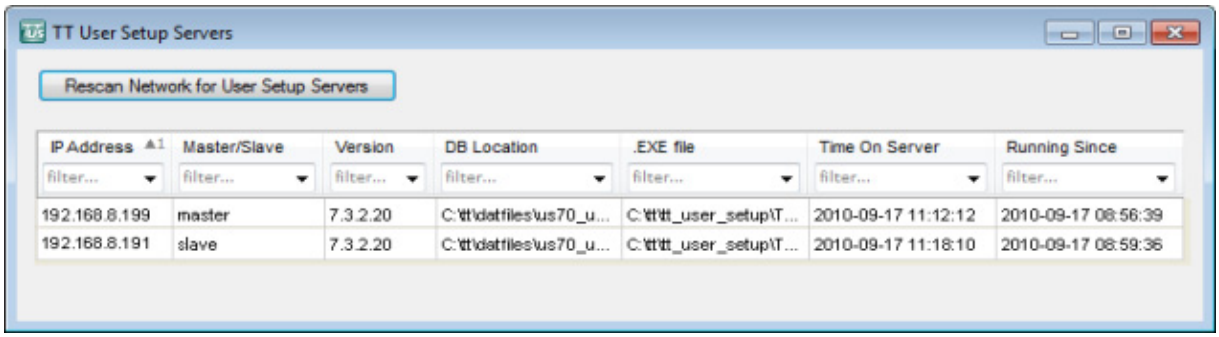
For each trading environment, you TT recommends that you install multiple TT User Setup servers. However, only one of those servers can be designated as the Master server. All other servers must be designated as Slaves, which contain identical data to that of the Master and serve as a backup in case another server fails.

Using this window, an administrator can more easily locate each TT User Setup server and also ensure there is only a single Master server running.

To view running servers:

1. From the **Reports** menu, select **TT User Setup Servers**.

   The **TT User Setup Servers** window appears.

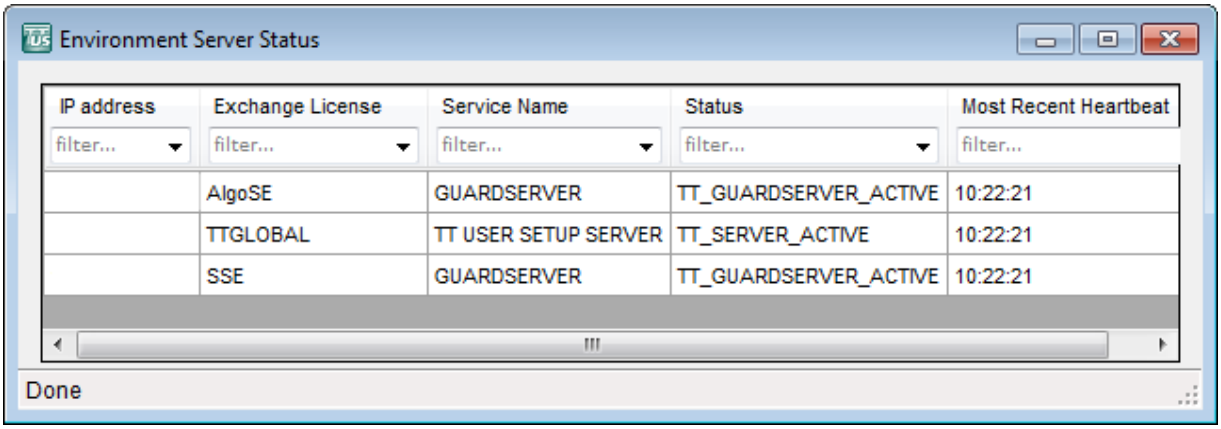


2. To refresh the window, click **Rescan network for User Setup Servers**.
3. To exit the window, click **Close**.

You have successfully viewed the running servers.

Viewing Server Status

The **Environment Server Status** window shows server status information for the exchanges listed in the Guardian Exchange tree. From this window you can sort and filter by exchange, service, or IP address to view the status of each server. Access this window from the **Reports** menu.



Generating an ICE Product Groups Report

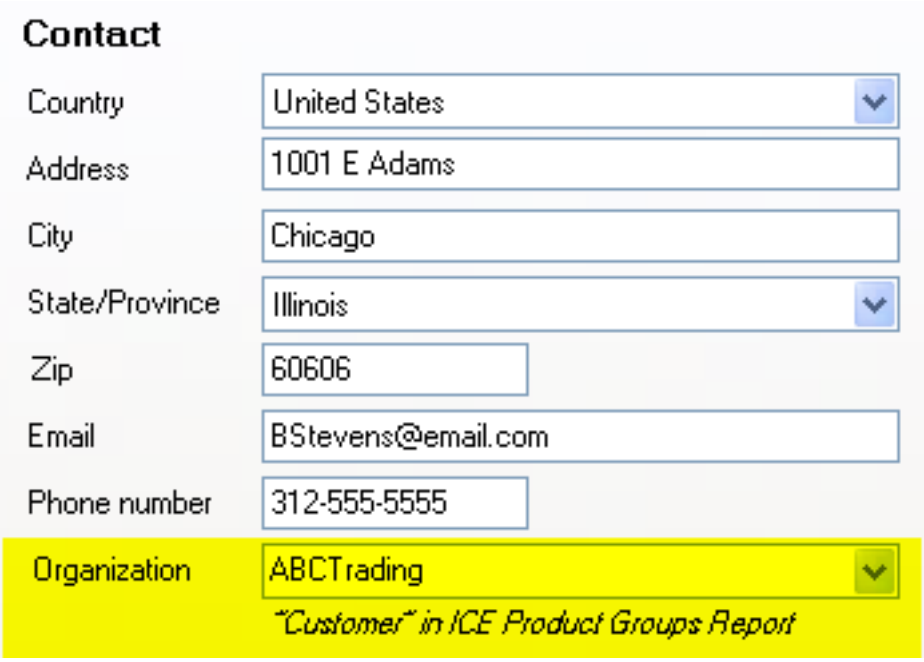
The ICE Product Groups report collects information about the users' product group permissions settings, the trading environment, and the TT applications used to connect to the trading environment. The report includes:

- The time and date that the named administrator created the report on the named TT User Setup server.
- Timestamp and configuration settings for the users that connect to ICE gateways.
- A list of the allowed and blocked product groups, per customer. A product group is only listed as blocked when all traders assigned to a given customer are blocked from the product group.
- A list of users that have blocked ICE product groups, along with which product groups are blocked, and when an administrator created the block..
- A list of ICE live Gateways and ICE Live Gateway connections. This information identifies the network as a valid trading environment.
- The versions of recently used TT products and the date that the user connected. This allows ICE to determine if users can connect using older TT applications that do not support product filtering.

Note: Product groups that are marked *allowed* may not actually be allowed if the TT gateway is not configured to subscribe to those products.

When you generate the report, TT User Setup creates two zip files, one encrypted and one unencrypted. Both zip files contain identical **.bin** and **.csv** files. Typically you send both versions of the file to ICE.

Note: If you want the ICE Product Group report to list the product permissions per customer, then you must associate each user with a customer. To group users by customer, on the user's **Main** tab, enter the customer name into the **Organization** field.



To generate an ICE Product Groups report:

1. From the Reports menu, select **ICE Product Groups Report**.
2. When prompted to create the ICE product groups report file, click **Yes**.

TT User Setup generates the **ttus_ice_product_group<timestamp>.zip** and **ttus_ice_product_group<timestamp>.zip.server.zip** files and copies them to the **~tt\logfiles** folder.

Tutorials

How to Setup a New User Who Will Trade Using a TTORD Gateway Login

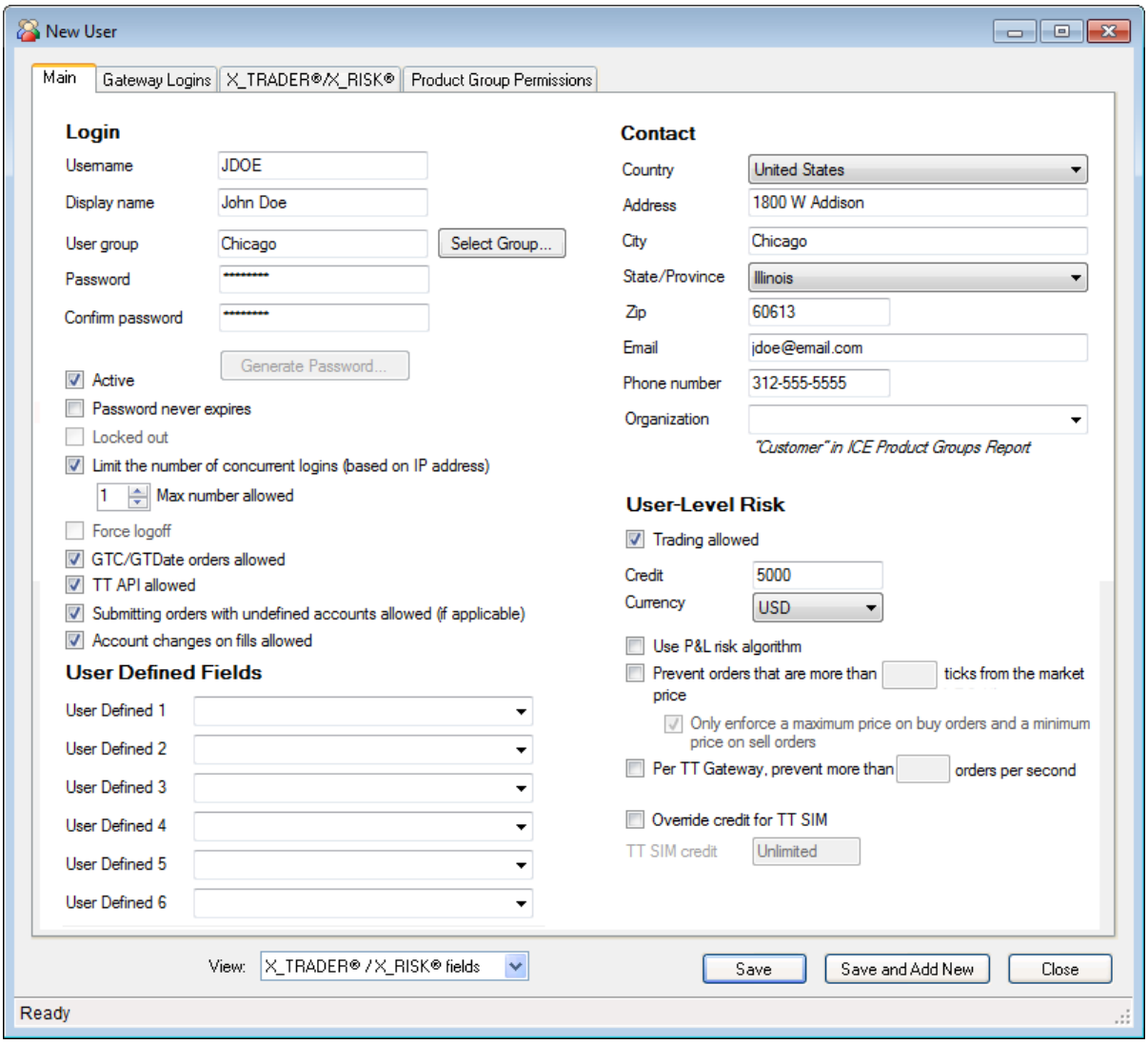
---

In this tutorial you will learn how to setup a new **X_TRADER** user (John Doe). Using the unique TTORD ID you will create, John can log into, and trade on, several TT gateways. In addition, this tutorial will illustrate how to setup John with pre-trade risk limits, order defaults, account numbers, etc.

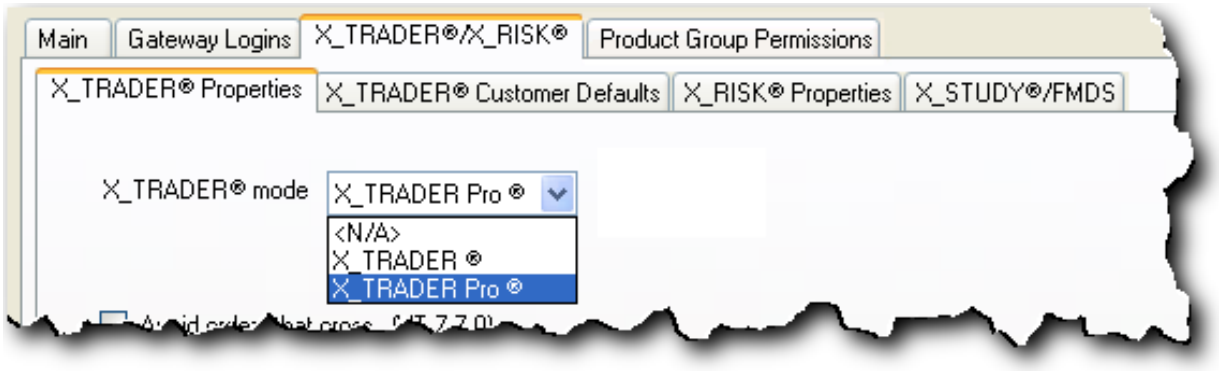
To setup a user to trade several markets using X_TRADER and a non-registered trader login:

1. From the **User Admin** menu, select **Users**.
2. From the **Users** window, set the **New User View** to **X_TRADER/X_RISK fields.**
3. Click **New**.

   The **New User** window appears.



4. On the **Main** tab, enter the following:
    1. Enter the X_TRADER **Login** information. This is the **Username** and **Password** the **X_TRADER** user uses to log in.
    2. Check the **Active** option to activate the user login.
    3. Configure **User-Level Risk**, if needed.
    4. Add **Contact** and **User Defined Fields** information if needed.
5. From the **X_TRADER/X_RISK** tab, click the **X_TRADER Properties** tab, and then select an **X_TRADER** mode.



6. Click **Save**.
7. On the **Gateway Logins** tab, click **New**.

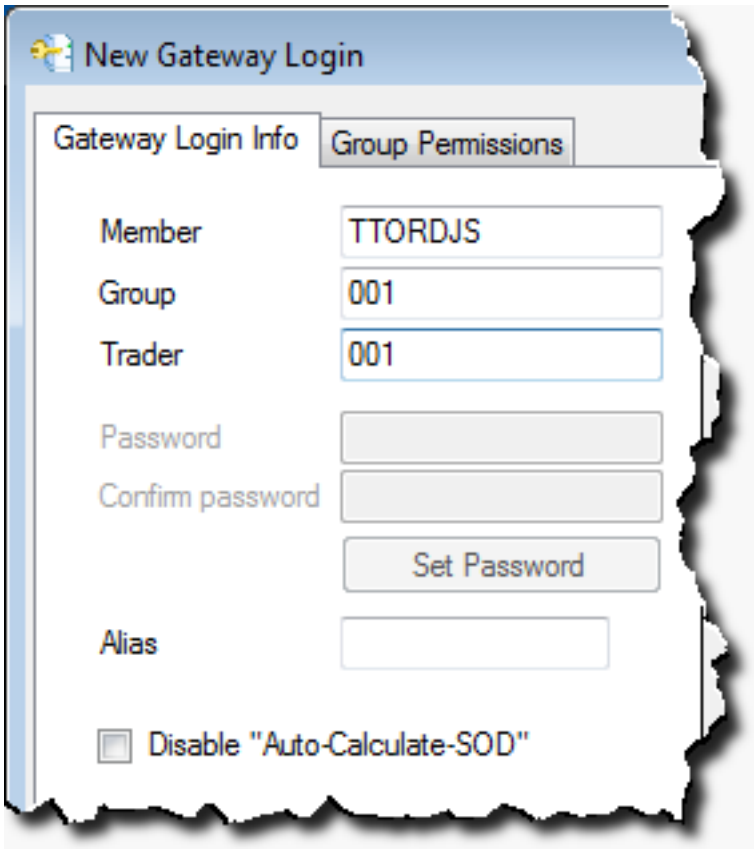
   The **New Gateway Login** window appears.

   Note: A "gateway login" consists, in part, of the MGT and corresponding gateways that a user logs into.

   On the **New Gateway Login** window, you can create the unique TTORD ID that John Doe will use when trading. The steps below illustrate mapping John's TTORD ID to real registered Trader IDs (Exchange Traders) and TT gateways. In addition, follow the steps to setup pre-trade risk parameters that apply to all orders submitted by John's new TTORD ID.

8. To create a TTORD login, enter a Member ID beginning with TTORD and a Group and Trader ID. The Member ID must be 7 characters or less.

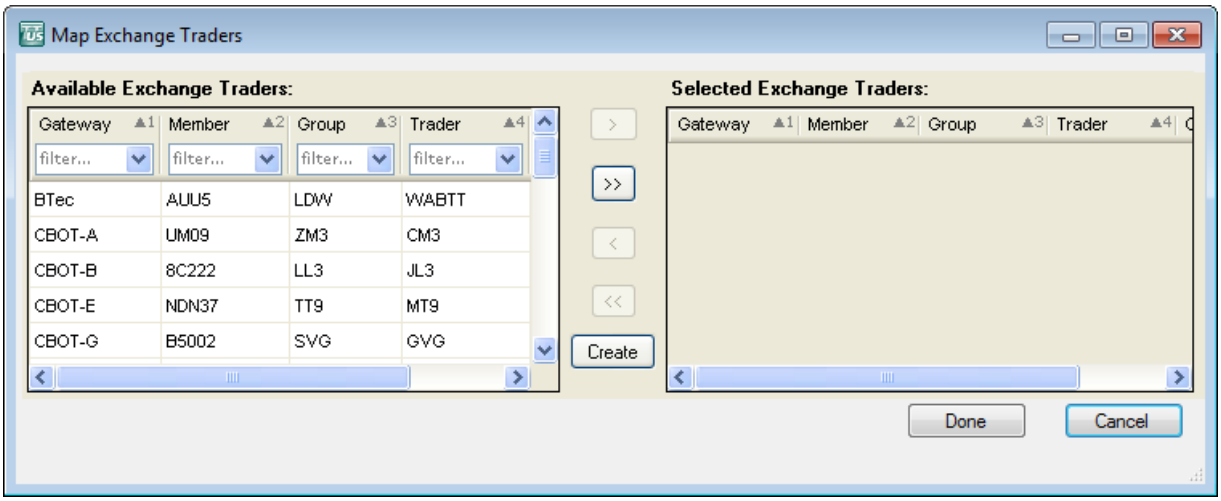
   Note: To prevent John's MGT from sharing an order book with others, the **Member** and **Group** fields must be unique.



Note: The **Add to Guardian** option is automatically checked for any tradable TTORD. The **Add to Guardian** option does not appear if **DisableProductLimitPublishingMode** is on.

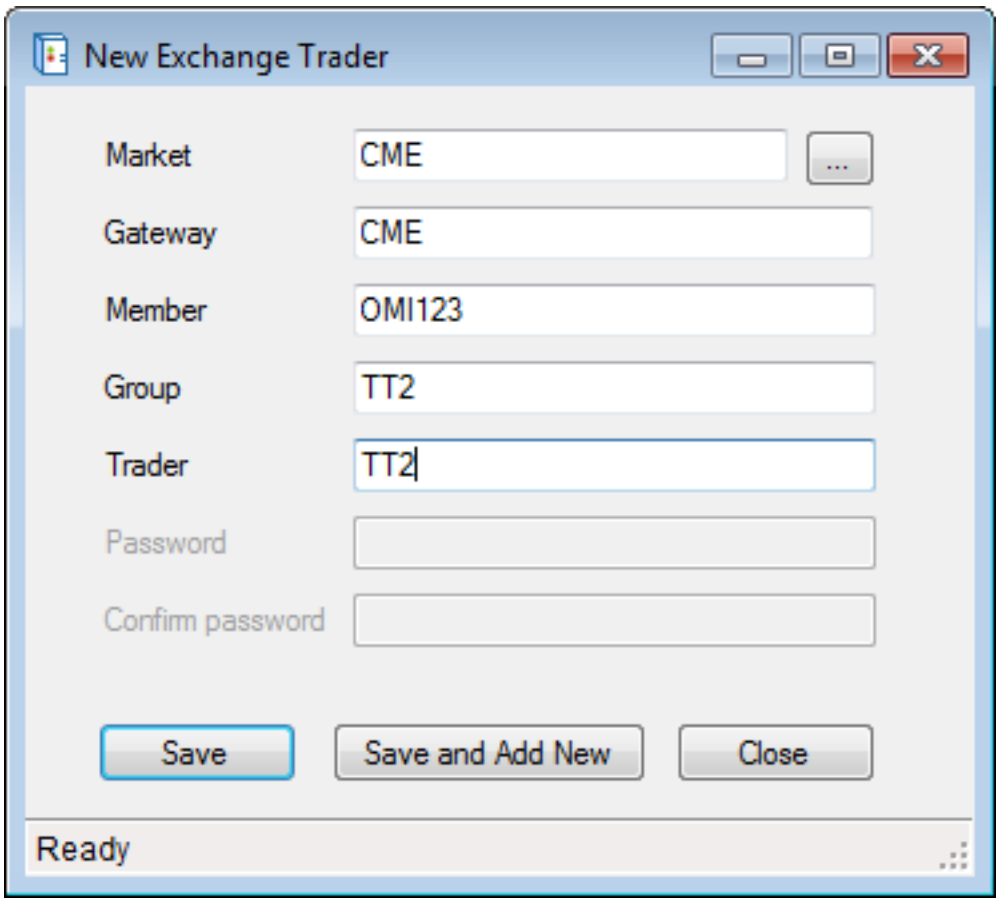
9. Click **Map to Exchange Traders**.

   The **Map Exchange Trader to** window appears, whereby for example, you can map TTORDJS 001 001 to registered trader IDs.



10. If there are no available exchange traders, you can create one by clicking **Create**.

The **New Exchange Trader** window appears.



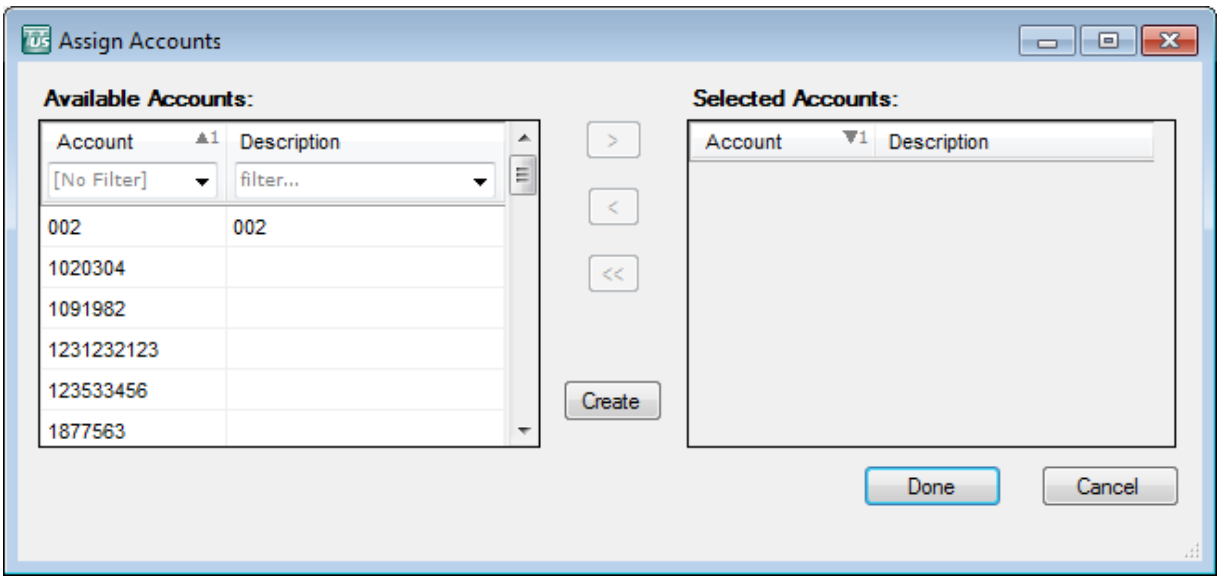
11. Click the **Market** field or the **...** button, select a Gateway, and then click **Select**.

    The **Market** and **Gateway** fields automatically populate with your selection.

12. Complete the **Member**, **Group**, and **Trader** fields and click **Save**.
13. If there are available exchange traders in the **Map Exchange Trader** to window, you can skip Steps 9 and 10, and use the arrow buttons to transfer multiple IDs from the **Available Exchange Traders** section to the **Selected Exchange Traders** section.
14. Click **Done**.
15. On the **New Gateway Login** window, click **Assign Accounts**.

    Note: You are required to assign a unique account number when setting up a new TTORD ID.

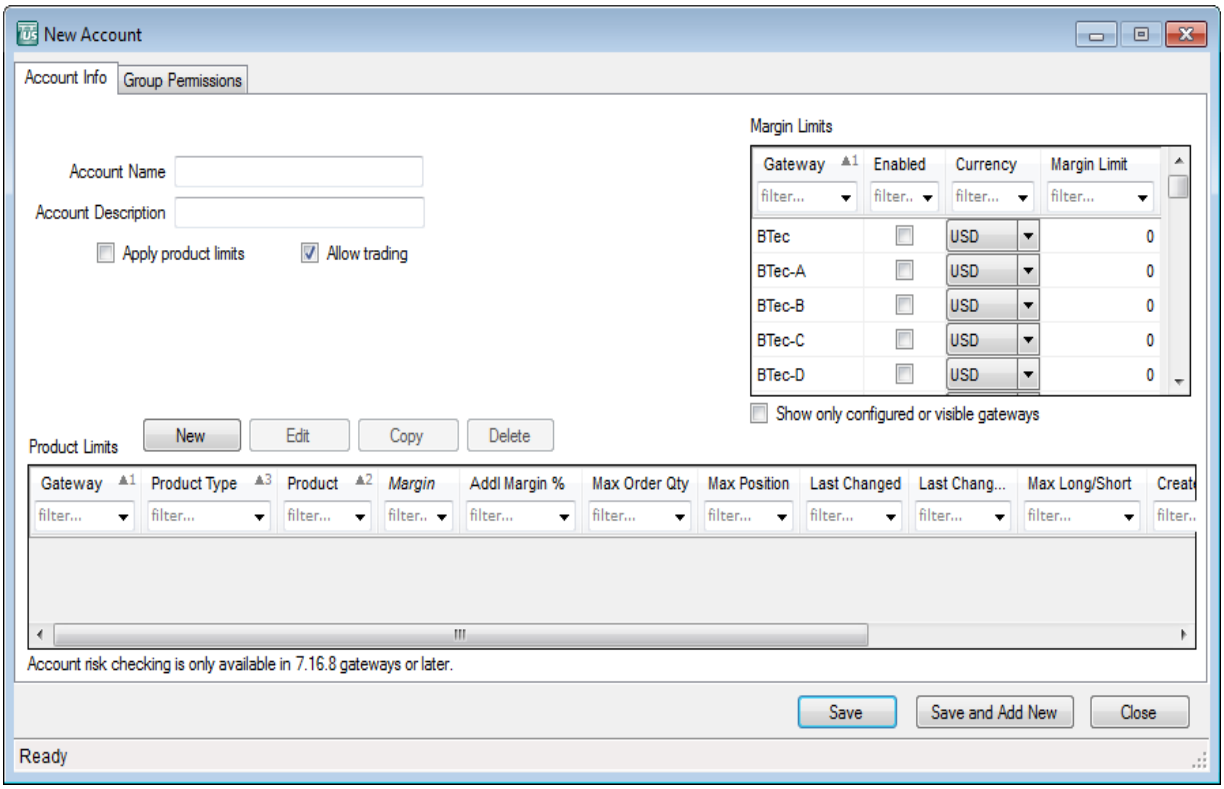
    The **Assign accounts** window displays a list of all accounts not currently in use by another ID.



16. Using the arrow buttons, transfer one or more records from the **Available Accounts** section to the **Selected Accounts** pane.

    Note: In order to trade, John Doe would be required to use one of the selected account numbers.

17. If there are no available accounts to select, click **Create**.



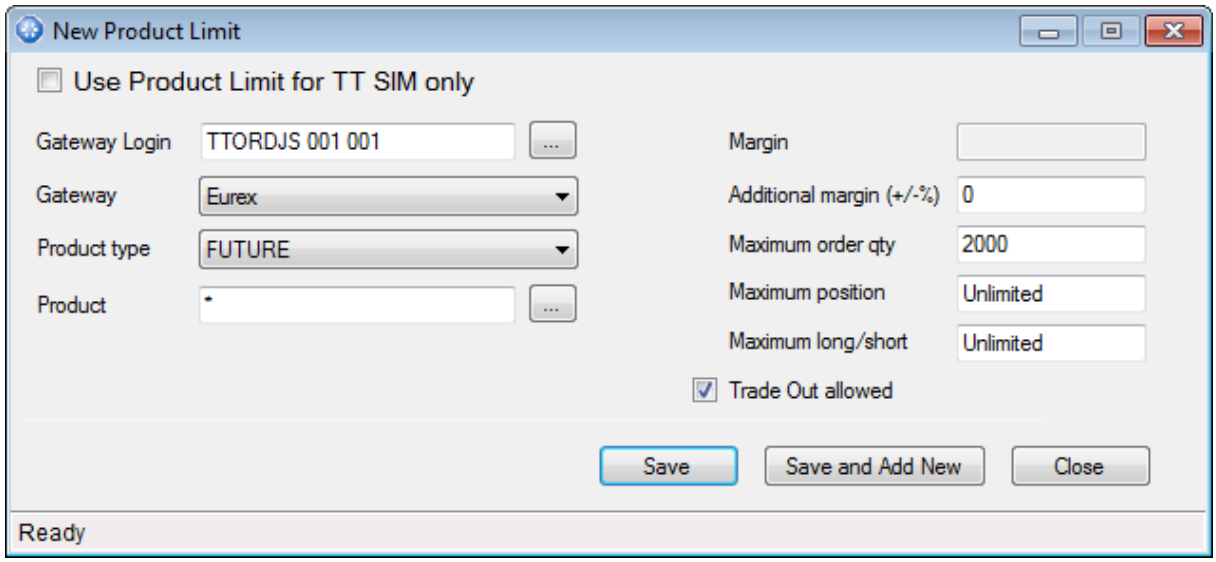
18. On the **New Account** window, enter the **Account name** and **Account description** and then click **Save**. You can also enter configure account-based risk from the **New Account** window

(refer to the "Account Administration Overview" on page 153 topic if needed).

19. On the **Assign accounts** window, click **Done**.

    Note: You can set up John's account numbers as order defaults when setting his customer defaults.

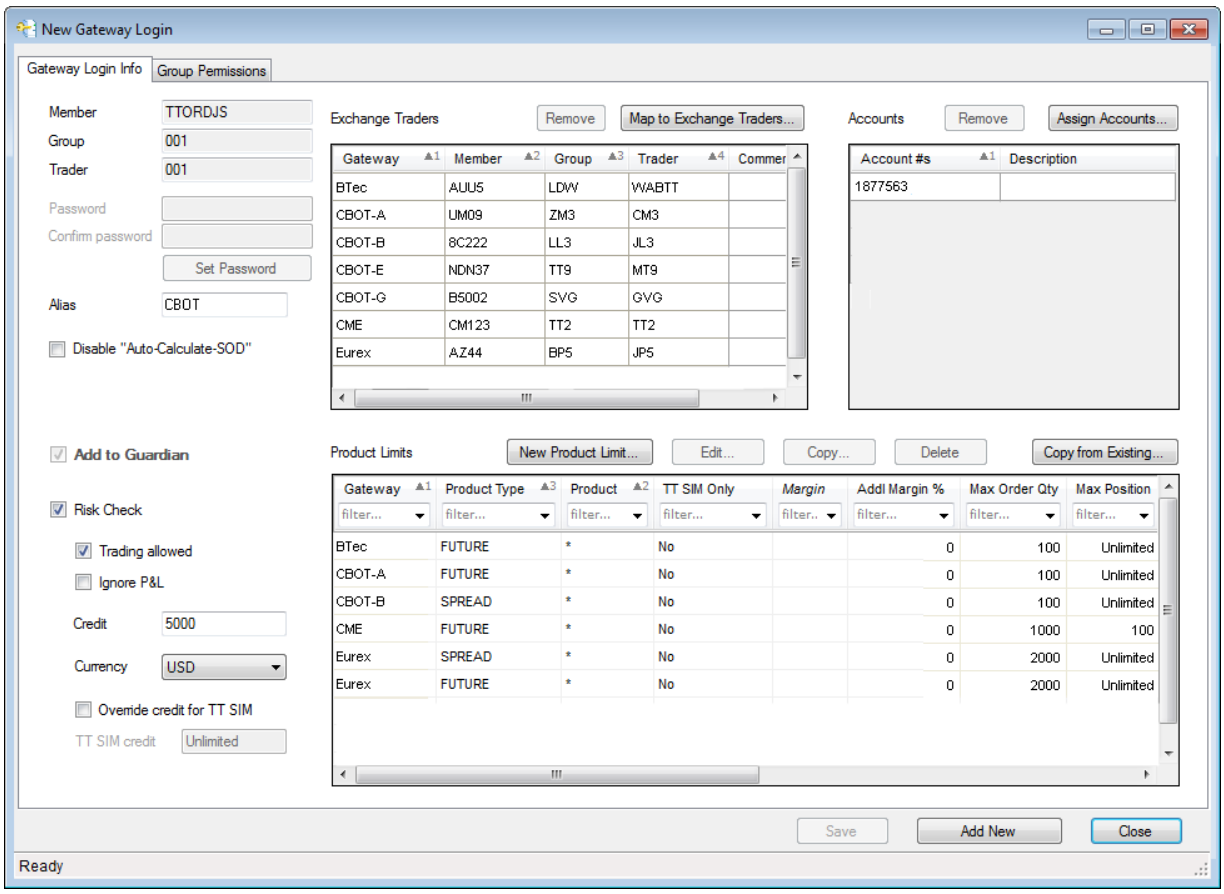
20. On the **New Gateway Login** window, in the Guardian data section, either uncheck the Risk Check setting or click the **New Product Limit** button and set up products for John to trade.



Note: Because John's TTORD is mapped to CME, you should set up product limits that apply to the CME gateway. As such, John can trade all Futures on CME and is subject to the limits illustrated above.

21. On the **New Product Limit** window, apply any applicable limits and then click **Save**.

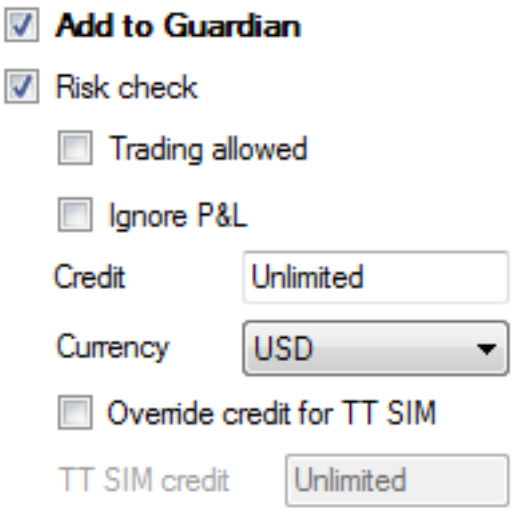
    All newly created data appears in the **New Gateway Login** window.



Note: For a detailed description of product limit functionality, refer to the product limit topics in the **Risk Management** section.

22. In the Guardian data section, check the **Trading allowed** option to turn on trading for this TTORD.

    Note: When the **Trading allowed** option is not checked, all orders placed by this MGT are rejected.

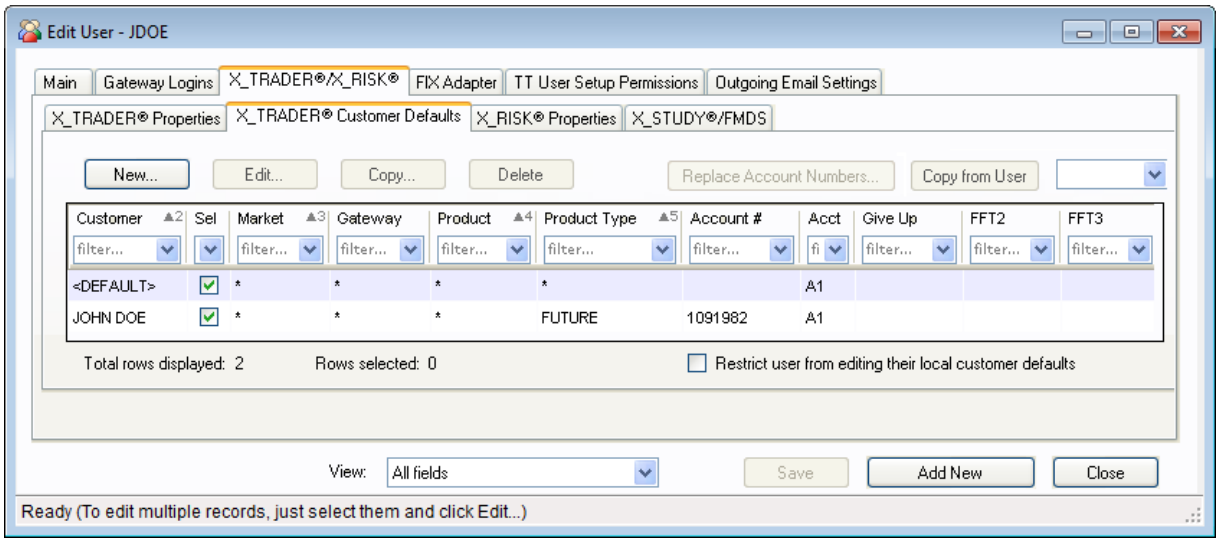


23. On the **New Gateway Login** window, click **Save**.

    Note: The newly created gateway login data appears in the **Gateway Login** tab on the **Edit User** window.

24. From the **X_TRADER/X_RISK** tab, click the **X_TRADER Customer Defaults** tab, and enter any applicable customer default data. Keep in mind that a TTORD may have only one customer default account to trade with.

    Note: To ensure that John enters orders on the correct account, in the <Default> row, verify the **Account** field contains John's correct account number.



For a detailed description of customer default functionality, refer to the customer defaults topics in the **Managing Users** section.

25. On the **Edit User** window, click the **Save** button.

    The newly created user and associated data display in the **Users** window.

26. On the control panel, click the **Publish to Guardian** icon.

    Note: TTORDs must be published to Guardian to be valid.

How to Map an Additional Gateway Login to an Existing TTORD User

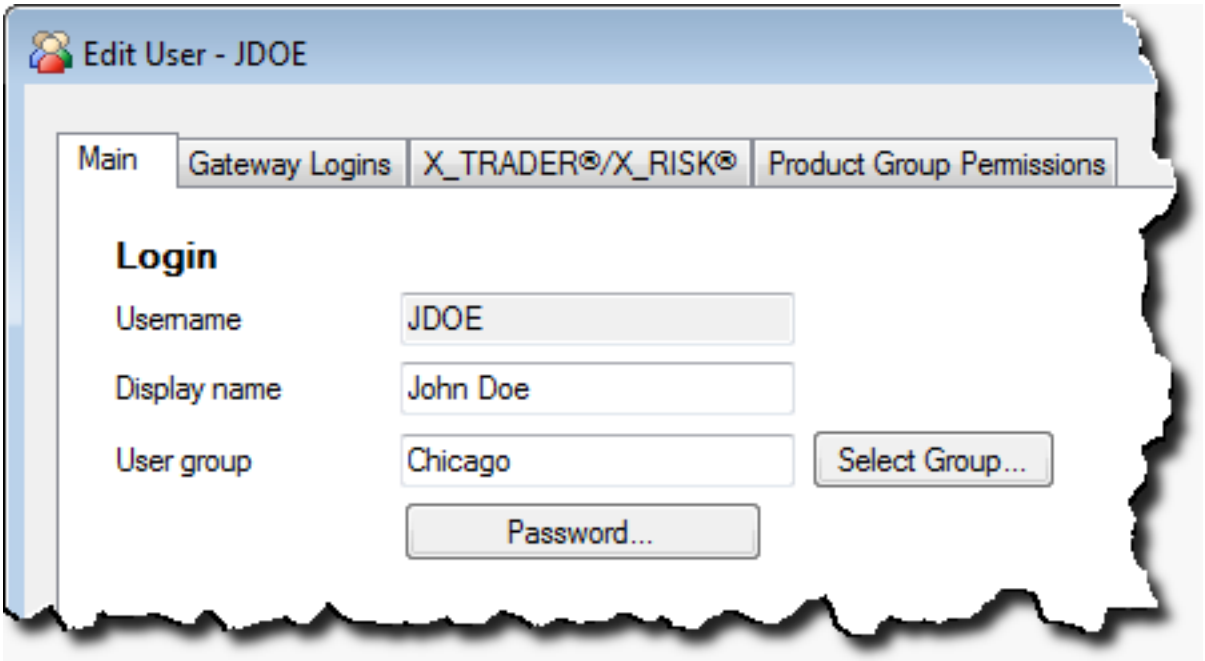
In this tutorial you will learn to update an existing TTORD user (John Doe). Using John's unique TTORD ID (TTORDJS001001) you will add a Eurex gateway to the CME, BrokerTec, and CBOT Gateways that John currently logs into. In addition, you will add corresponding product limits to John's Eurex Gateway Login.

To map an additional gateway login to an existing TTORD user:

1. From the **User Admin** menu, select **Users.**

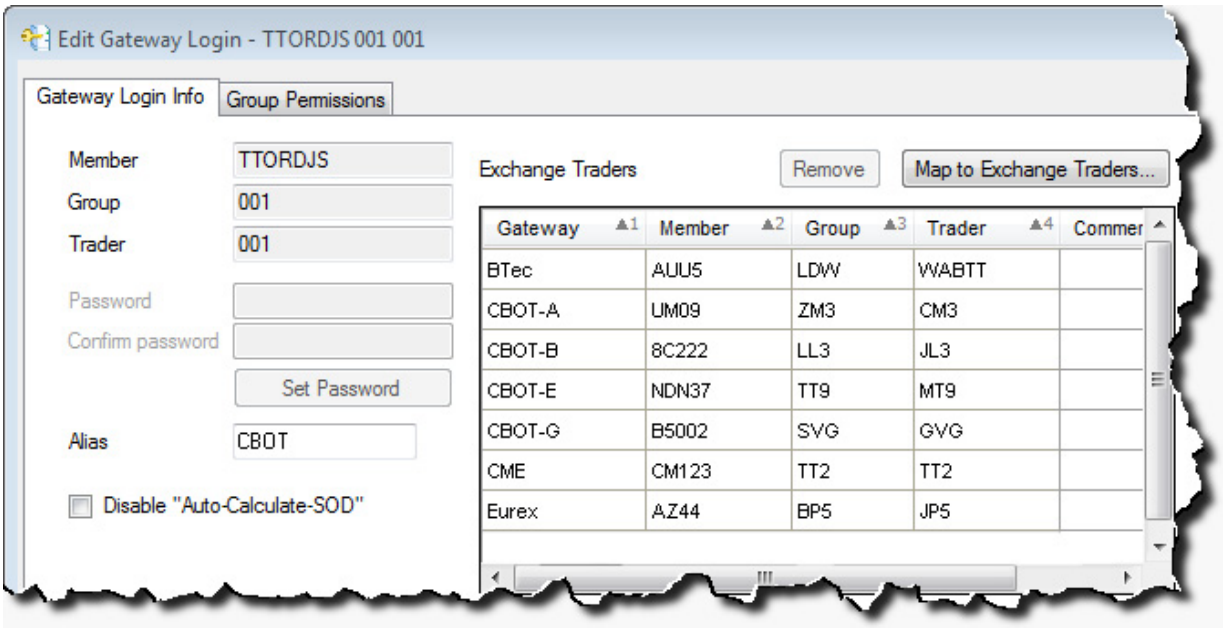
   The **Users** window appears.

2. In the **Display Name** column filter, type John's display name to easily locate his user record.
3. To open the **Edit User** window for JDOE, double-click on the row associated with John's user record. For additional ways to access the **Edit User** window, refer to “Creating, Editing, and Deleting Records” on page 25.

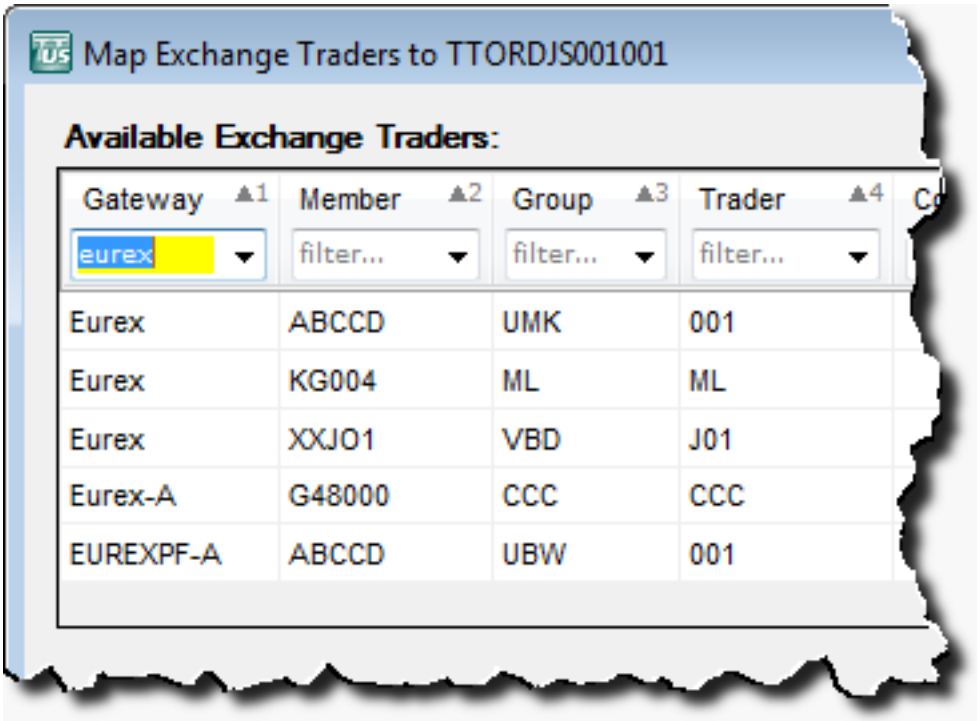


4. Click the **Gateway Logins** tab and then double-click the row for any of John's existing logins.

   The **Edit Gateway Logins** window appears.

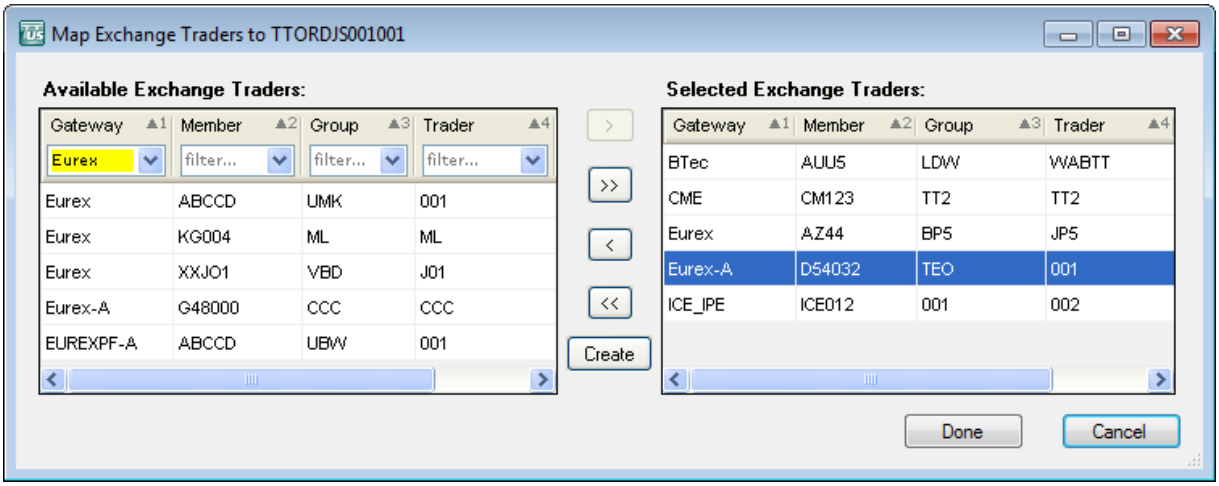


5. Click **Map to Exchange Traders**.
6. On the **Available Exchange Traders** section of the **Map Exchange Traders to** window, type **Eurex** in the **Gateway** column filter to easily locate any available Eurex MGTs.

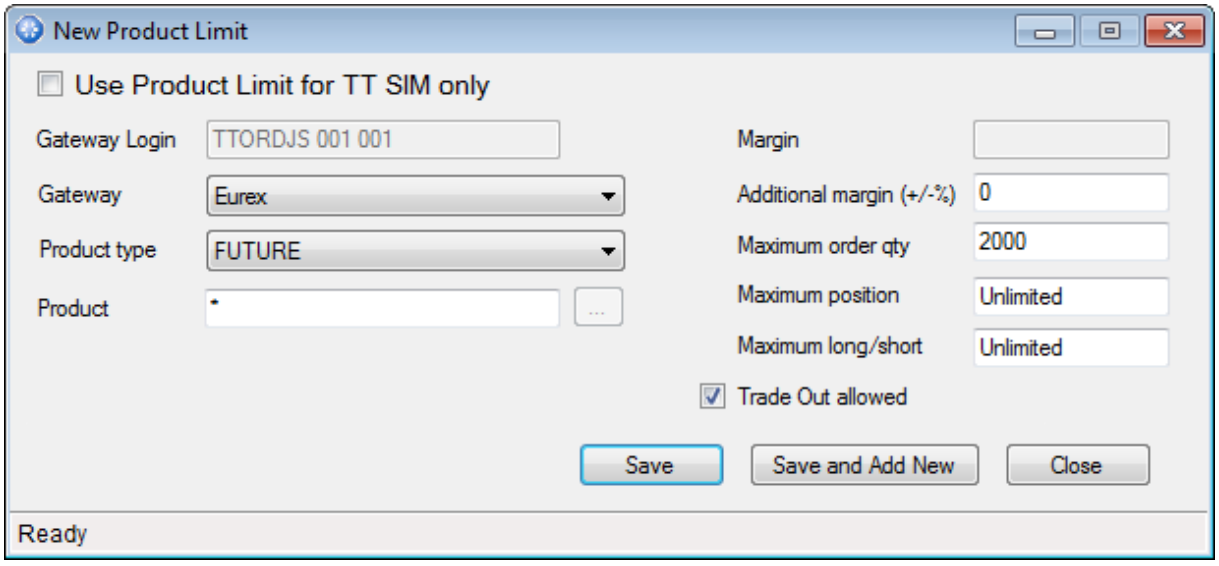


Note: If there are no Eurex MGTs available, click the **Create** button to open the **New Exchange Trader ID** window, and create a Eurex MGT.

7. Using the arrow buttons, transfer a Eurex MGT from the **Available Exchange Traders** section to the **Selected Exchange Traders** pane.



8. Click **Done**.
9. On the **Edit Gateway Login** window, click **Save** and then **Close**.
10. On the **Edit User** window, click **New** to create a new product limit.
11. Select **Eurex** for the **Gateway** field, and edit the data in one or more additional fields (e.g. Change the maximum order quantity to 2000).



12. Click **Save**.

    John's new product limits display in the **Product Limits** window.

13. Close the **Product Limits** window.
14. On the **Edit User** window, click **Save**.

15. Click **Close**.

Note: To apply John's new gateway login settings, you must publish them to Guardian.

How to Set Up an Administrator Who Uses Both X_RISK and TT User Setup

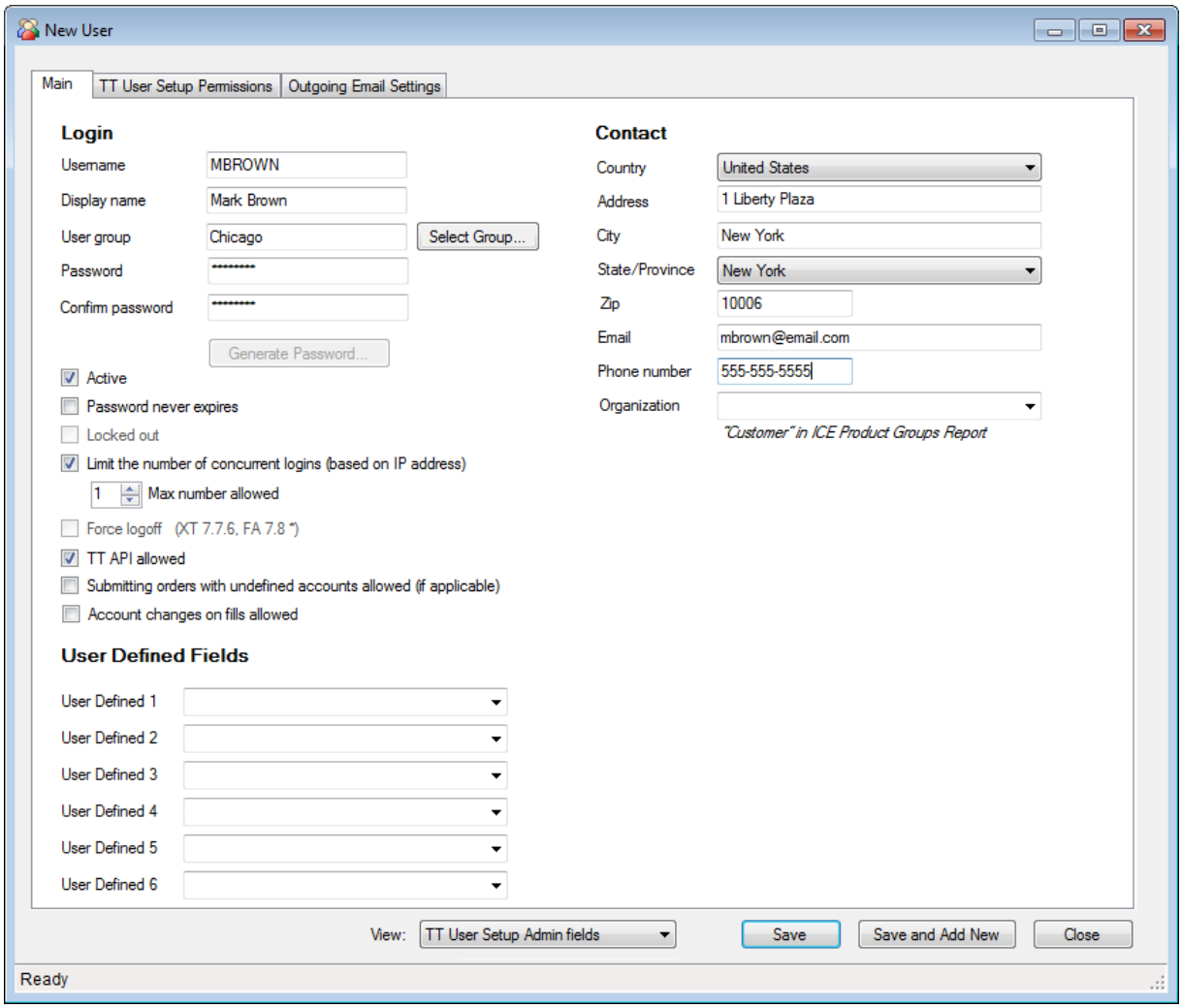
In this tutorial you will learn to create an admin-type user (Mark) that is able to log into both X_RISK and TT User Setup. In addition, you will set up Mark so that he can create new users, assign risk parameters in TT User Setup, publish SODs, and monitor trading via X_RISK.

Note: As part of the administrator setup procedure, you should set up an administrator email account for the dissemination of newly generated passwords. For the procedure for setting up such an account, refer to the topic “Configuring the Outgoing Email Settings” on page 93.

To set up an administrator who uses both X_RISK and TT User Setup:

1. From the **User Admin** menu, select **Users**.
2. From the **Users** window, set the **New User View** to **TT User Setup Admin fields**.
3. Click **New**.

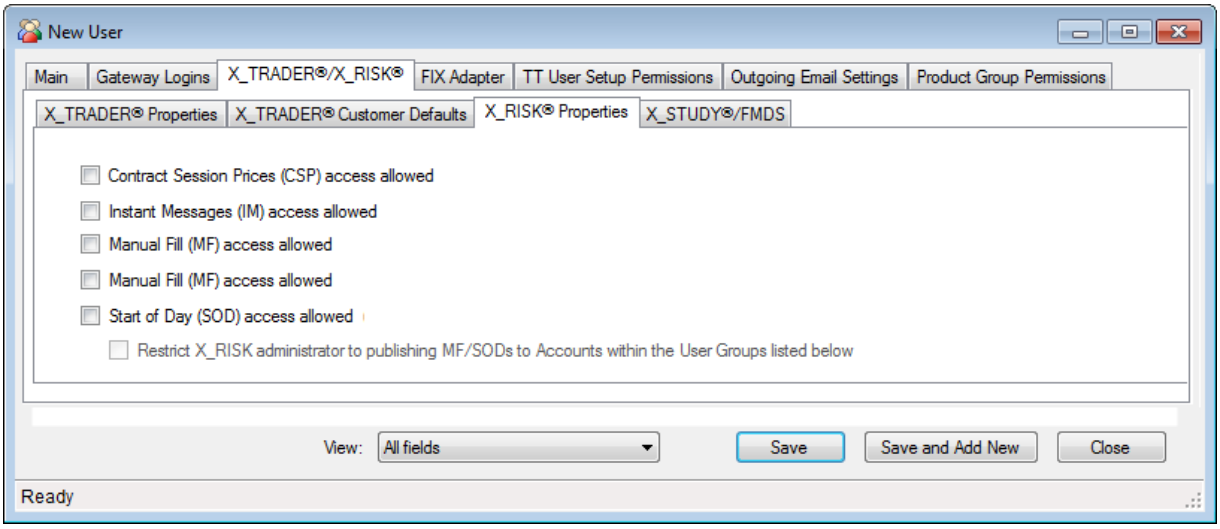
   The **New User** window appears.



4. On the **Main** tab:
    1. Assign Mark a **Username**, **Display name**, and **Password**.
    2. Select **Password never expires**.
    3. Add any other data in the applicable fields, and
    4. Click **Save**.
5. On the **TT User Setup Permissions** tab, click to select either **Super Administrator** or **Group Administrator**.

    Note: If you select the Group Administrator option, you must assign at least one user group to that group Administrator.

6. Change the **View** to **X_TRADER/X_RISK fields**. Notice that the TT User Setup Permissions tab remains.
7. From the **X_TRADER/X_RISK** tab, select the **X_RISK Properties** tab, and then select the X_RISK options as needed.



8. Click **Save**.

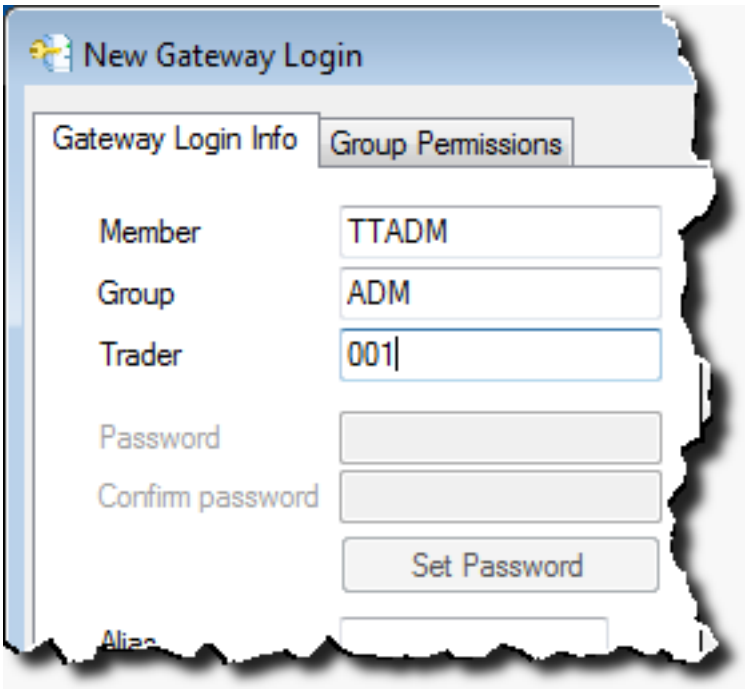
   Note: Selecting any of the X_RISK options allows Mark to monitor risk via X_RISK. If you allow Mark to publish manual fills (**Manual Fill (MF) access allowed**) or start-Of-Day records (**Start of Day (SOD) access allowed**), you can restrict Mark to publishing only to accounts that exist in specified user groups by checking the **Restrict X_RISK administrator to publishing ...** option.

9. Select the **Gateway Logins** tab.
10. Click **New**.

    The **New Gateway Login** window appears.

    Note: You may instead select to click the **Assign Existing Logins** button. For a detailed description of that procedure, refer to the “Assigning Gateway Logins to a User Through the Users Window” on page 83 topic.

11. Enter a Member, Group, and Trader (MGT) ID.



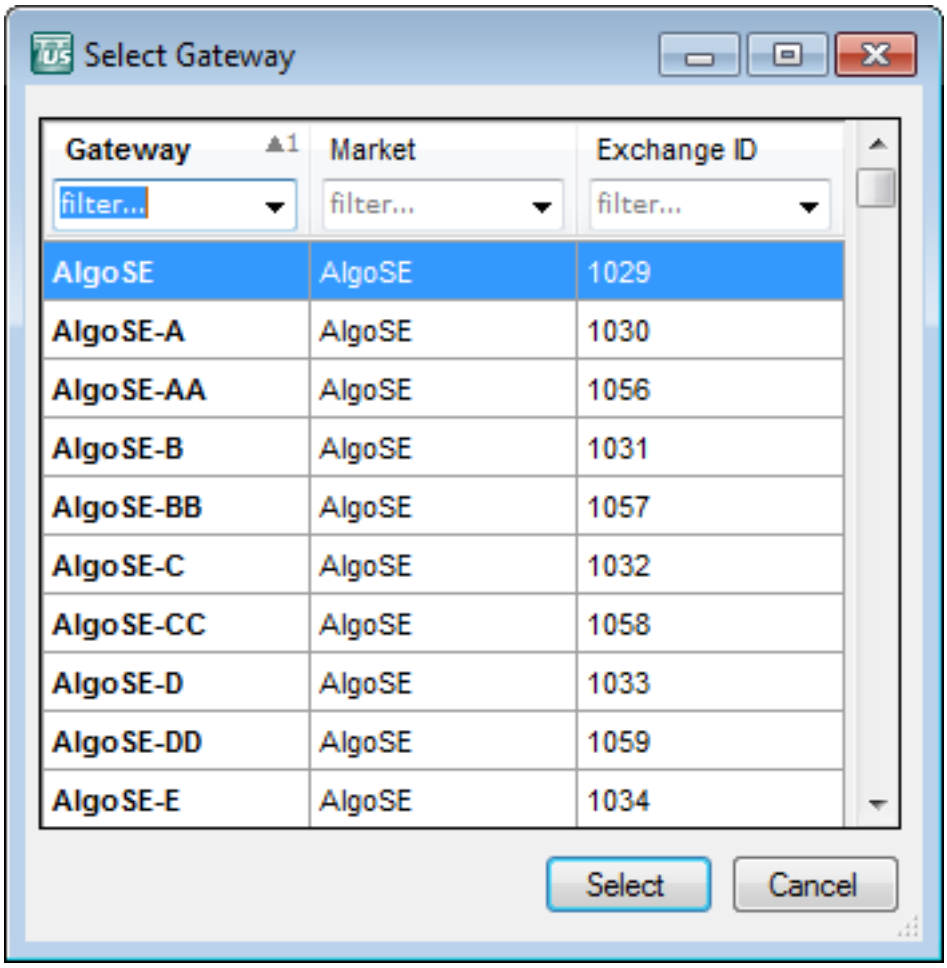
Note: Use TTADM for a full admin.

12. Click **Add Gateways**.

    The **Select Gateway** window appears.

13. Select a Market, a Gateway, and click **Done**.

    Repeat this step for each gateway that Mark would log into.



Note: You do not have to associate an account, as this is only necessary when publishing to Guardian.

14. Click **Save**.

    Note: For Mark, being a TT User Setup user, the newly created gateway login can be used to log into X_RISK.

15. On the **Edit User** window, click **Save**.

    Mark's new administrator user data appears in the **Users** window.

How to Set Up a Third-party Risk Administrator

In this tutorial you will learn how to create an administrator that will only manage risk for a select group of TT Gateways. This is useful when you use a third-party's exchange credentials but do not want that third-party to create users, edit non-risk settings, or edit risk settings that do not belong to them.

Example: ABC Trading hosts two TT Gateways (CME-A and Eurex-A) and manages traders using TT User Setup. To provide traders access to an ICE Gateway, ABC Trading uses the credentials of a second company, XYZ Futures. Because XYZ Futures owns the ICE credentials, XYZ Futures administrators want to manage risk for any ICE trades. However, because the traders also trade CME and Eurex, ABC Trading administrators want to manage risk for any CME or Eurex trades, as well as all other aspects of the users' configuration. ABC Trading administrators also want to control which traders can trade on the XYZ Futures Gateways.

To satisfy these requirements, ABC Trading administrators will create a new TT User Setup group that contains only the ICE gateway logins. They will then assign the new group to an XYZ Futures Gateway Login administrator. When the XYZ Futures administrator logs in, he will be able to manage the gateway logins (which include all the risk limits) for the XYZ Futures Gateways. XYZ Futures administrators will not be able to assign these gateway logins to users. This will be done by ABC Trading.

Creating the Gateway Login Group

To create a group that contains only gateway logins:

1. Log into TT User Setup as a super administrator.
2. From the **User Admin** menu, select **User Groups.**
3. From the **User Groups** window, click **New**.
4. Create a new user group that will only be used for the third-party's gateway logins (e.g XYZFuturesRisk).
5. If TT User Setup already contains some or all of the third-party gateway logins, you can assign them to this new user group by clicking **Assign Gateway Logins** and then selecting the available gateway logins. The third-party administrator will also be able to create new gateway logins as needed.
6. Continue to the next section, “Creating the Third-party Gateway Login Administrator” on page 268.

Creating the Third-party Gateway Login Administrator

To create an administrator that can only manage gateway logins:

1. From the **User Admin** menu, select **Users**.
2. In the **Users** window, set the **New User View** to **TT User Setup Admin fields**, and then click **New**.
3. On the **Main** tab of the **New User** window, enter the appropriate Login data, including **Username** and any additional data in the applicable fields.
4. On the **TT User Setup Permissions** tab select the **Gateway Login Administration** option. Leave **Restrict Gateway Login Administrator to User Groups listed below** checked.
5. Move the third-party group you created in the previous section to the **Can only manage Gateway Logins in the following User Groups** section.
6. Click **Save** and then click **Close**.

When the third-party gateway login administrator logs in, TT User Setup displays only the gateway logins that you assigned to the third-party gateway login group. The gateway login administrator can create new gateway logins, as long as they do not conflict with your current gateway logins. The gateway logins that the gateway login administrator creates cannot be used until you assign them to a trader.

Assigning Users to the Third-party Gateway Logins

To assign users to the third-party gateway logins you must log into TT User Setup as an administrator that can access both the third-party user group and the traders' user group(s). You can then access the **Gateway Logins** window and assign the gateway logins.

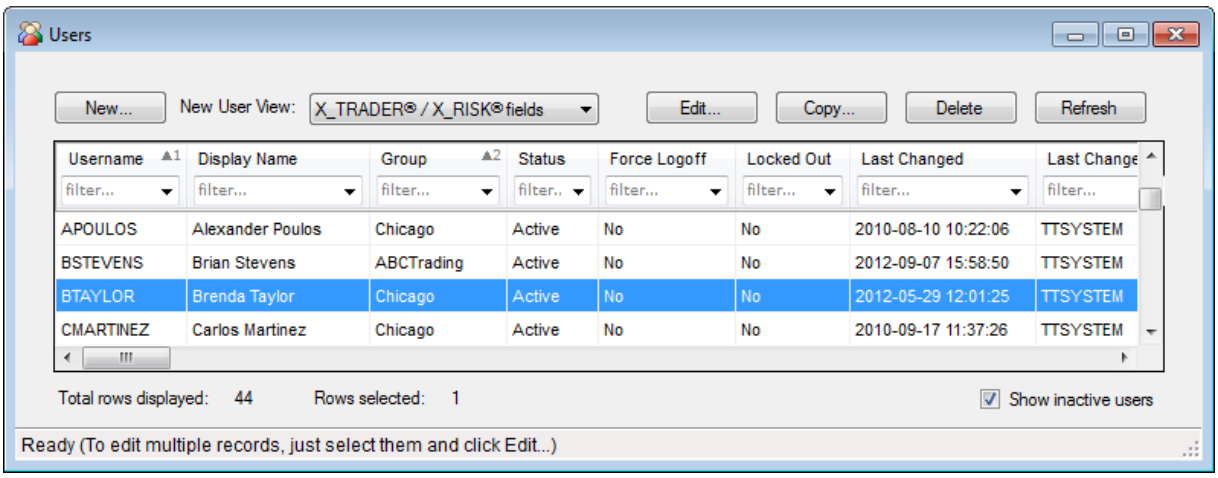
How to Create a New User by Copying an Existing User

In this tutorial you will learn to create a new user (Matt), whose setup is similar to a user who has already been created (Brenda). While creating the new user, you will incorporate TT User Setup's copying features to duplicate elements of Brenda's setup and apply them to Matt's setup.

To use the copy function to create a user who has a similar setup to an existing user:

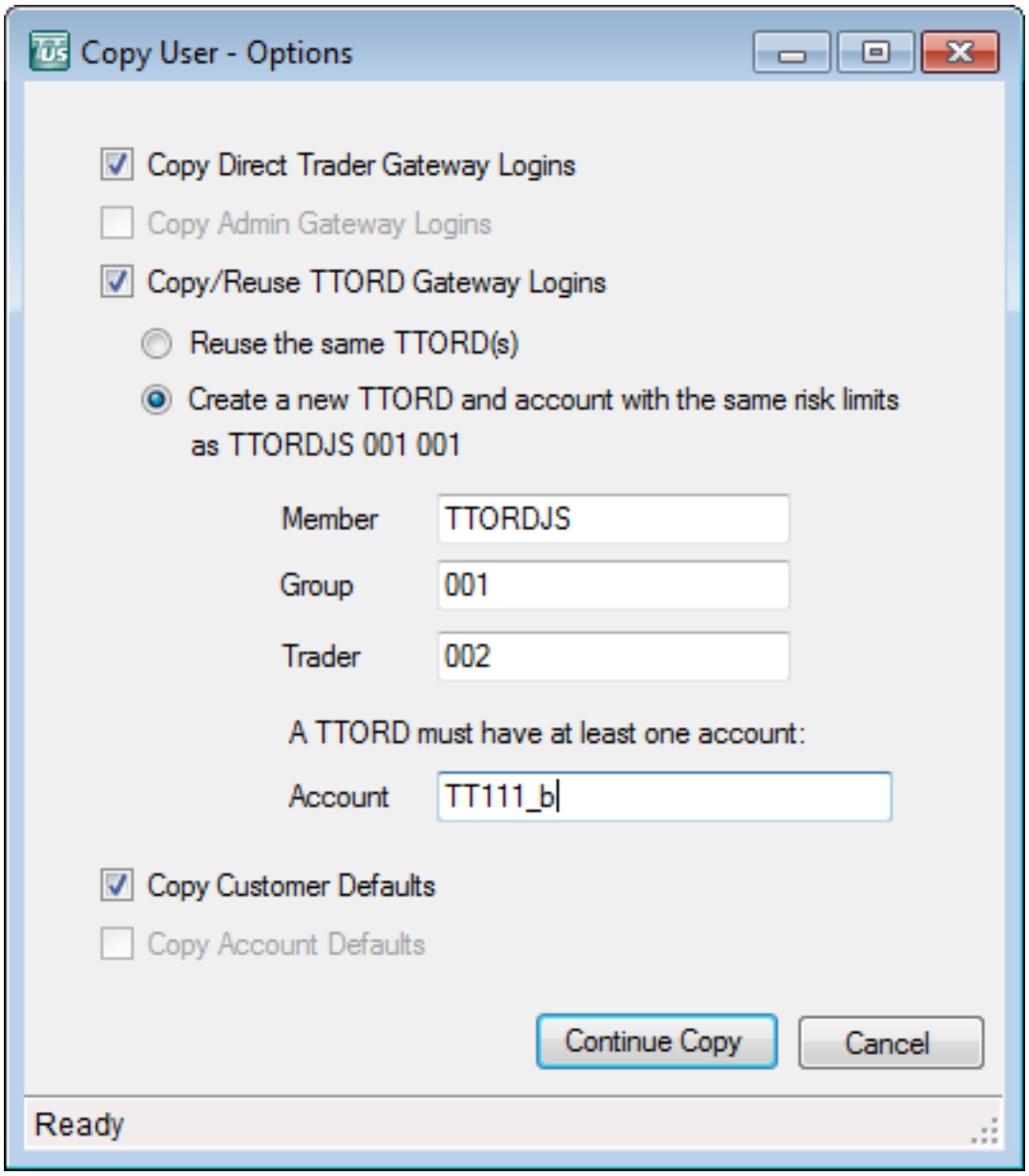
1. From the **User Admin** menu, select **Users.**

The **Users** window appears.



2. Highlight the row for BTAYLOR, and click **Copy**.

   The **Copy User - Options** window appears. Any options that are not available for the currently selected user are disabled. For example, BTAYLOR does not have any direct trader or admin gateway logins.

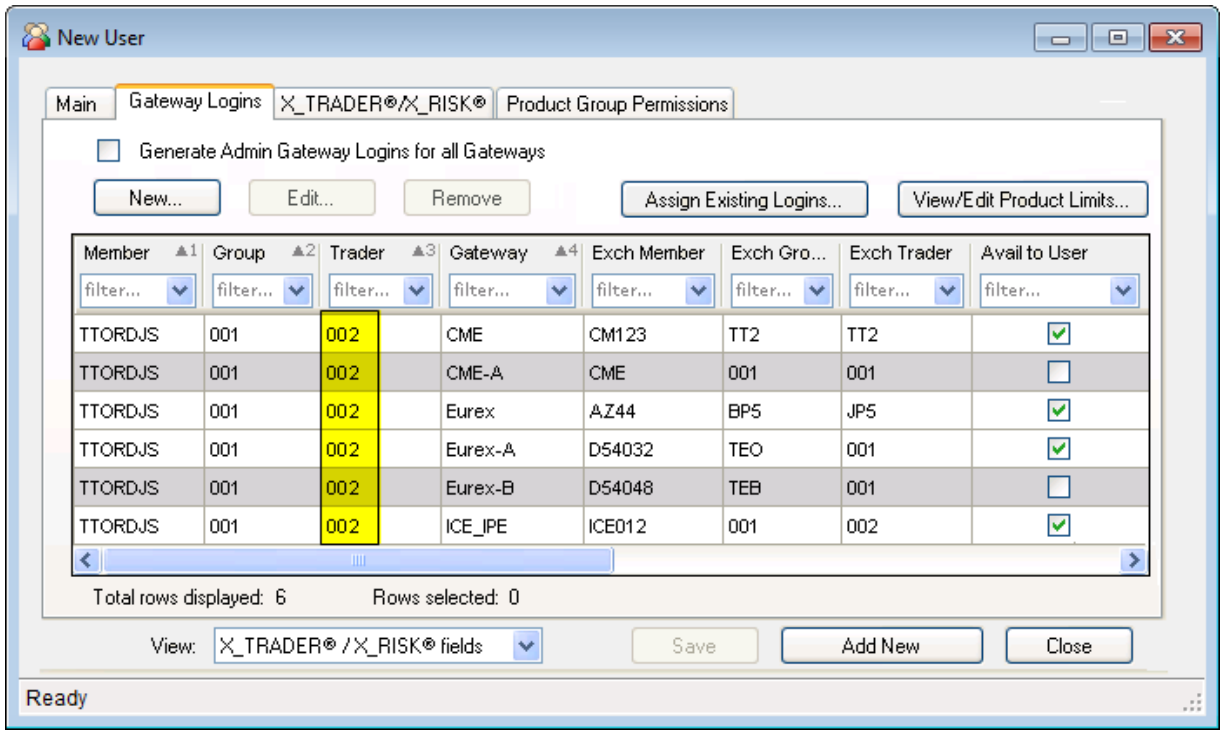


3. For this tutorial, select the following options:

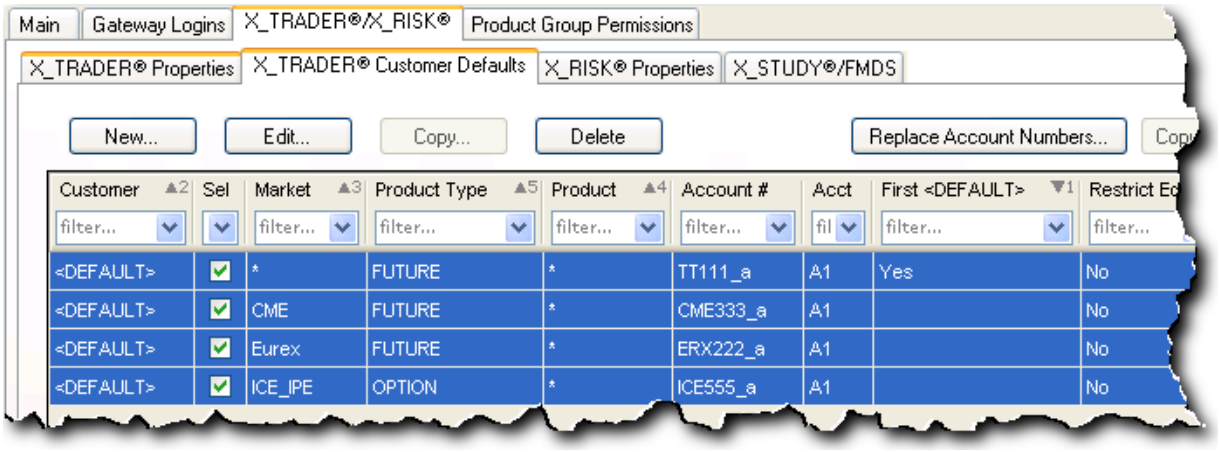
   - Select **Copy TTORD Gateway Logins**.
   - Select **Create a new TTORD...** to copy TTORD Gateway Logins as a new TTORD.
   - Enter a new Member (TTORDJS) Group (001) and Trader (002). Because Matt has the same Member and Group as Brenda, they will share an order book.
   - Enter an account number of TT111_b. This is mandatory for TTORDs and must be an account that doesn't exist or is currently not assigned to another Gateway Login.
   - Select **Copy Customer Defaults**.

4. Click **Continue Copy**.

The **New User** window appears and is populated with most of the data from the BTAYLOR profile. Notice, however, that the Gateway Logins have the TTORDJS 001 002 MGT but the same gateways and product limits as the gateways in the BTAYLOR profile. If you edit the Gateway Logins you will also see that the account number is TT111_b.



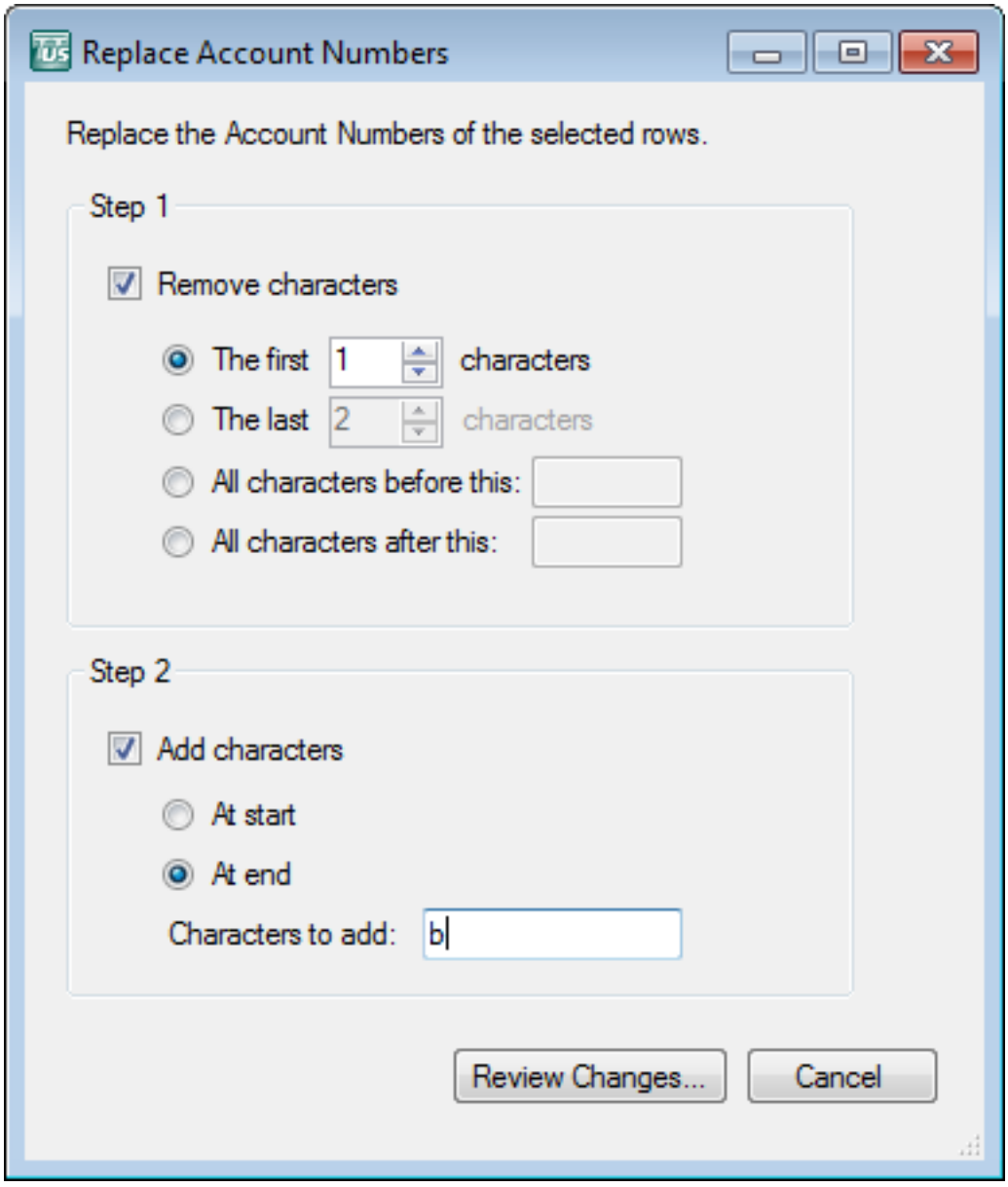
5. Locate the **X_TRADER/X_TRADER Customer Defaults** tab. As requested, TT User Setup copied all of Brenda's customer defaults. However, you will need to update the account numbers to ones assigned to Matt.



6.

Click **Replace Account Numbers**.

The **Replace Account Numbers** window appears.

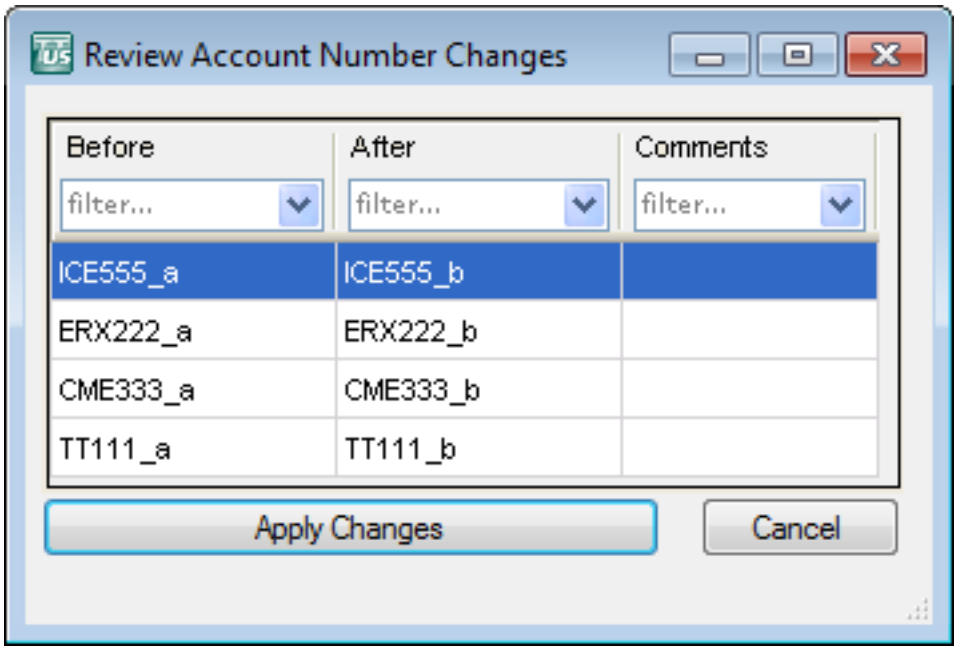


Configure the account replacement rules to determine how the existing account numbers will be replaced.

- In the **Step 1**section, check **Remove characters** and set the options **to The first 1 characters**.
- In the **Step 2** section, check **Add characters**, **At end**, and then enter **b** into the **Characters to add** field.

7. Click **Review Changes**.

The **Review Account Number Changes** window appears.



8. Click **Apply Changes**.

   The account numbers are replaced.

9. On the **Main** tab, assign Matt a new **Username** and **Display Name**, edit any other applicable fields, and click **Save**.

   You have successfully copied a user.

How to Assign Existing Product Limits to Other Gateway Login IDs Simultaneously

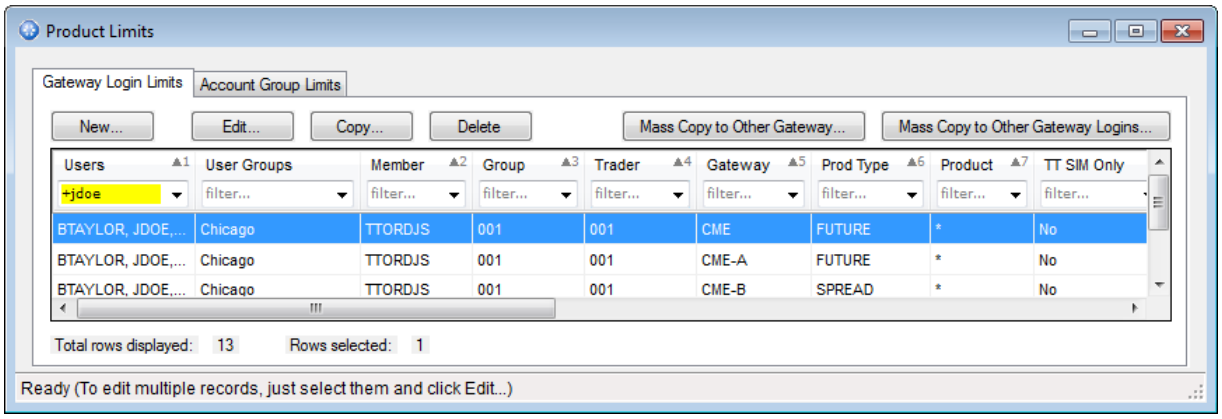
In this tutorial you will learn how to assign one or more of John Doe's product limits to several other gateway logins simultaneously.

▶ To assign product limits to several gateway logins simultaneously:

1. From the **User Admin** menu, select **Product Limits**.

   The **Product Limits** window appears.

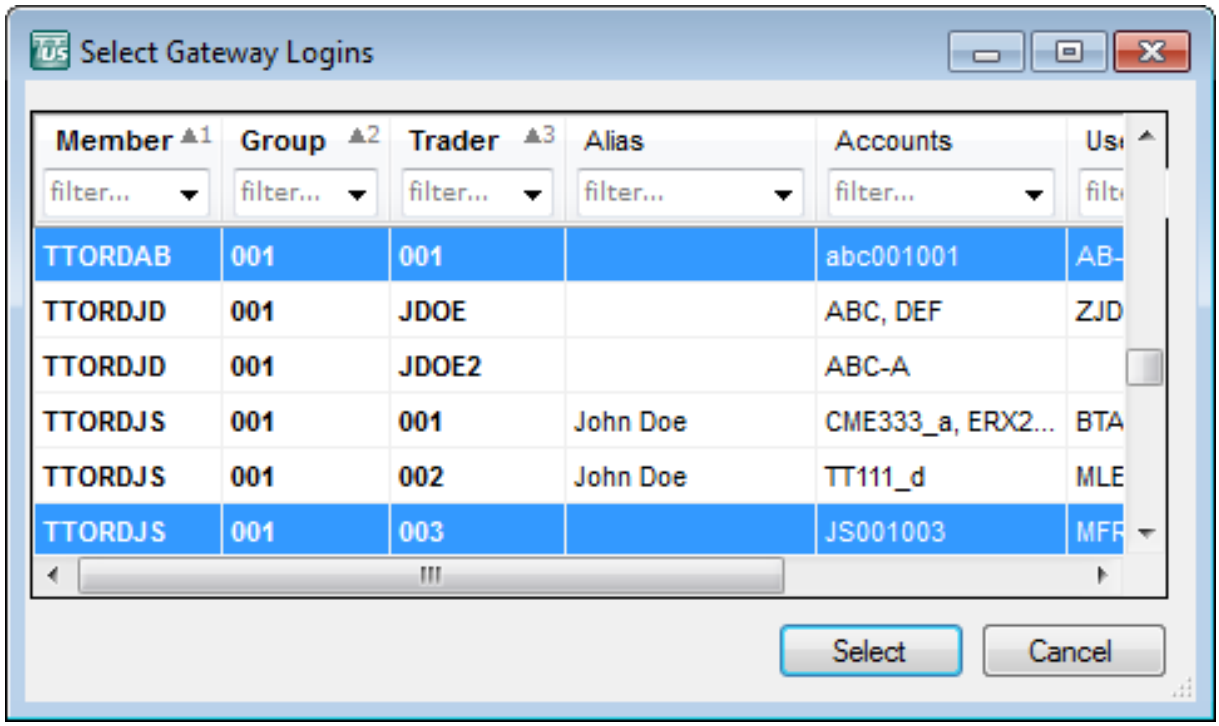
2. Select the **Gateway Login Limits** tab, and then filter the **Users** column by **JDOE**. For a detailed description on filtering functionality, refer to the “Applying Filters” on page 30 topic.
3. Highlight the product limits you want to assign.



4. Click **Mass Copy to Other Gateway Logins**.

   The **Select Gateway Logins** window appears.

5. Highlight several MGTs to which you want the product limits applied and click **Select**.



6. If an overwrite message appears, click **Yes** to continue.

John's product limits are applied to the MGTs you selected accordingly.

Note: Assigning additional product limits helps to differentiate multiple MGTs.

How to Change Multiple Product Limit Values Simultaneously

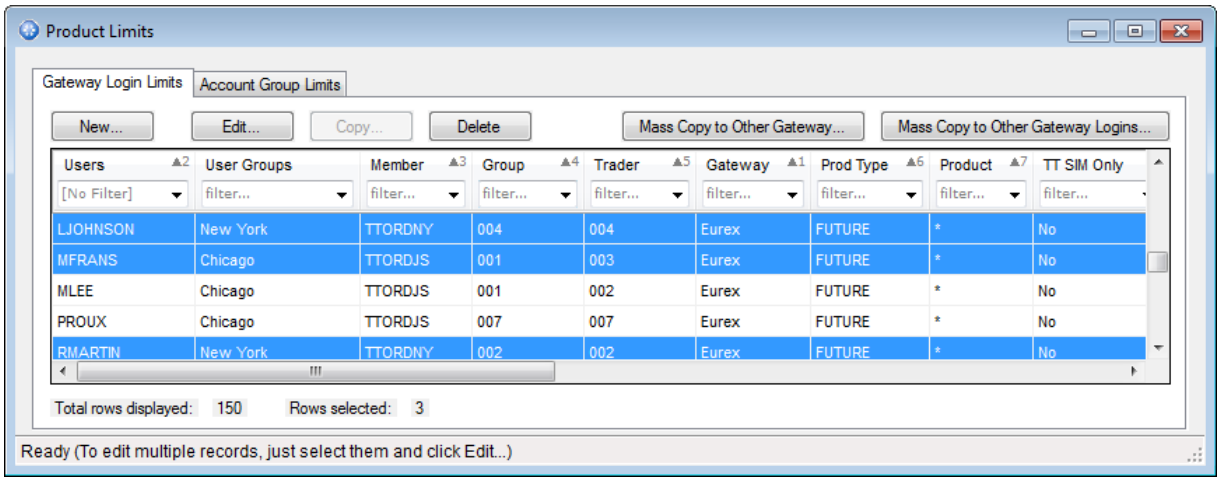
In this tutorial you will learn how to use the **Product Limits** window to change several product limit values at the same time. In the example you will learn to update the maximum order quantity for multiple traders placing CBOT Futures orders on a specific gateway flavor.

To change multiple product limit values simultaneously:

1. From the **User Admin** menu, select **Product Limits**.

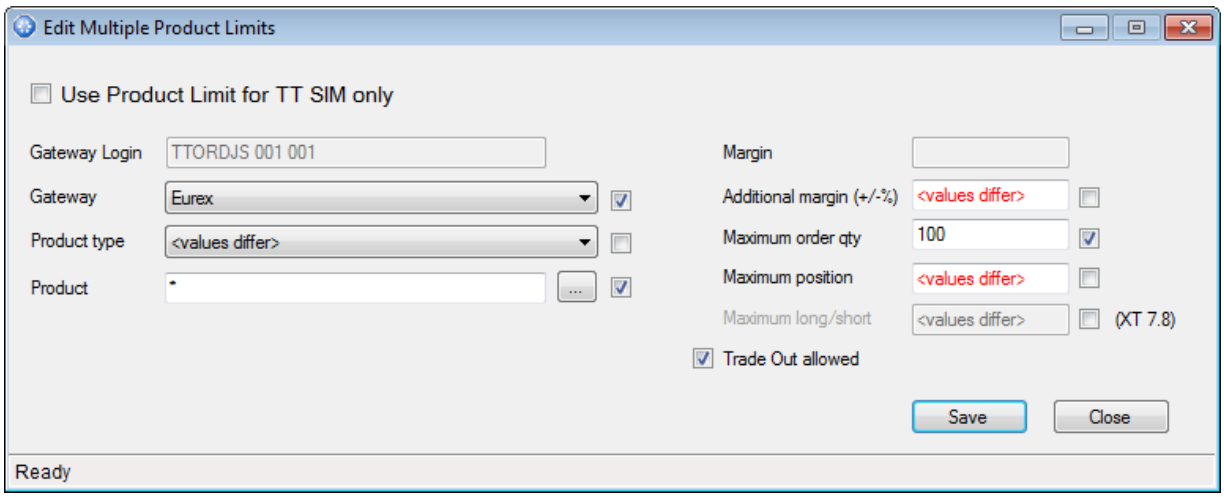
   The **Product Limits** window appears.

2. Click the **Gateway** column title to filter rows alphabetically. For a detailed description of filtering functionality, refer to the "Applying Filters" on page 30 topic.
3. While pressing the **Ctrl** key, click all the product limit rows for a flavor-specific gateway (e.g. Eurex).



4. Click **Edit**.
5. On the edit multiple limits warning, click **OK**.

   The **Edit Multiple Product Limits** window appears.



Note: Columns containing various values will display **<values differ>** (e.g. One row may have CME as the **Gateway** value and another may have Eurex).

6. In the **Maximum order qty** field, set the quantity to a new value, such as 100, and then click **Save**.

   Changes to the maximum order quantity are reflected in the **Product Limits** window.

How to Set Up Customer Defaults

- In the first example you control which customer defaults can be selected, as well as which attributes are associated with each customer default record.
- In the second example you can select from multiple customers, each with their own unique set of customer defaults (created in TT User Setup by an administrator). This second option would typically be used by a broker who trades for several customers.

For a detailed description of how to use customer defaults, refer to the “Creating and Managing X_TRADER Customer Defaults” on page 73 topic.

Example 1

Set up customer defaults for a trader where you control which customer default attributes the trader can select from, such as what account is used when trading on different markets.

To set up customer defaults where you define the account the trader uses:

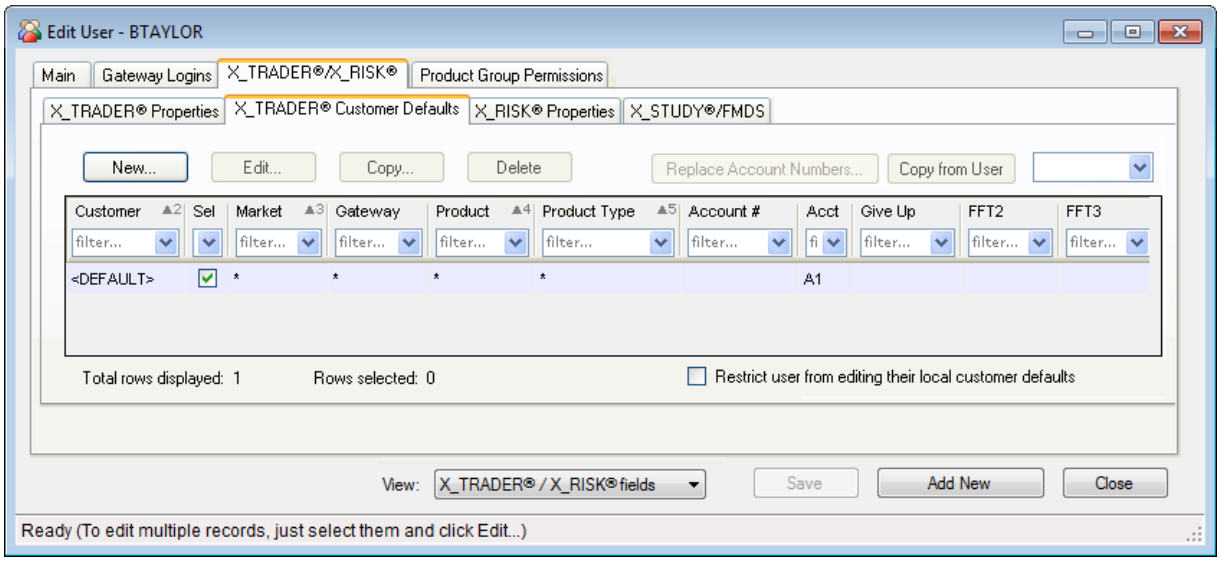
1. From the **User Admin** menu, select **Users**.

   The **Users** window appears.

2. Highlight the row of the user for whom you want to create customer defaults.
3. Click **Edit**.

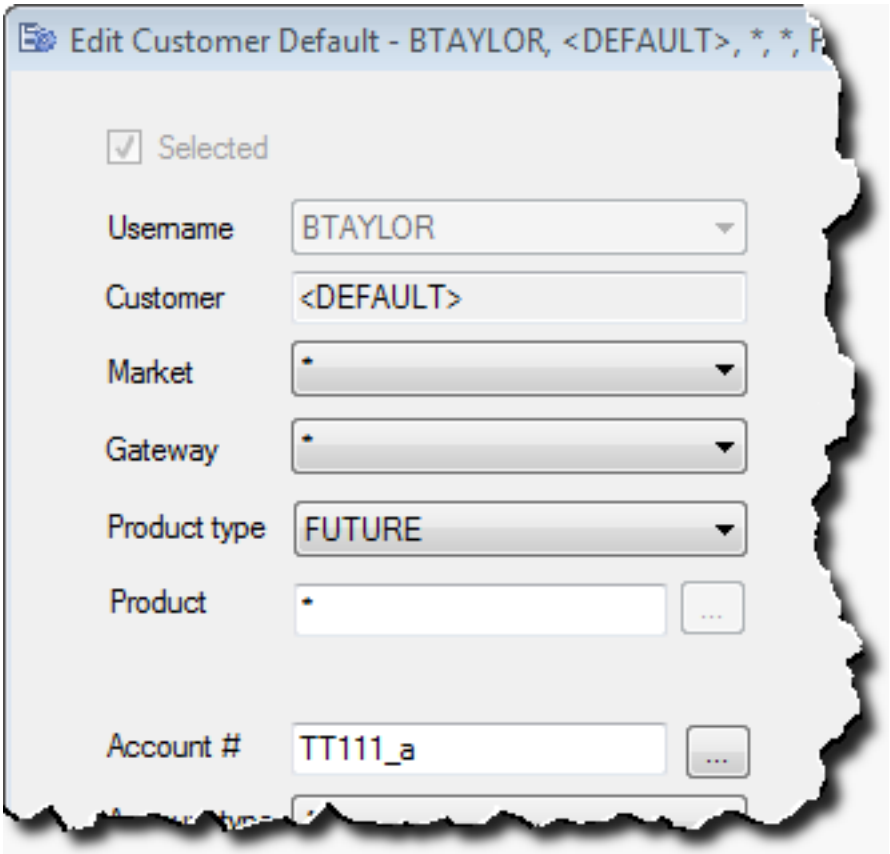
The **Edit User** window appears.

4. From the **X_TRADER/X_RISK** tab, click the **X_TRADER Customer Defaults** tab.



5. Highlight the **<DEFAULT>** customer row and click **Edit**.

The **Edit Customer Default** window appears.



6. In the **Account #** field enter an account identifier (e.g. ACT111).

   -or-

   To select an existing account, click the ellipsis (**...**) button and then pick an account from the **Select Account** window.

7. In the **Market** field, make a selection from the list.

   Note: When creating multiple customer default records for the same Customer, at least one "key" field (**Market**, **Gateway**, **Product**, **Product Type**) must differ for each record.

8. When editing the initial <DEFAULT> record, **Selected** is checked and uneditable; the default customer default cannot be deselected or deleted.

   For all other customer default records check the **Selected** option to enable the customer default. On the **Edit User** field **Selected** is displayed as **Sel**.

   The record(s) you select defines which defaults are applied to the trader. For example, the **Account #** field defines which account number the trader uses.

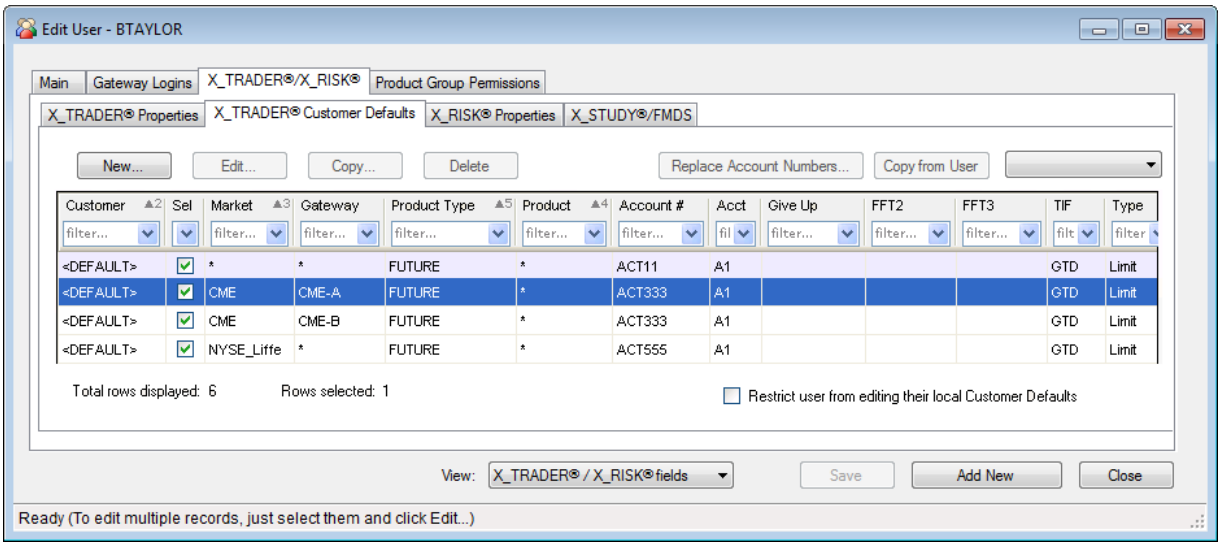
   Note: For customer defaults created in TT User Setup, **Sel** is the only field you can edit via **X_TRADER**. All other TT User Setup-created fields are grayed out.

9. On the **Edit Customer Default** window, click **Save and Add New**.

   Your customer default record appears in the **Edit User** window.

10. Repeat Steps 6-9 and create several more customer default records.

    The image below shows an instance where several customer default records have been created for the <DEFAULT> customer.



11. On the **Edit User** window, click **Save**.

You have successfully set up customer default records.

Example 2

Set up unique customer defaults for a broker who trades for several customers.

To set up unique customer defaults for a broker who trades for several customers:

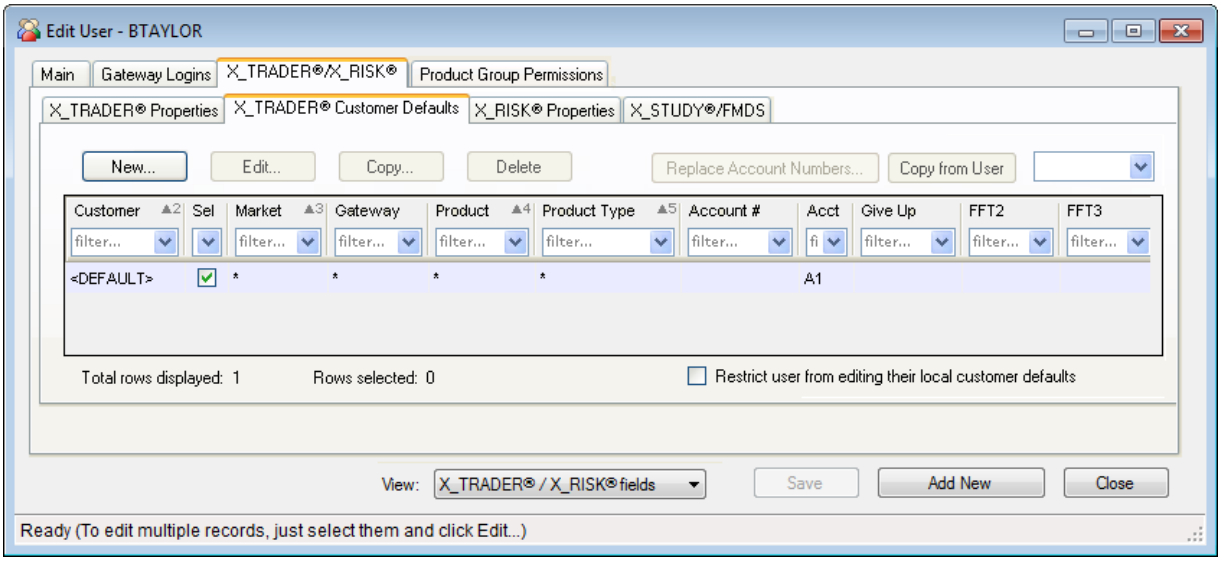
1. From the **User Admin** menu, select **Users**.

   The **Users** window appears.

2. Highlight the row of the user for whom you want to create customer defaults.
3. Click **Edit**.

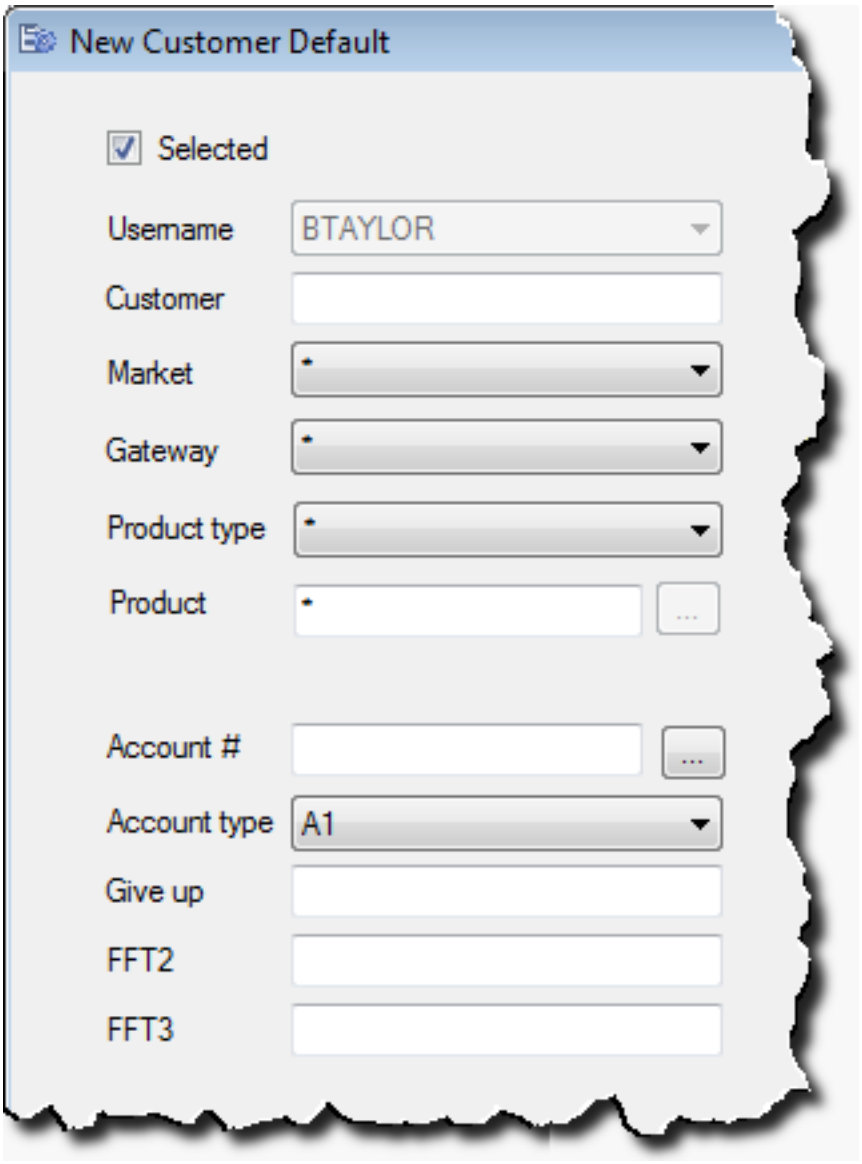
   The **Edit User** window appears.

4. From the **X_TRADER/X_RISK** tab, click the **X_TRADER Customer Defaults** tab.



5. Click **New**.

   The **New Customer Default** window appears.



6. In the **Customer** field, enter a unique identifier (e.g. CUST1).
7. Enter additional data in the applicable fields as needed.
8. Check the **Selected** option to enable the customer default.
9. Click **Save and Add New**.
10. Repeat Steps 6-9 until multiple Customers have been created.
11. Click **Save**.

You have successfully set up customer default records for multiple customers.

How to Update Customer Defaults Across Multiple Users Simultaneously

Assume there are multiple users in your system placing orders for a customer (DMiller), and that the account number associated with DMiller is 1091982.

In this tutorial you will learn to update the default account number being used by several of your users when entering orders for **DMILLER**.

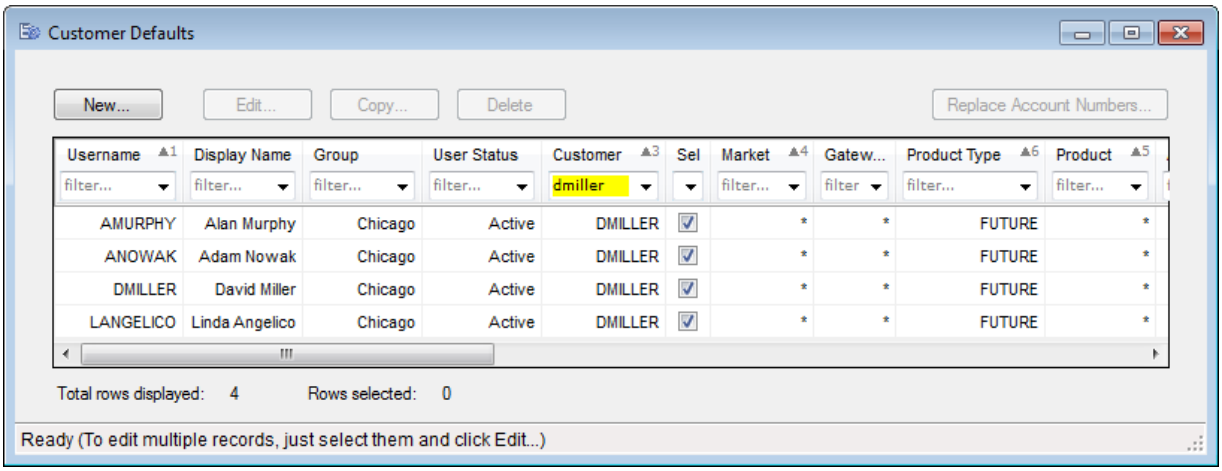
To simultaneously update the account number being used by several users:

1. From the **User Admin** menu, select **X_TRADER Customer Defaults**.

   The **Customer Defaults** window appears.

   Note: All customer default rows with <DEFAULT> as the Customer are displayed with a blue background.

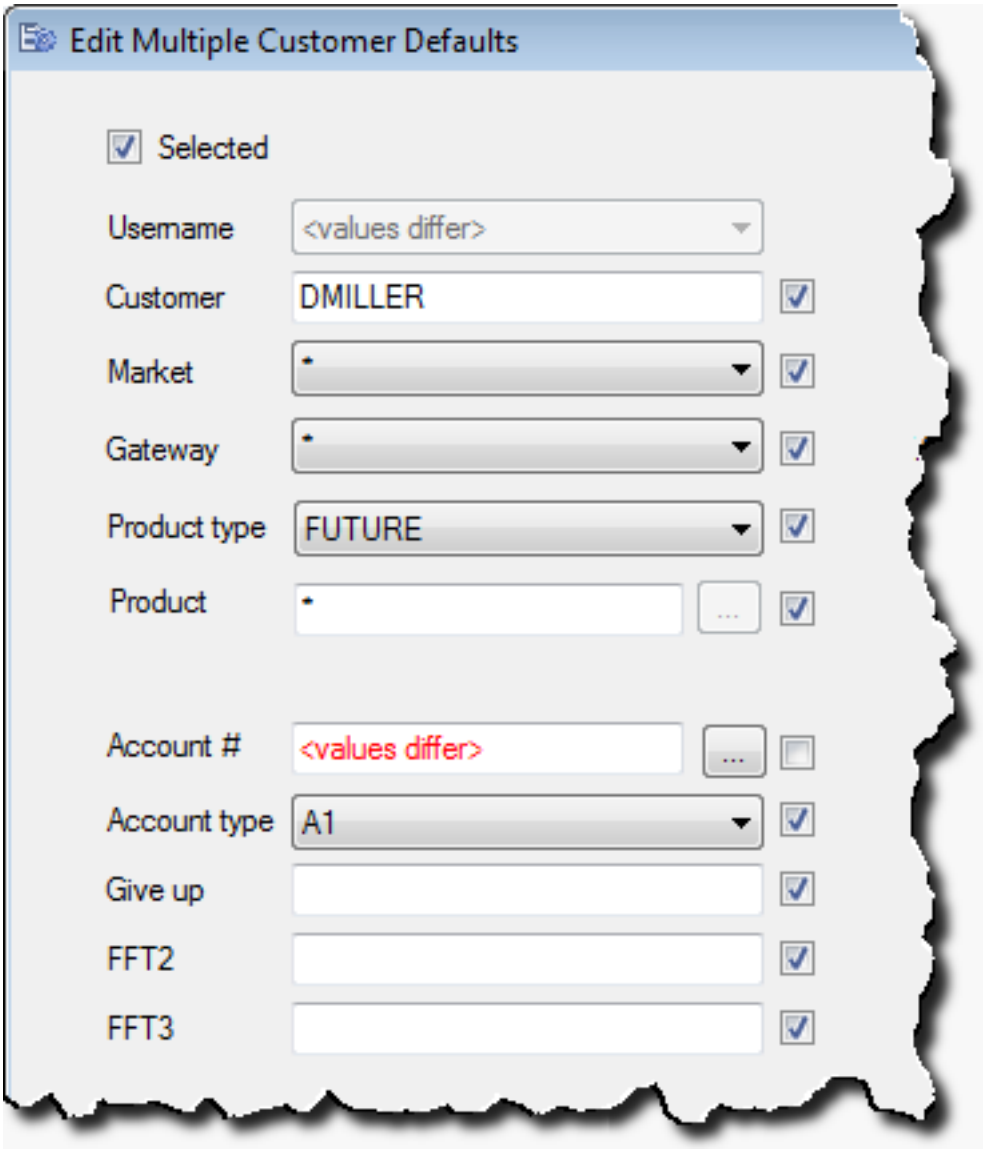
2. Filter the **Customer** column by **DMILLER**.



3. Highlight all the rows with **DMILLER** in the **Customer** field.
4. Click **Edit**.

   Note: If an edit warning message appears, click **OK** to proceed.

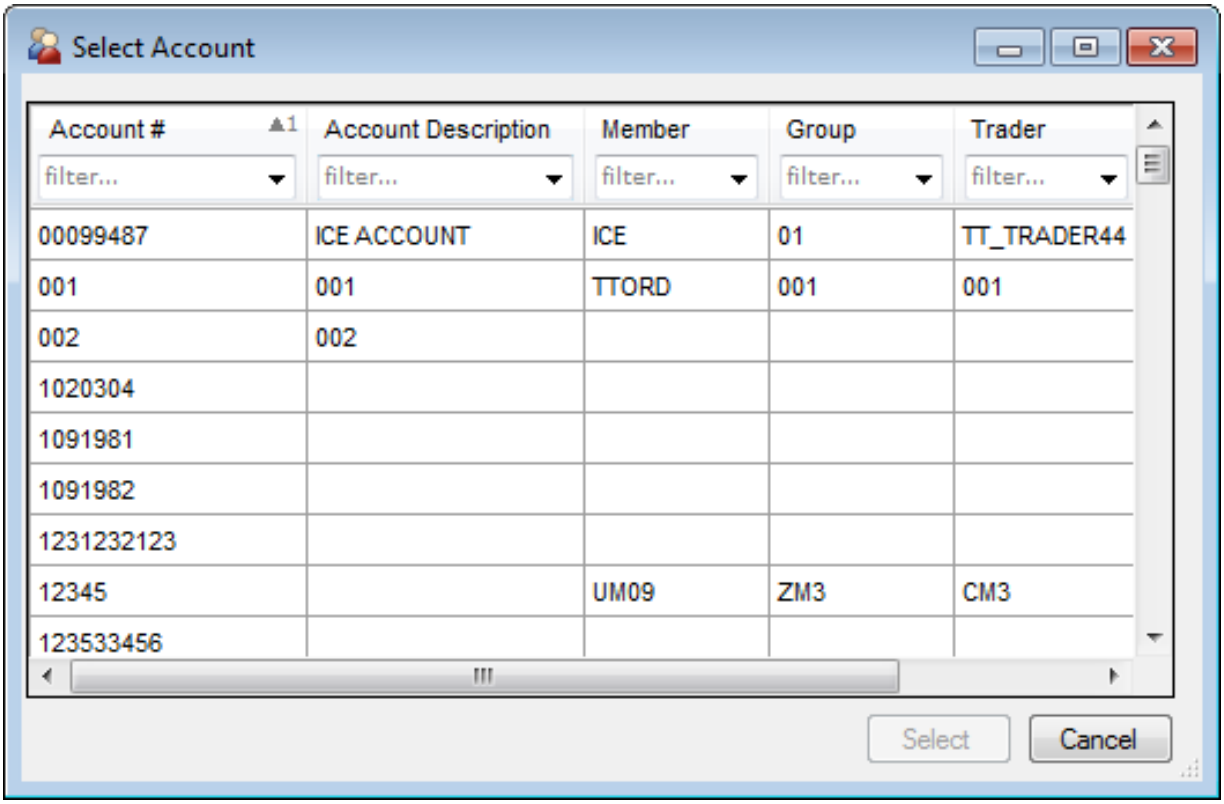
   The **Edit Multiple Customer Defaults** window appears.



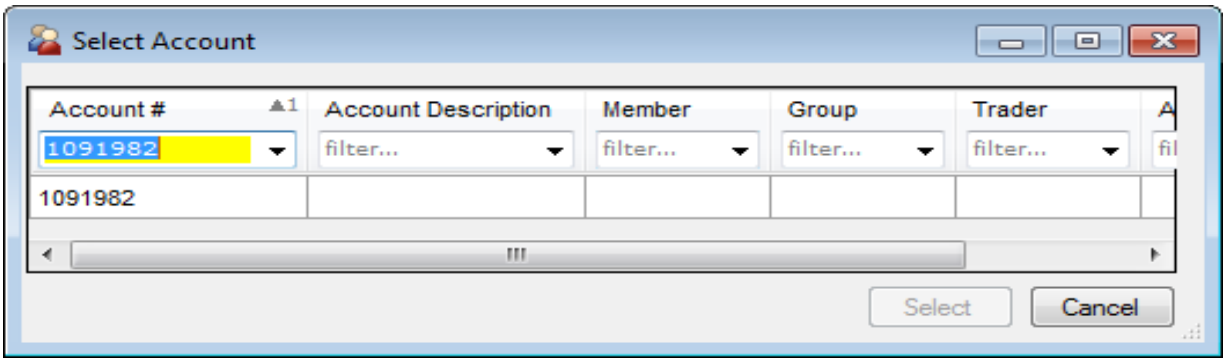
Note: Columns containing various values display **<values differ>** (e.g. One row may have CME as the **Market** value and another may have Eurex).

5. In the **Account #** field, click the ellipsis button.

   The **Select Account** window appears.



6. Filter the **Account #** field by **1091982**.

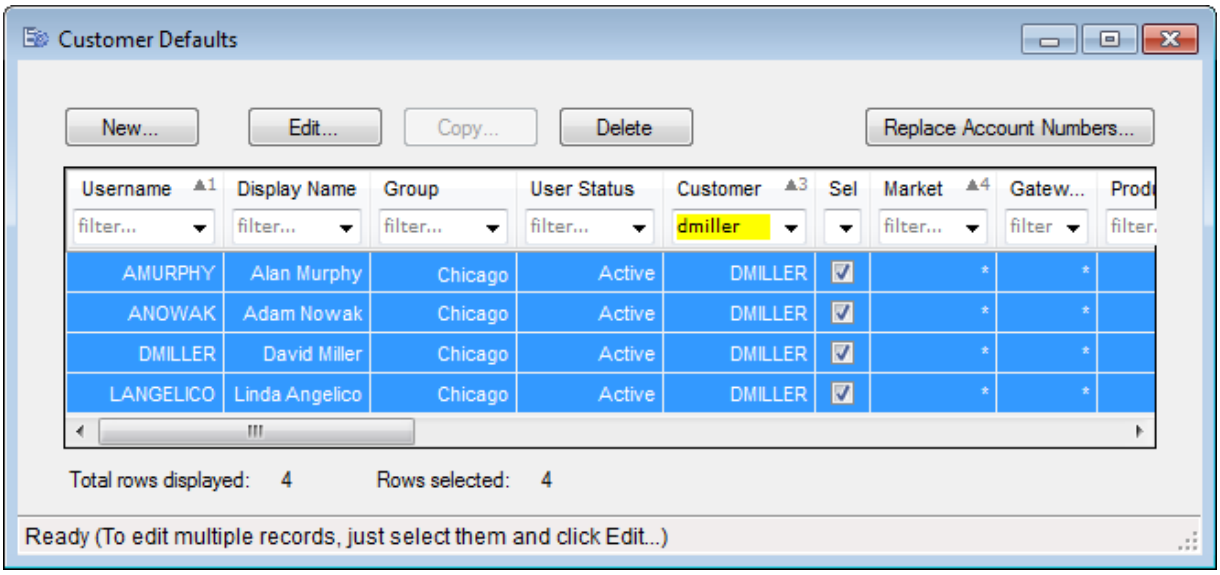


7. Highlight the row with an **Account Description** of **DMiller** and click **Select** .

   The **Account #** field on the **Edit Multiple Customer Defaults** window is populated.

8. Click **Save**.

   The **Customer Defaults** window updates to reflect the change in the account number.



How to Review Changes Prior to Publishing to Guardian

In this tutorial you will learn how to use the **Publish to Guardian** window. This includes:

- How to recognize when Guardian and TT User Setup data are out of synch.
- How to recognize when there are differences between Guardian and TT User Setup data.
- How to read data in the **Publish to Guardian** window.
- How to import data from Guardian.

To publish records to Guardian:

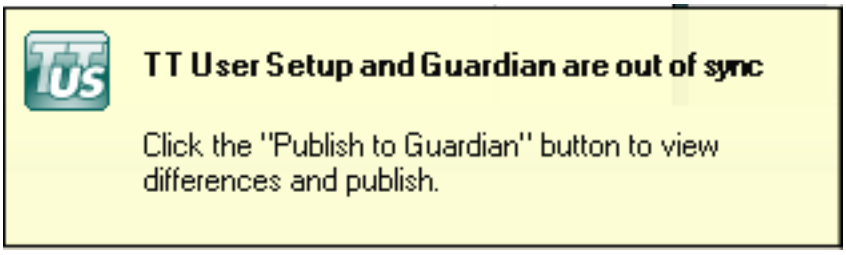
1. From the **File** menu, select **Publish to Guardian** (or click the **Publish to Guardian** icon on the toolbar).

   The **Publish to Guardian** window appears.

2. Highlight the differences you want to publish.
3. Click the **Publish Selected Gateway Logins to Guardian** button.

   Recognizing when Guardian and TT User Setup data is out of sync

   TT User Setup provides a pop-up message window that notifies you when data needs to be published to Guardian. This message appears automatically when you make a change that causes TT User Setup and Guardian to be out of sync. The message also appears if you open the TT User Setup client when TT User Setup and Guardian are out of sync.

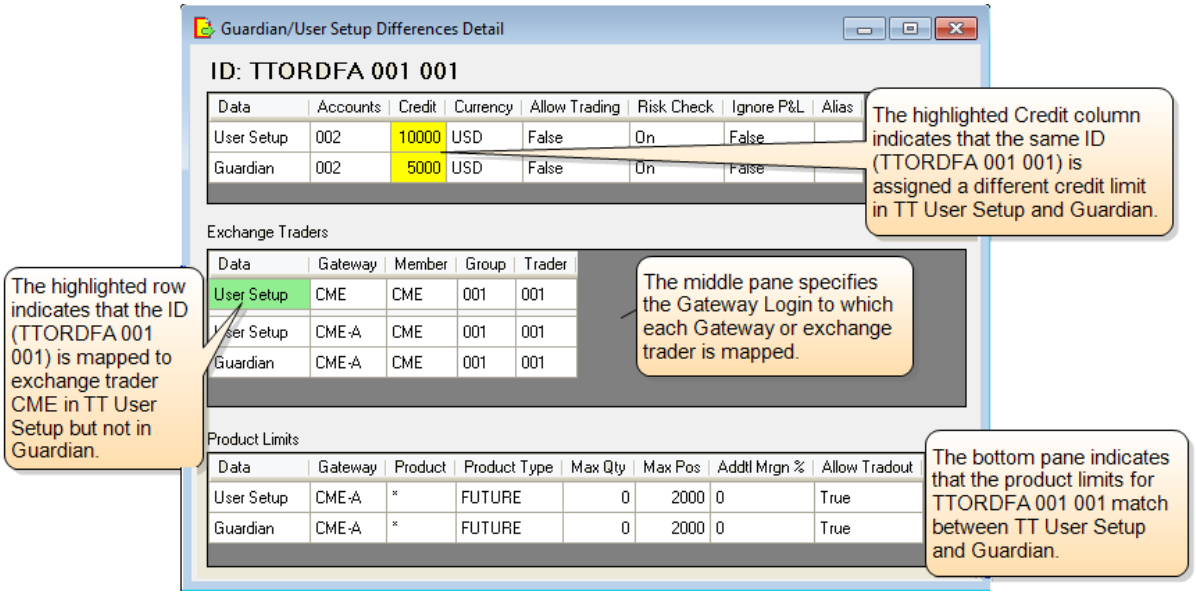


Understanding differences in Guardian and TT User Setup data

TT User Setup provides a detailed account of differences that exist between TT User Setup and Guardian data prior to publishing. You can use the information provided to reconcile these differences.

The **Guardian/User Setup Differences Details** window consists of three panes; one providing specific account and gateway login information, another showing gateway and exchange trader data, and a third illustrating established product limits.

The image below shows how differences are displayed and describes some sample differences.



To access the Differences Details window:

1. From the **File** menu, select **Publish to Guardian.**

   -or-

   On the toolbar, click the **Publish to Guardian** icon.

The **Publish to Guardian** window appears.

2. Click a single differences row.
3. Click **View Differences Details**.

The **Guardian/User Setup Differences Details** window appears.

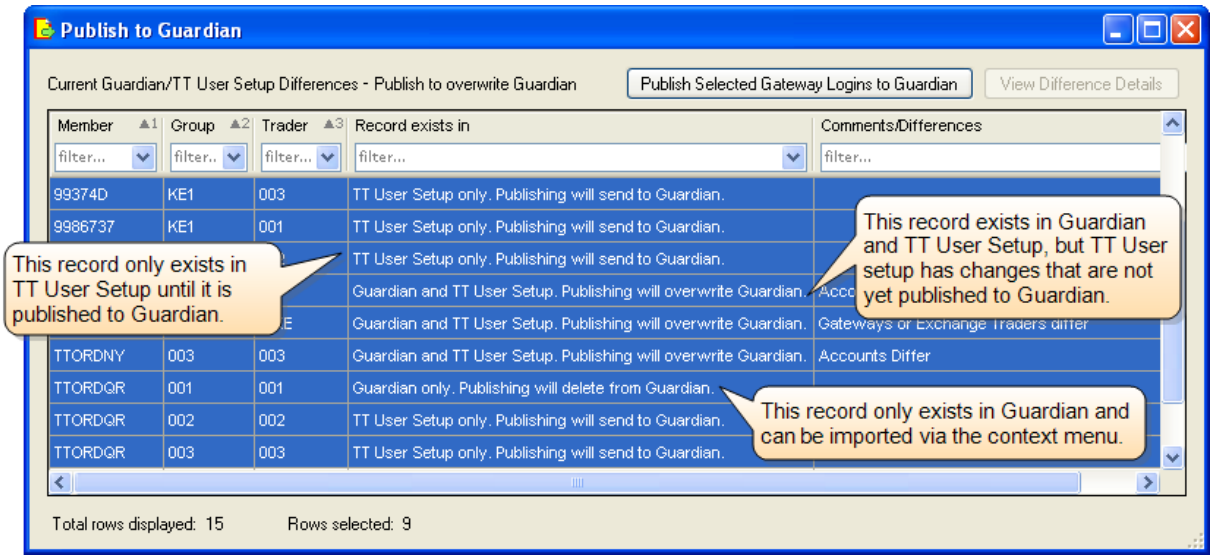
Reading data in the Publish to Guardian window

The **Publish to Guardian** window specifies differences in trader data between TT User Setup and Guardian and allows you to publish that data in order to synchronize both systems.

Publishable records are categorized into one of the three following options and assist in defining differences:

- **TT User Setup only** - Applies to unpublished gateway logins created in TT User Setup.
- **Guardian and TT User Setup** - Applies to records where, for example, a TT User Setup login is mapped to an exchange to which the same Guardian login is not mapped.
- **Guardian only** - Applies to unpublished trader IDs created in Guardian.

The image below shows how differences can be displayed.



TT User Setup does not support setting up risk in Guardian. However, for instances where risk was published outside of TT User Setup (e.g. records exist in Guardian only), you can use the Import from Guardian option.

Note: Because TT User Setup automatically imports all trader data from Guardian when the TT User Setup Server starts up, you will rarely use this functionality.

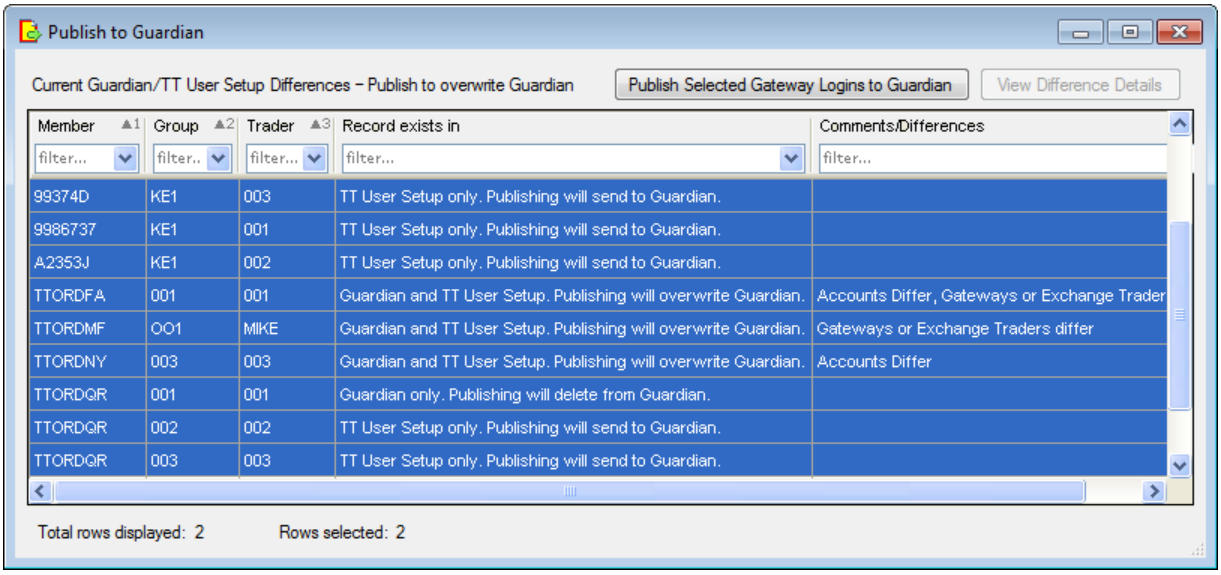
To import data from Guardian:

1. From the **File** menu, select **Publish to Guardian.**

   -or-

   On the toolbar, click the **Publish to Guardian** icon.

   The **Publish to Guardian** window appears.



2. Right-click in the grid display to open a context menu.

3. Click **Import from Guardian (Advanced)**.
4. To import additional gateway logins, on the Import message, click **OK**.

   After importing, the highlighted records (that were Guardian Only) appear in the **Gateway Logins** window. Matching values for records that are both Guardian and TT User setup will be overwritten.

   Note: Records are never deleted from TT User Setup after importing, but are appended instead.

   Once imported, the Guardian Only entries from the **Guardian/TT User Setup Differences** window will no longer be displayed.

How to Change the Message Users Receive When Their Logins Fail

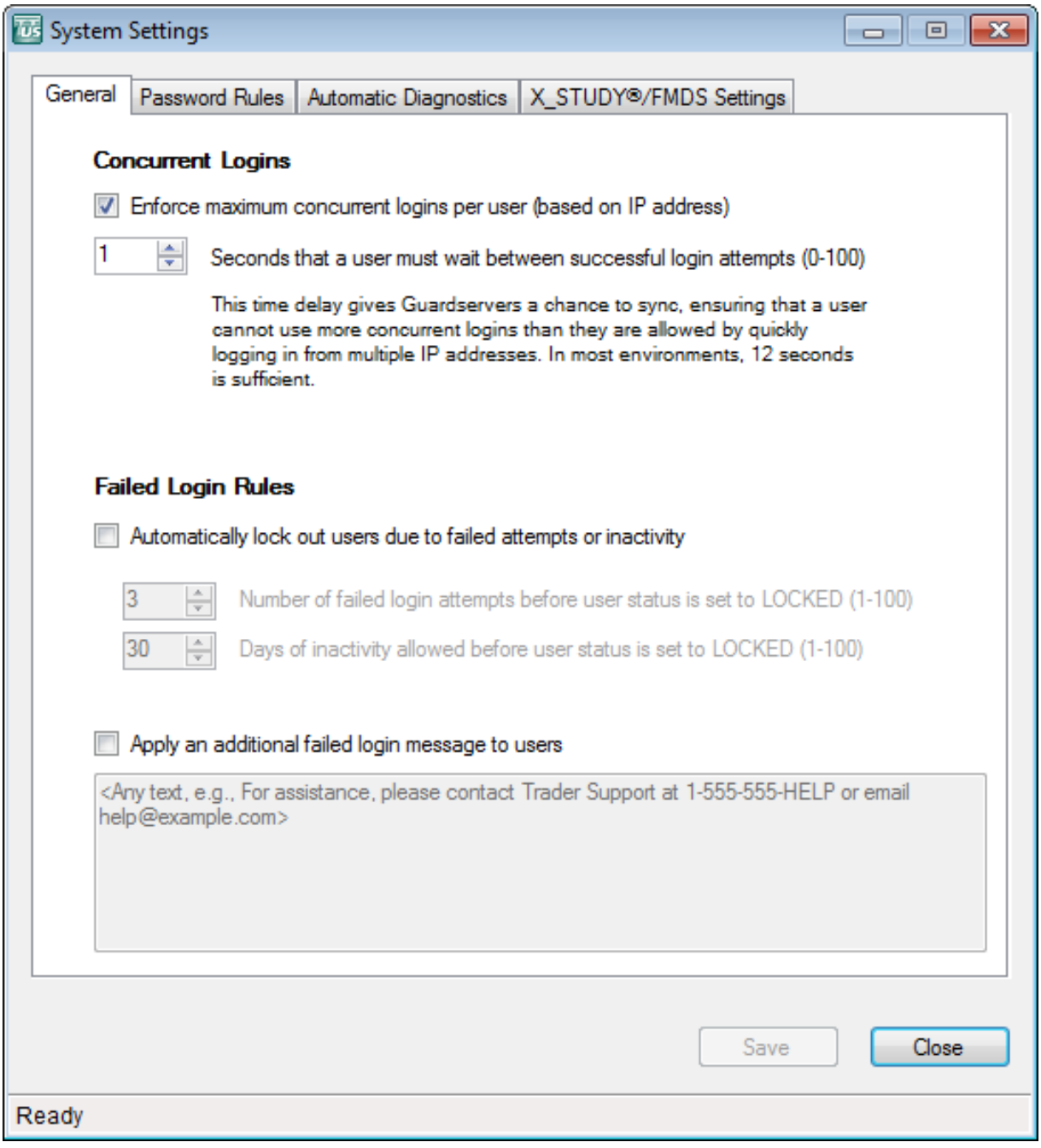
This tutorial shows how an administrator edits the message the users receive after a failed login attempt.

To enable and edit the failed login attempt message your users receive:

1. From the **Server Admin** menu, select **System Settings**.

   The **System Settings** window appears.

2. Select the **General** tab.



3. In the **Failed Login Attempts** section, check the **Apply an additional failed login message to users** option to enable the functionality.
4. In the corresponding free-form text box, edit the default message or create an entirely new message.
5. Click **Save** and then click **Close**.

   Note: TT User Setup displays the additional failed login message after a failed login attempt.

How to Use Wildcard Characters in Filters

In this tutorial you will learn how to use wildcard characters to filter the **Gateway Login** window's **Gateway** column for all A-flavored gateways. This allows you t locate specific user and login data more quickly.

Wildcard character options include the following:

- + is a wildcard used to match multiple characters.
- ? is a wildcard used to match a single character.

To use a wildcard character to filter for all A-flavored gateways:

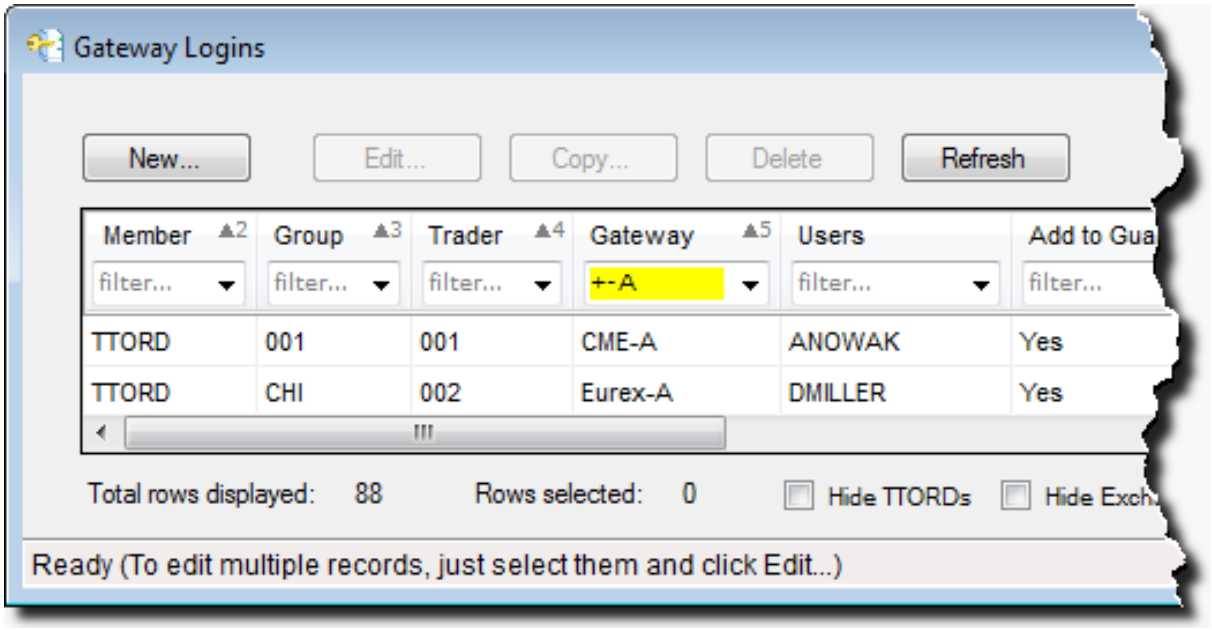
1. From the **User Admin** menu, select **Gateway Logins**.

   The **Gateway Logins** window appears.

   Note: Wildcard characters can be used when filtering a column in any window with a grid display.

2. Click in the filter display in the **Gateway** column header.
3. Type the following: **+-A**.

   The **Gateway** column displays only A-flavored gateways.



You have successfully filtered the Gateway column for all A-flavored gateways.

How to Set Up a Tiered Administrator

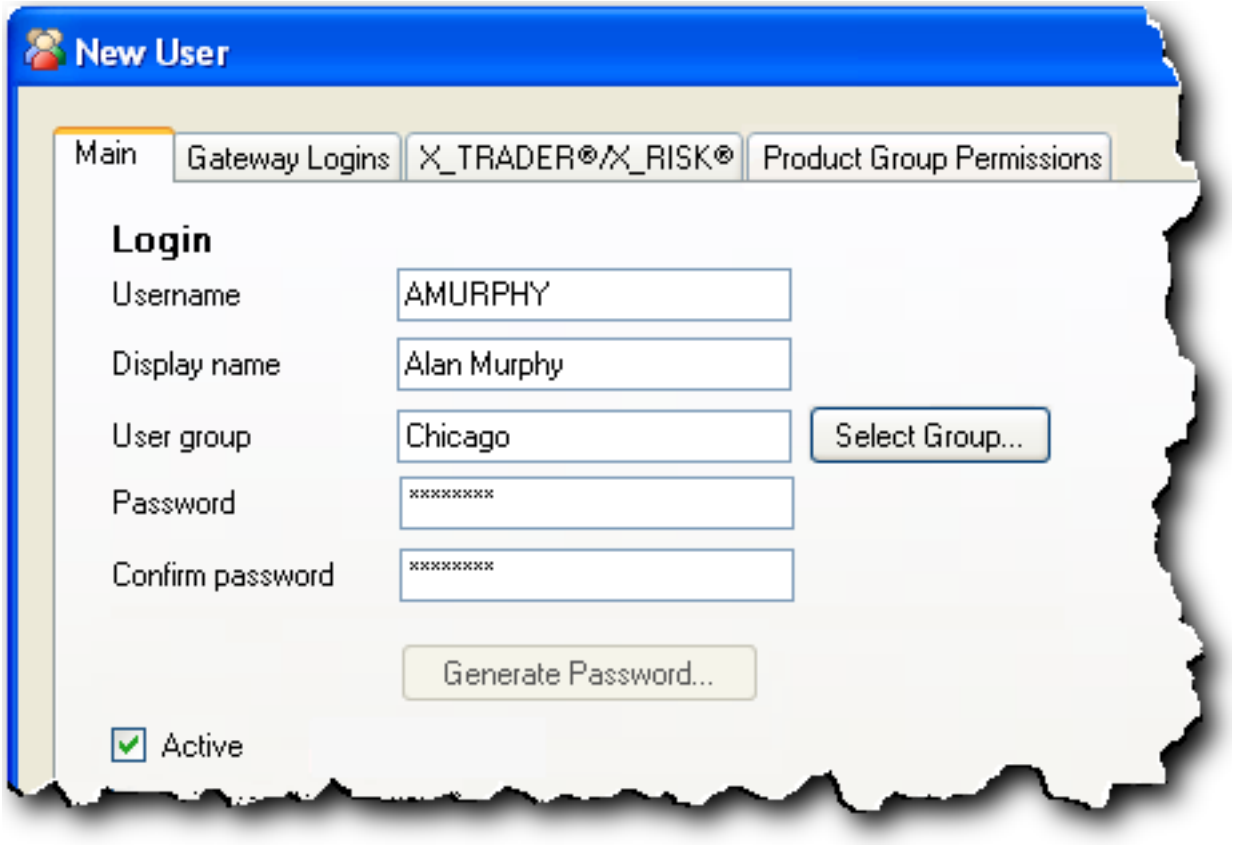
In this tutorial you will learn how to setup a new Group Administrator (AMURPHY). After creating the Group Admin user, you will give the user access to the user group (Chicago) that you will also create. In addition, this tutorial will illustrate how to assign gateway logins to a user group, select the user groups that a group administrator can manage, enable the permission to create direct trader gateway logins, and edit the user group of multiple users.

To set up a group administrator:

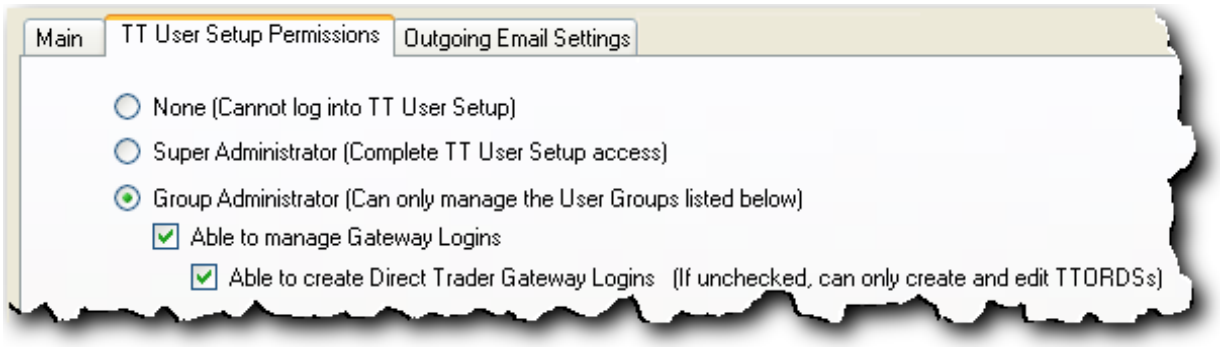
1. From the **User Admin** menu, select **Users.**
2. In the **Users** window, set the **New User View** to **TT User Setup Admin fields**.
3. Click **New**.

   The **New User** window appears.

4. On the **Main** tab, enter the appropriate Login data, including **Username** (e.g. AMURPHY), and any additional data in the applicable fields.

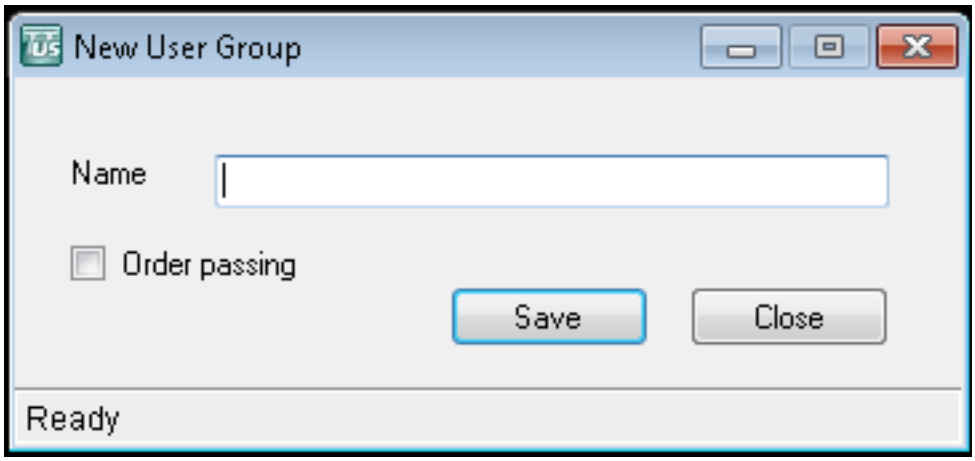


5. Click **Save**.
6. Click the **TT User Setup Permissions** tab and select the **Group Administration** option.



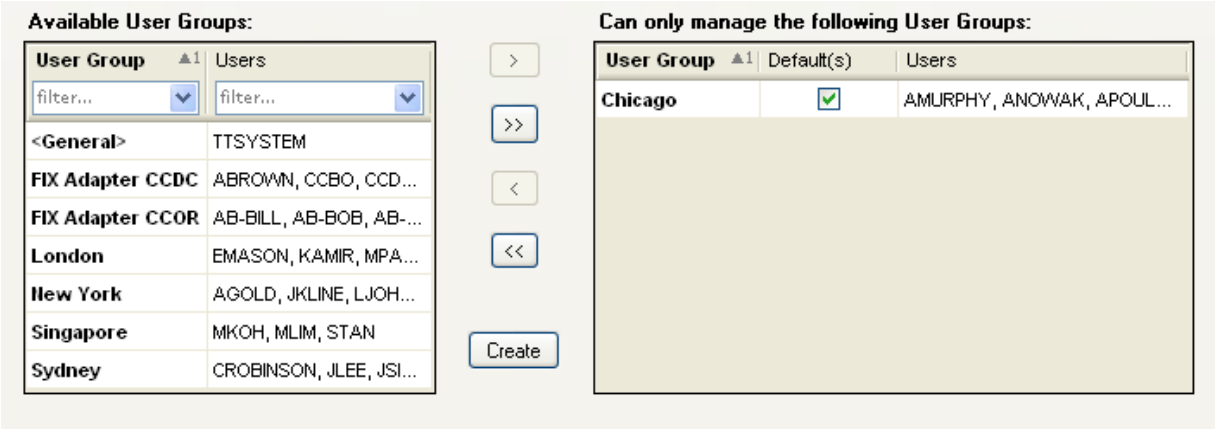
7. Ensure the **Able to create Direct Trader Gateway Logins** option is selected.
8. If the group that this administrator will manage is not in the **Available User Groups** list, click **Create**.

   The **New User Group** window appears.



9. Enter the Name of a new group (e.g. Chicago), and click **Save**.

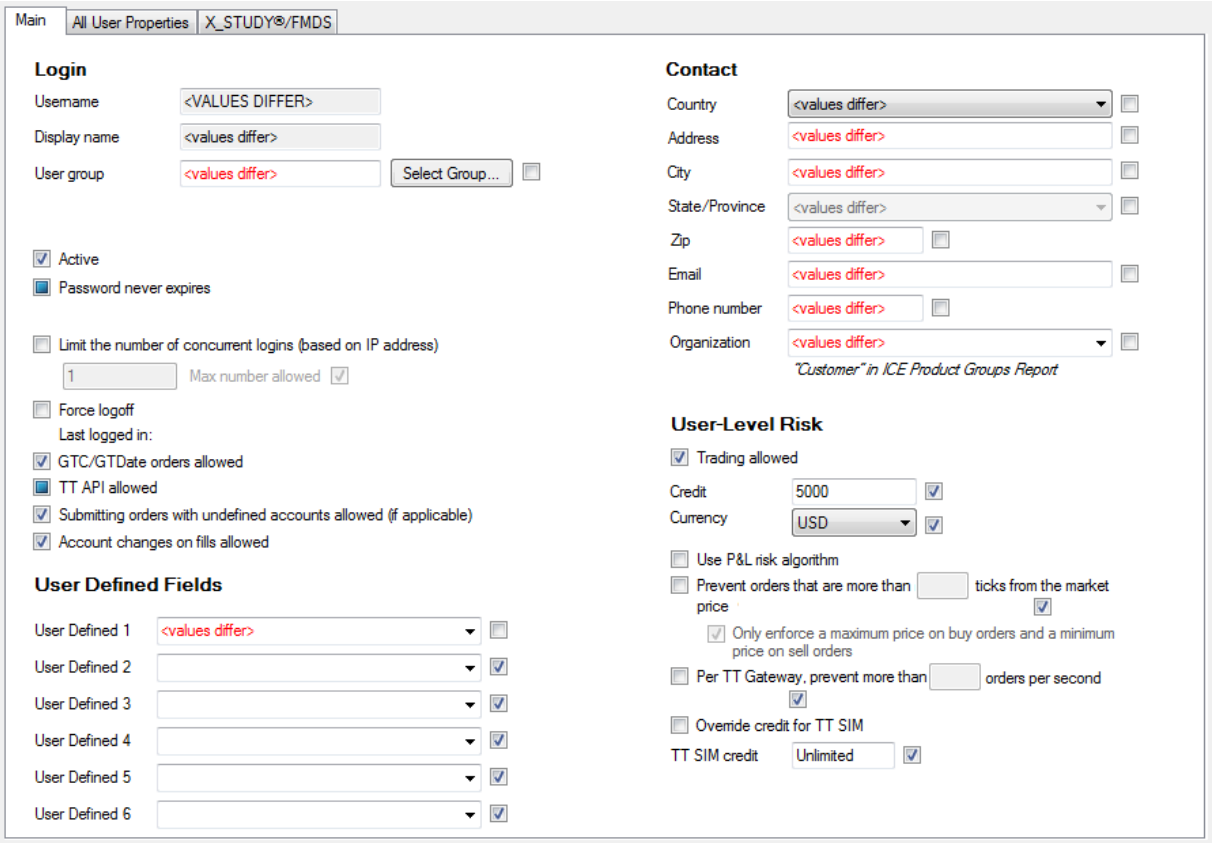
   The new group is added automatically to the **Can only manage the following User Groups** pane.



   Note: If the **Default(s)** option is checked, any direct traders created by the Group Administrator automatically go into that default group (e.g. Chicago).

10. Click **Save** and then click **Close**.
11. On the **Users** window, select (highlight) multiple users and click **Edit**.
12. On the Edit Multiple Records warning, click **OK** to proceed.

    The **Edit Multiple Users** window appears.

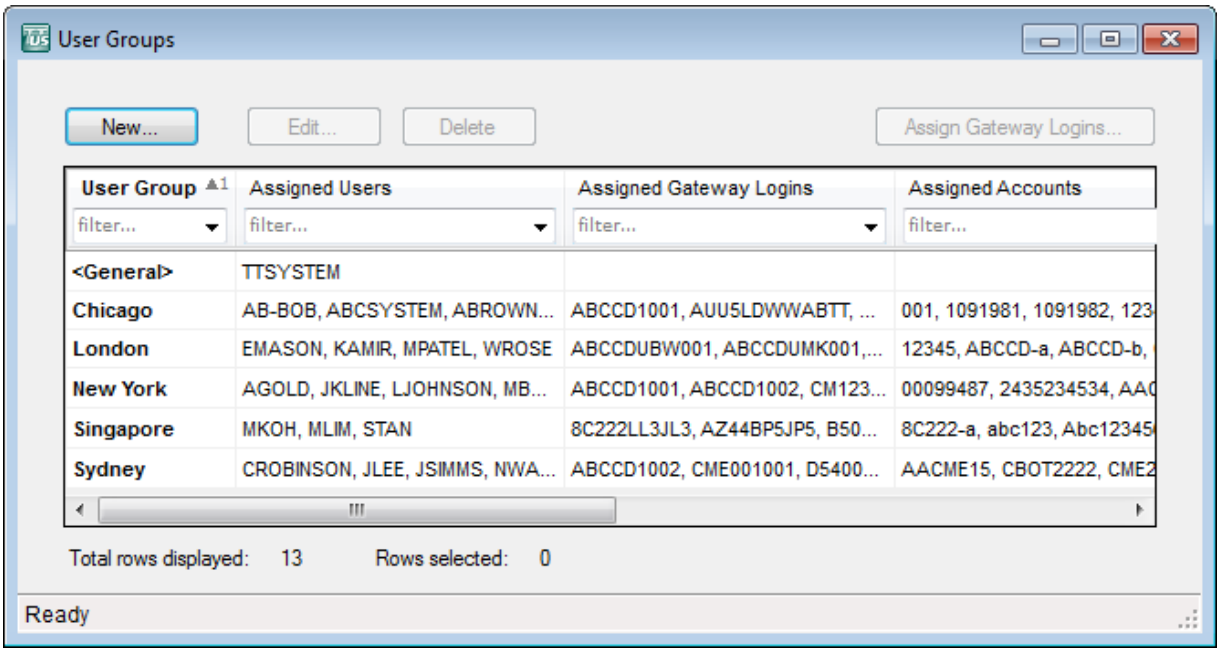


13. From the **User group** field, click **Select Group**.

    The **Select User Group** window appears.

14. Highlight the **Chicago** option and click **Select**.
15. On the **Edit Multiple Users** window, click **Save** and then **Close** .
16. Close the **Users** window.
17. From the **User Admin** menu, select **User Groups**.

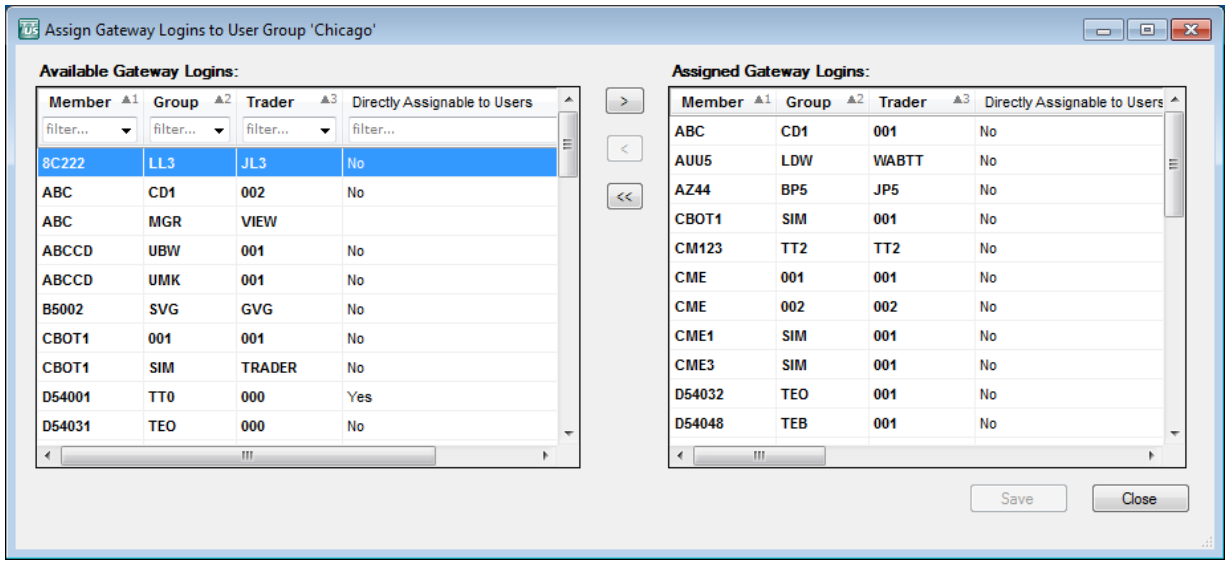
    The **User Groups** window appears.



18. Click the **Chicago** user group, and click **Assign Gateway Logins**.

    The **Assign Gateway Logins to User Group 'Chicago'** window appears.

    Note: The **Assign Gateway Logins** section shows that you inherit any gateway logins mapped to the users you added to the user group. This rule also applies to accounts.



19. Assign additional gateway logins and click **Save**.
20. To test the group administrator's permissions, logout of TT User Setup, and then log back in using the login of the user you created (e.g. AMURPHY). If this is the first time logging in, the system prompts you to change the password.

The **Users** window only displays the users that belong to the group(s) that the group administrator is allowed to manage.

How to Set Up a Drop Copy TT FIX Adapter Server and Corresponding FIX Adapter Clients

In this tutorial, you will learn how to set up IDs for a Drop Copy TT FIX Adapter server as well as FIX Adapter client users that will connect to it. After creating the IDs, you will then be able to assign the FIX Adapter clients to the FIX Adapter server. The following example demonstrates these tasks.

Example: ClearCo hosts three TT Gateways (CME-A, Eurex-A, and LIFFE-C) used by traders at two separate firms, AB Asset Management and YZ Capital. The credentials used by the traders at these firms for all TT Gateways are as follows:

AB Asset Management:	YZ Capital:
TTORDAB / 001 / 001	TTORDYZ / 001 / 001
TTORDAB / 001 / 002	TTORDYZ / 001 / 002
TTORDAB / 002 / 001	TTORDYZ / 002 / 001
TTORDAB / 002 / 002	TTORDYZ / 002 / 002
TTORDAB / 003 / 001	TTORDYZ / 003 / 001
TTORDAB / 004 / 001	TTORDYZ / 004 / 001

These firms require a copy of all fills for all of their traders. ClearCo's Back Office Department also requires a copy of all fills for all traders.

Based on these requirements, ClearCo needs to set up a new Drop Copy TT FIX Adapter Server (CCDC) and three FIX Adapter client users (AB, YZ, and CCBO).

Complete all of the sections in both of the following topics:

Creating TT FIX Adapter Servers

Creating a Drop Copy TT FIX Adapter Server in TT User Setup consists of the following tasks:

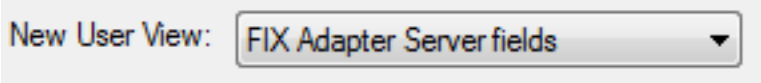
Creating a FIX Adapter Server Username

To create a FIX Adapter Server username

1. From the **TT User Setup Control Panel**, open the **User Admin** menu and click **Users**.

   The **Users** window appears.

2. From the **New User View** list select **FIX Adapter Server fields**.



3. Click **New**.

   The **New User** window appears.

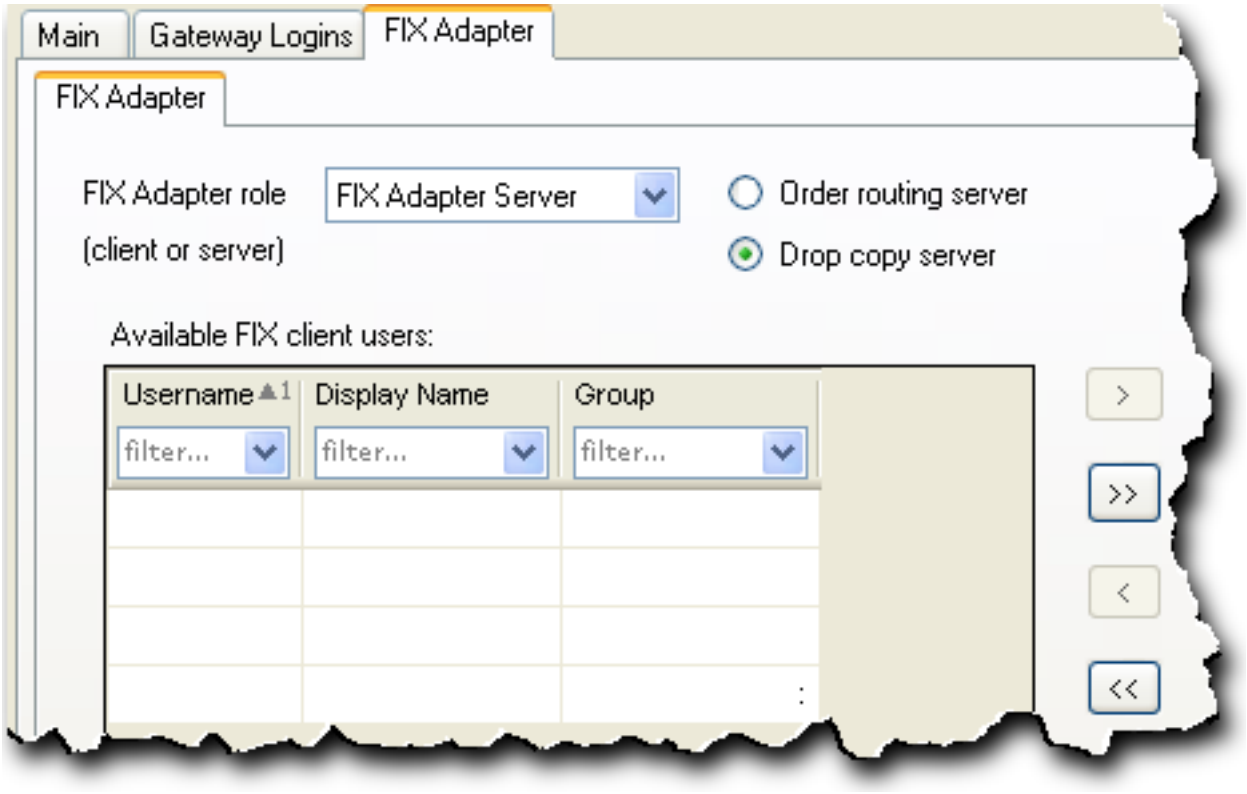
4. On the **Main** tab, enter data in the following fields:
   - **Username**: An identifier for the TT FIX Adapter Server (limited to 11 characters).
   - **Display name**: An identifier for the TT FIX Adapter Server.
   - **User group**: An identifier used to categorize users (e.g., Chicago). For a detailed description on user groups, refer to the *TT User Setup User Guide*.
   - **Password/Confirm password**: The password associated with this username, which is used to authenticate TT FIX Adapter Servers.
   - **Country**: The location of the TT FIX Adapter Server machine.
   - **Zip**: The Zip code in which the TT FIX Adapter Server machine is located. **Zip** is necessary only if the **Country** selected is the **United States**.

   The following figure shows the **Login** and **Contact** sections of **Main** tab for the new FIX Adapter Server, CCDC.

TT recommends that you leave the **Password never expires** option checked.

5. On the **New User** window, click the **FIX Adapter** tab. If a version requirement message appears, click **OK**.

   The **FIX Adapter Role** field automatically populates with **FIX Adapter Server**. If FIX client users have been created, they appear in the **Available FIX client users** or **The following FIX client users can connect to this FIX Adapter** table. If FIX client users have not been created, these tables are empty.



6. Click the **Drop copy server** radio button.
7. Continue to the next section.

Assigning TT Gateway Credentials

When creating a Drop Copy TT FIX Adapter, you must designate the credentials (called gateway log-ins) that the user uses to login to the TT Gateways. TT FIX Adapter Server logs into each TT Gateway once and acts on behalf of all FIX Adapter client users. Thus, the gateway logins (MGTs) that the TT FIX Adapter server uses to log into the TT Gateways must have the authority to act on behalf of all FIX Adapter client users. Specifically, the MGTs TT FIX Adapter Server uses to log into the TT Gateways must have permissions to view all orders and fills of all FIX Adapter client users.

In our example:

- TT FIX Adapter client user AB requires a copy of all fills for all traders with a Member ID of TTORDAB.
- TT FIX Adapter client user YZ requires a copy of all fills for all traders with a Member ID of TTORDYZ.
- TT FIX Adapter client user CCBO requires a copy of all fills for all traders.

The credentials that have permissions to view all of these fills is TTADM/XXX/VIEW.

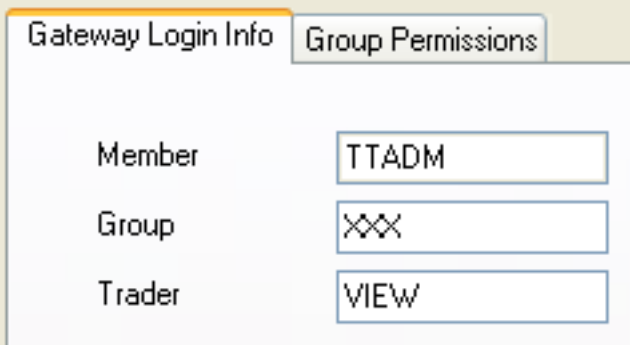
To assign credentials to the FIX Adapter Server user

1. On the **New User** or **Edit User** window for the CCDC user, click the **Gateway Logins** tab.
2. If the gateway login to which you want to map does not exist, click **New**.

   The **New Gateway Login** window appears.

   If the gateway login already exists, click the **Assign Existing Logins** button, and select the appropriate MGT(s).

3. On the **Gateway Login Info** tab, enter a **Member**, **Group**, and **Trader**. The following figure shows a new gateway login (TTADM/XXX/VIEW) for the new TT FIX Adapter server user, CCDC.



   For a detailed description of the various types of logins used in a TT environment, refer to the *TT User Login and Risk Administration Reference Guide*.

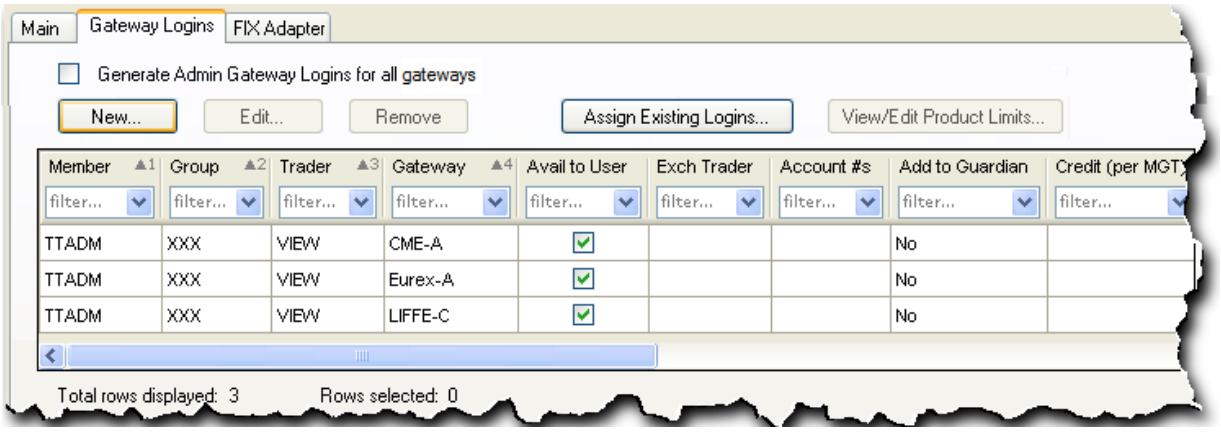
4. Click the **Add Gateways** button.

   The **Select Gateway** window appears.

   A TT FIX Adapter Server must be configured to connect to the TT Gateways from which the associated FIX Adapter client users require fills.

5. Hold down the **Ctrl** key, click **CME-A**, **Eurex-A**, and **LIFFE-C** gateway options, and click the **Select** button.
6. On the **New Gateway Login** window, click the **Save** button. If a message that this gateway login is tied to multiple gateways appears, click **OK**.

   TT User Setup returns to the **Gateway Login** tab of the **New User** or **Edit User** window.



7. Save and close the **New User** or **Edit User** window.
8. Continue to the next section.

Creating TT FIX Adapter Client Users

Creating a TT FIX Adapter client user in TT User Setup that connects to a Drop Copy TT FIX Adapter consists of the following tasks:

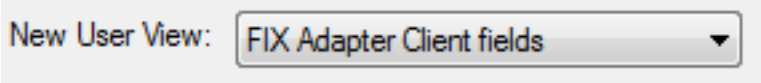
Creating a FIX Adapter Client Username

▶ To create a client username

1. From the **TT User Setup Control Panel**, open the **User Admin** menu and click **Users**.

   The **Users** window appears.

2. From the **New User View** list select **FIX Adapter Client fields**.



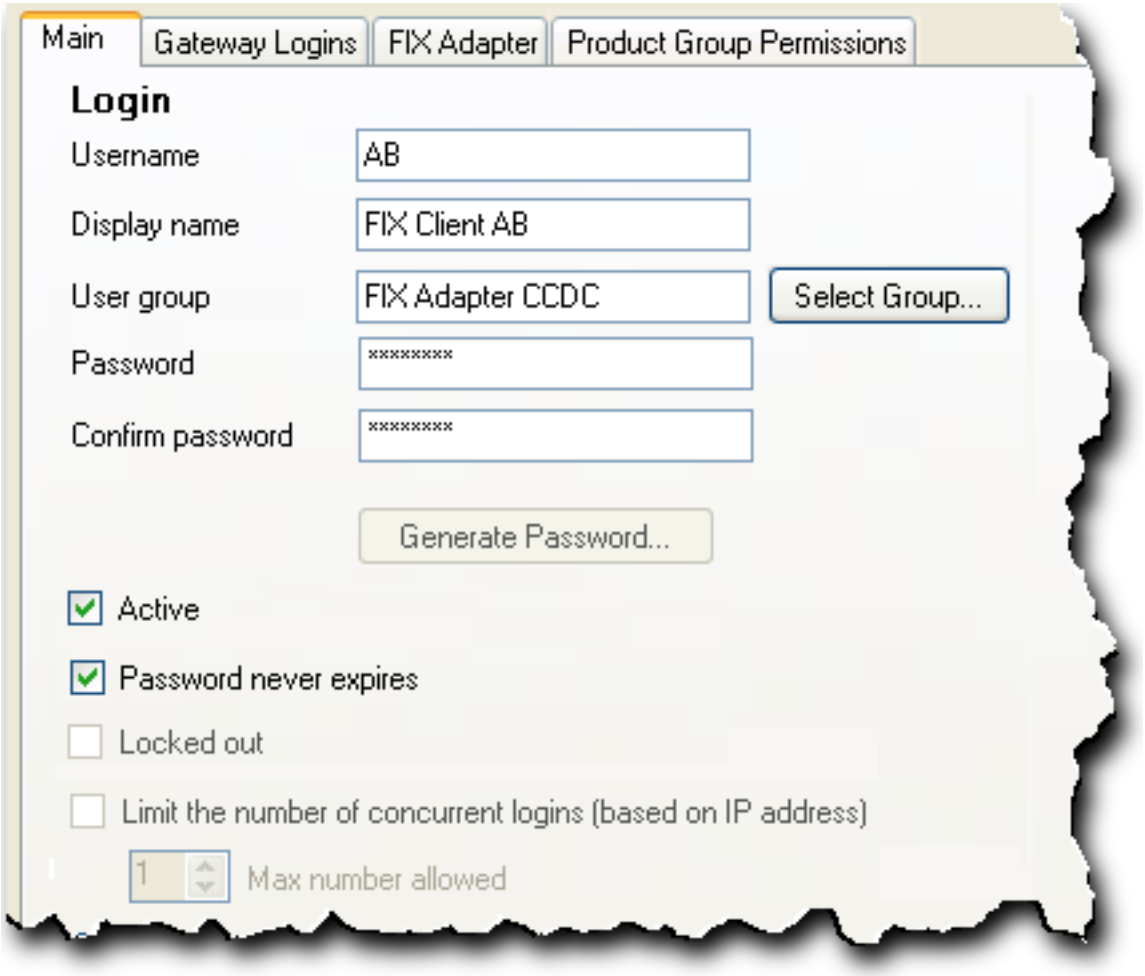
3. Click **New**.

   The **New User** window appears.

4. On the **Main** tab, enter data in the following fields:
5. **Username**: The name of the FIX Adapter client user. In FIX, this is also known as RemoteCompId.
6. **Display name**: An identifier for the TT FIX Adapter client user.
7. **User group**: An identifier used to categorize users (e.g., FIX Adapter). For a detailed description on user groups, refer to the *TT User Setup User Guide*.

8. **Password/Confirm Password**: The password associated with this username which is used to authenticate TT FIX Adapter client users.

   The following shows the **Login** section of the **Main** tab for new TT FIX Adapter Client, AB.



   Because FIX Adapter client users are unable to update an expired password using the same procedure as an **X_TRADER** user, TT recommends that you leave the **Password never expires** option checked.

   For information about the other user fields, refer to the *TT User Setup User Guide*.

9. Repeat this procedure to create users YZ and CCBO
10. Continue to the next procedure.

Assigning TT Gateway Credentials

When creating a TT FIX Adapter client user that connects to a Drop Copy TT FIX Adapter, you must designate one or more sets of credentials (gateway logins) that have permissions to view the fills that

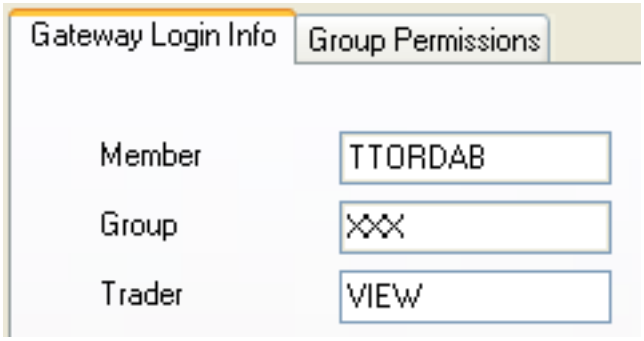
are required. This procedure is similar to setting up a TTORD in Guardian, except in TT User Setup you can create the TTORD and assign it to a FIX Adapter client in one step.

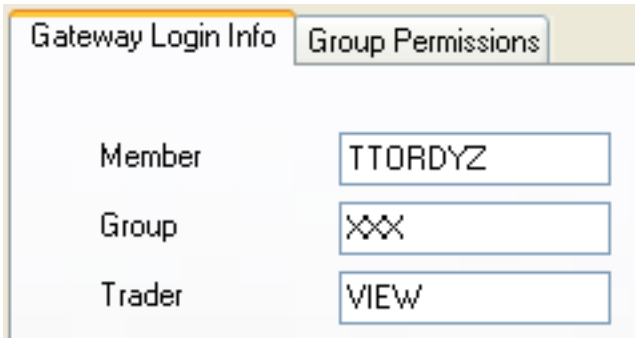
In our example:

- TT FIX Adapter client user AB requires a copy of all fills for all traders with a Member ID of TTORDAB. For this user, you could either list each MGT individually, or simply use TTORDAB/XXX/VIEW.
- TT FIX Adapter client user YZ requires a copy of all fills for all traders with a Member ID of TTORDYZ. For this user, you could either list each MGT individually, or simply use TTORDYZ/XXX/VIEW.
- TT FIX Adapter client user CCBO requires a copy of all fills for all traders. For this user, you could either list each MGT individually, or simply use TTADM/XXX/VIEW.

To assign these credentials to each of the FIX Adapter client users:

1. On the **New User** or **Edit User** window, click the **Gateway Logins** tab.
2. For our example, client user AB uses the **TTORDAB/XXX/VIEW** MGT and Client user YZ uses the **TTORDYZ/XXX/VIEW** MGT. Because neither MGT has been created, you must add new gateway logins.
    1. Click **New** to open the **New Gateway** login where you can enter gateway login information as follows:

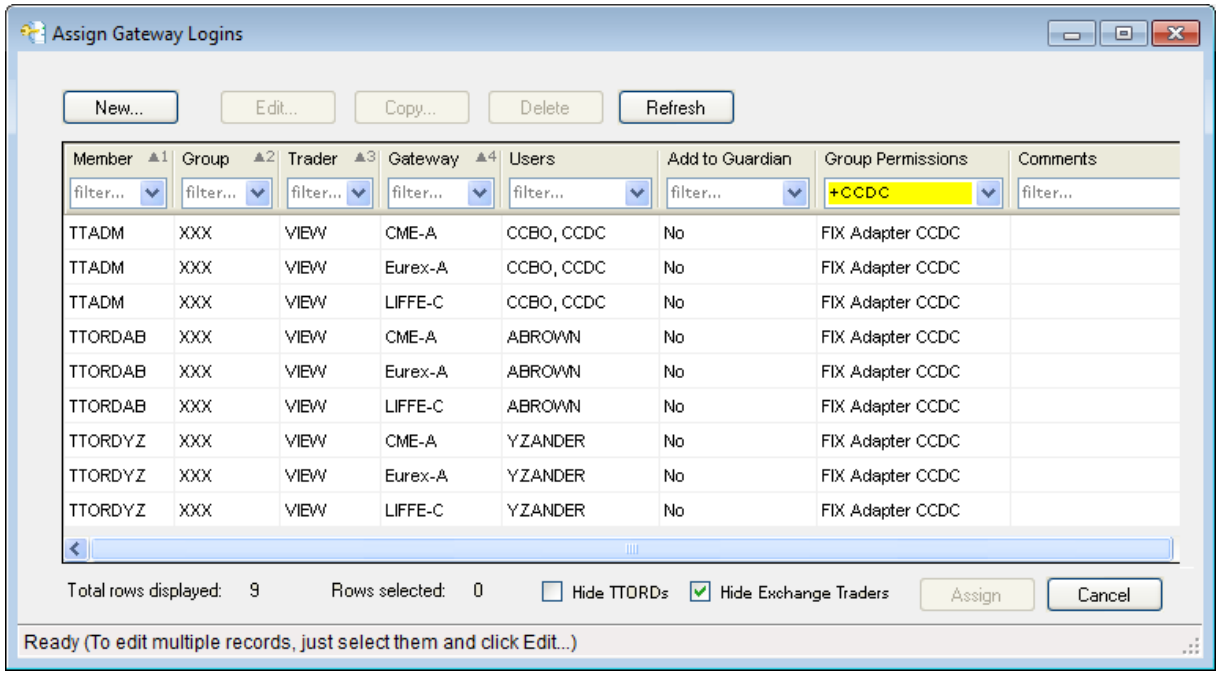




    2. Click **Add Gateways** to open the **Select Gateway** window where you can select the CME-A, Eurex-A, and LIFFE-C Gateways.

For a detailed description of the various types of logins used in a TT environment, refer to the **TT User Login and Risk Administration Reference Guide**

3. The FIX Adapter server user, however, uses the **TTADM/XXX/VIEW** MGT which we created in the "Creating a FIX Adapter Server username" on page 308 procedure. Because the MGT exists, we just need to assign the existing login to the FIX Adapter server user.
    1. Click **Assign Existing Logins**.

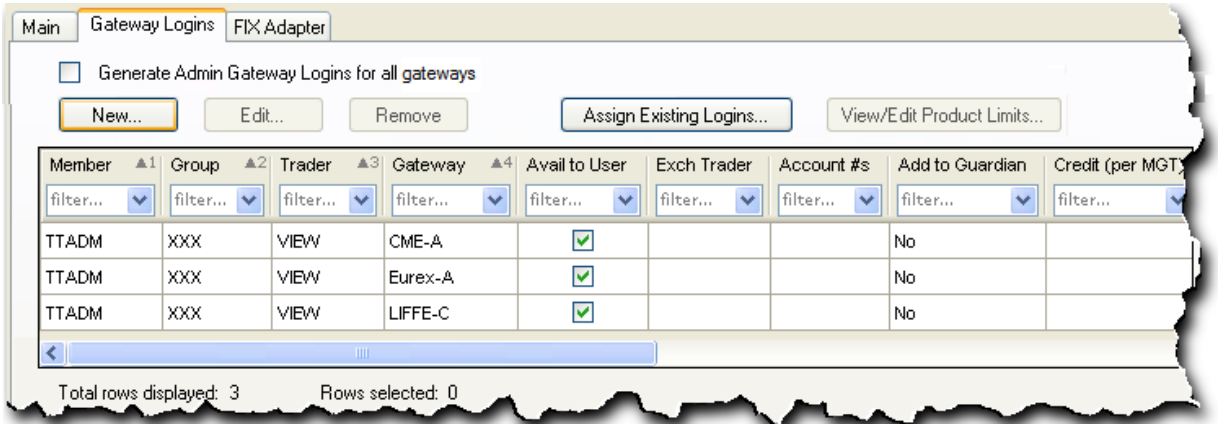


    2. Select the three **TTADM/XXX/VIEW** MGTs (use the **Member** filter to display only TTADM members if needed), and then click **Assign**.

       The **Assign Gateway Login** window appears.

4. On the **New User** or **Edit User** window, click **Save**.

   The following figure shows how the newly created gateway logins display in the **New User** or **Edit User** window.

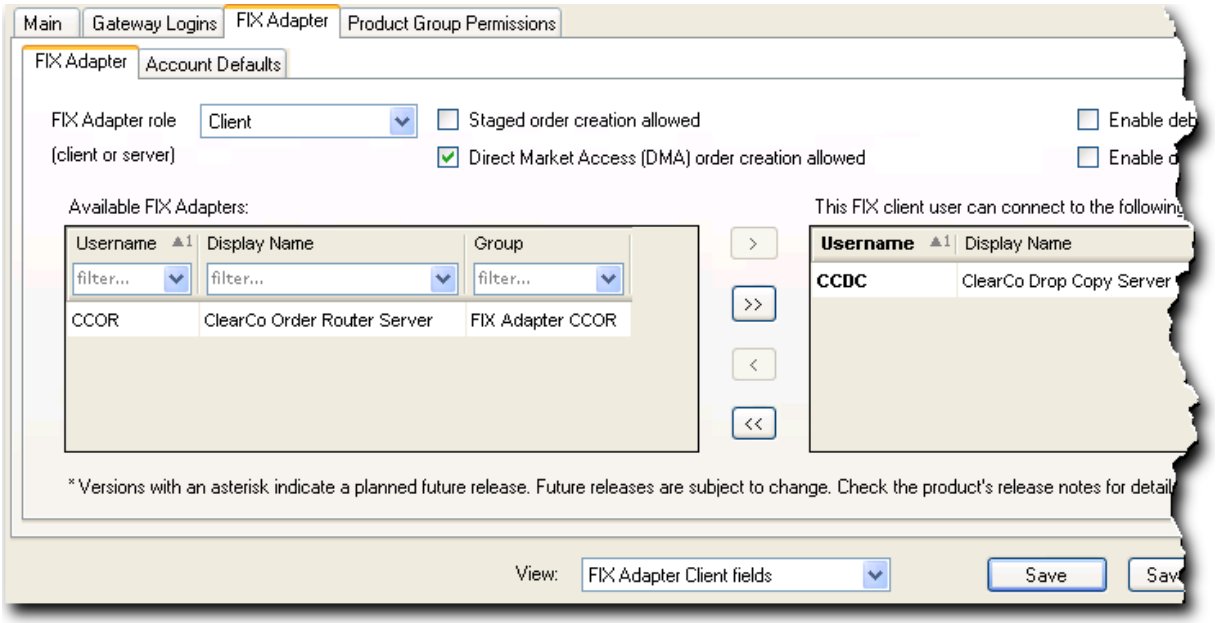


5. Continue to the next section.

Assigning a TT FIX Adapter Server to a FIX Adapter Client User

To assign the TT FIX Adapter servers to which a FIX Adapter client user can connect:

1. On the **New User** or **Edit User** window, click the **FIX Adapter** tab. If a version requirement message appears, click **OK**.



2. Use the transfer arrow buttons (>, <, >>, <<) to select the FIX Adapter server users to which each client can connect. For our example, move the CCDC Server from the **Available Fix Adapters** list to the **This FIX Client User can connect to the following FIX Adapter Servers** list.
3. If checked, the **Enabling Debug Logging for Orders** and **Enabling Debug Logging for Prices** options prompt the selected TT FIX Adapter Server to generate verbose debugging information.

Because a significant increase in the log file size affects performance, only check these options when troubleshooting.

4. Save and close the **Users** window.
5. Repeat this procedure for each FIX Adapter Client user.
6. Continue to the next section.

Running the TT User Setup Diagnostic Checks

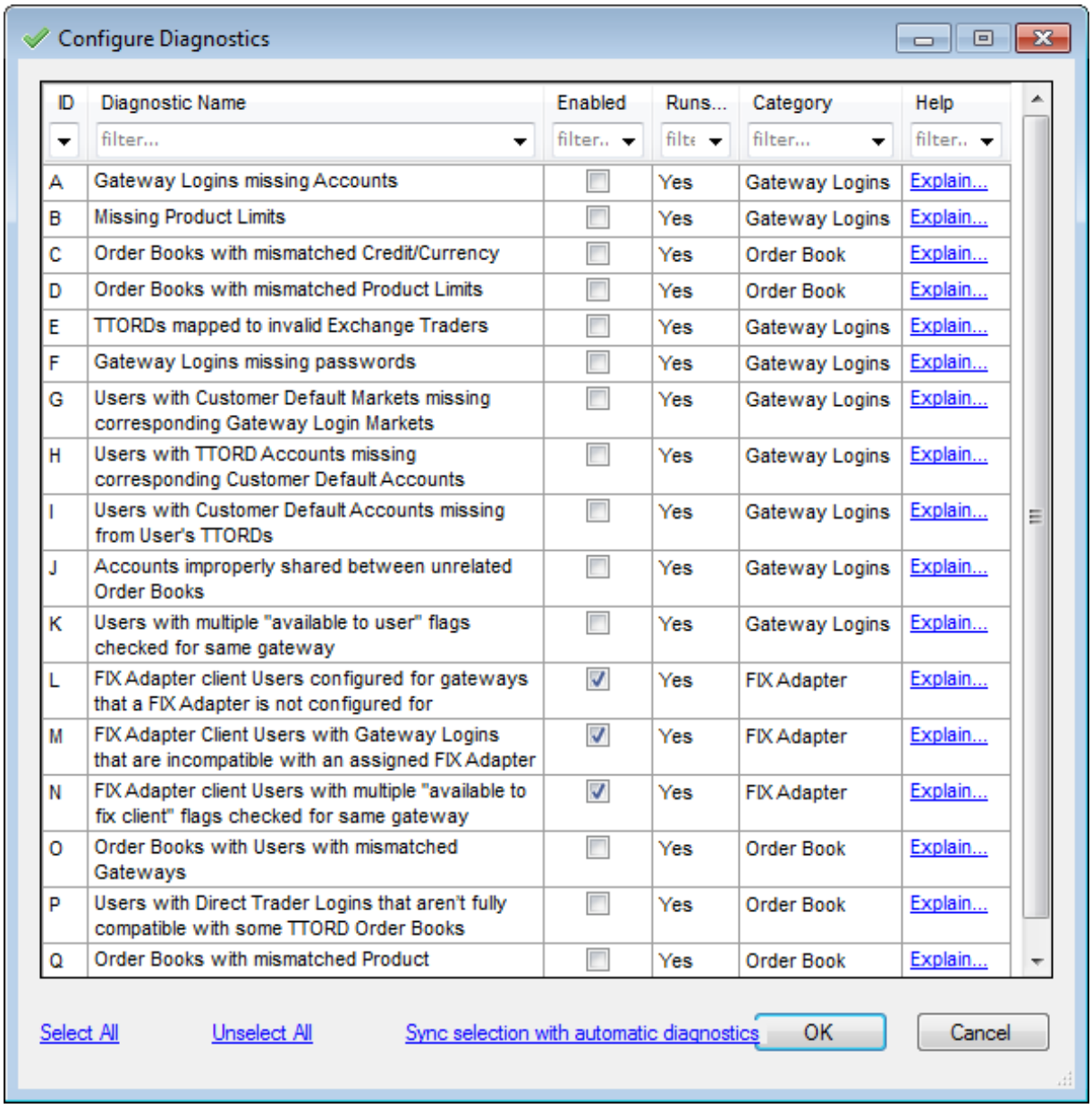
Use the Diagnostics Check utility after adding or modifying users to confirm that all of the data in TT User Setup is consistent and valid. Invalid data can cause FIX Adapter Client Logins to fail.

To run the Diagnostic Check:

1. From the **TT User Setup Control Panel**, open the **User Admin** menu and click **Diagnostic Checks**.

   The Diagnostic Checks window appears.

2. Click **Configure diagnostic checks**.
3. From the **Configure Diagnostics** window, check any FIX Adapter-related options (**L**, **M**, and **N**), and then click **OK**.



4. From the **Diagnostics Checks** window, click **Run/Refresh Diagnostic Checks**. Any issues are listed by issue type and include a summary of the issue.

   For a detailed explanation of an issue type, click **explain this**.

5. Resolve any issues discovered through the diagnostic check.
6. To run other diagnostic checks, re-open the **Configure Diagnostics** window and select your typical diagnostic checks (or click **Sync selection with automatic diagnostics** to select only the checks that are configured to run automatically). After the diagnostic checks are selected, click **OK** and then click **Run/Refresh Diagnostic Checks**.

When all the issues are resolved, you are finished with this tutorial.

How to Set Up an Order Routing TT FIX Adapter Server and Corresponding FIX Adapter Clients

In this tutorial, you will learn how to set up IDs for an Order Routing TT FIX Adapter Server as well as FIX Adapter client users that will connect to it. After creating the IDs, you will then be able to assign the FIX Adapter Clients to the FIX Adapter Server. The following example demonstrates these tasks.

Example: ClearCo is an FCM that hosts two TT Gateways (CME-A and Eurex-A). AB Asset Management is one of their customers.

Three traders (BOB, BILL, and MIKE) at AB Asset Management would like to use their own FIX application to route orders to these TT Gateways. Traders BOB and BILL must have the ability to see each others orders. Trader MIKE does not share an order book with anyone.

The traders will be mapped as follows:

AB-BOB -> TTORDAB/001/001

AB-BILL -> TTORDAB/001/002

AB-MIKE -> TTORDAB/002/001

Based on these requirements, ClearCo needs to set up a new Order Routing FIX Adapter Server (CCOR) and three FIX Adapter client users (AB-BOB, AB-BILL, and AB-MIKE).

Complete all of the sections in both of the following topics:

Creating TT FIX Adapter Servers

Creating an Order Routing TT FIX Adapter Server in TT user Setup consists of the following tasks:

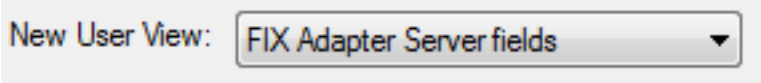
Creating a FIX Adapter Server username

To create a FIX Adapter Server username

1. From the **TT User Setup Control Panel**, open the **User Admin** menu and click **Users**.

The **Users** window appears.

2. From the **New User View** list select **FIX Adapter Server fields**.

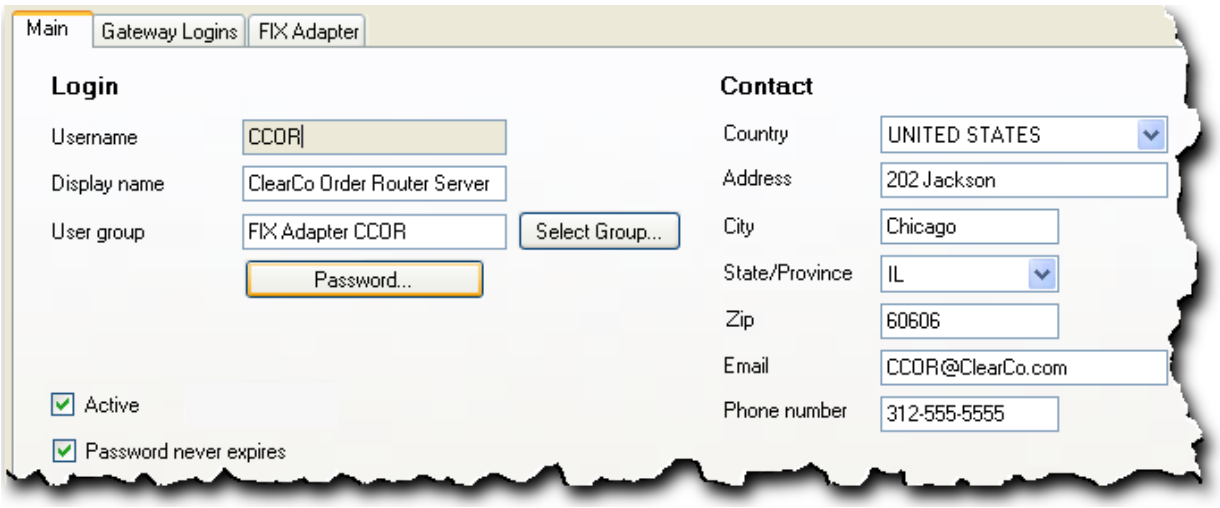


3. Click **New**.

   The **New user** window appears.

4. On the **Main** tab, enter data in the following fields:
   -
   - **Username**: An identifier for the TT FIX Adapter Server (limited to 11 characters).
   - **Display name**: A more detailed description of the TT FIX Adapter Server (not limited to 11 characters).
   - **User group**: An identifier used to categorize users (e.g., Chicago). For a detailed description on user groups, refer to the *TT user Setup user Guide*.
   - **Password/Confirm password**: The password associated with this username, which is used to authenticate TT FIX Adapter Servers.
   - **Country**: The location of the TT FIX Adapter Server machine.
   - **Zip**: The Zip code in which the TT FIX Adapter Server machine is located. **Zip** is necessary only if the **Country** selected is the **United States**.

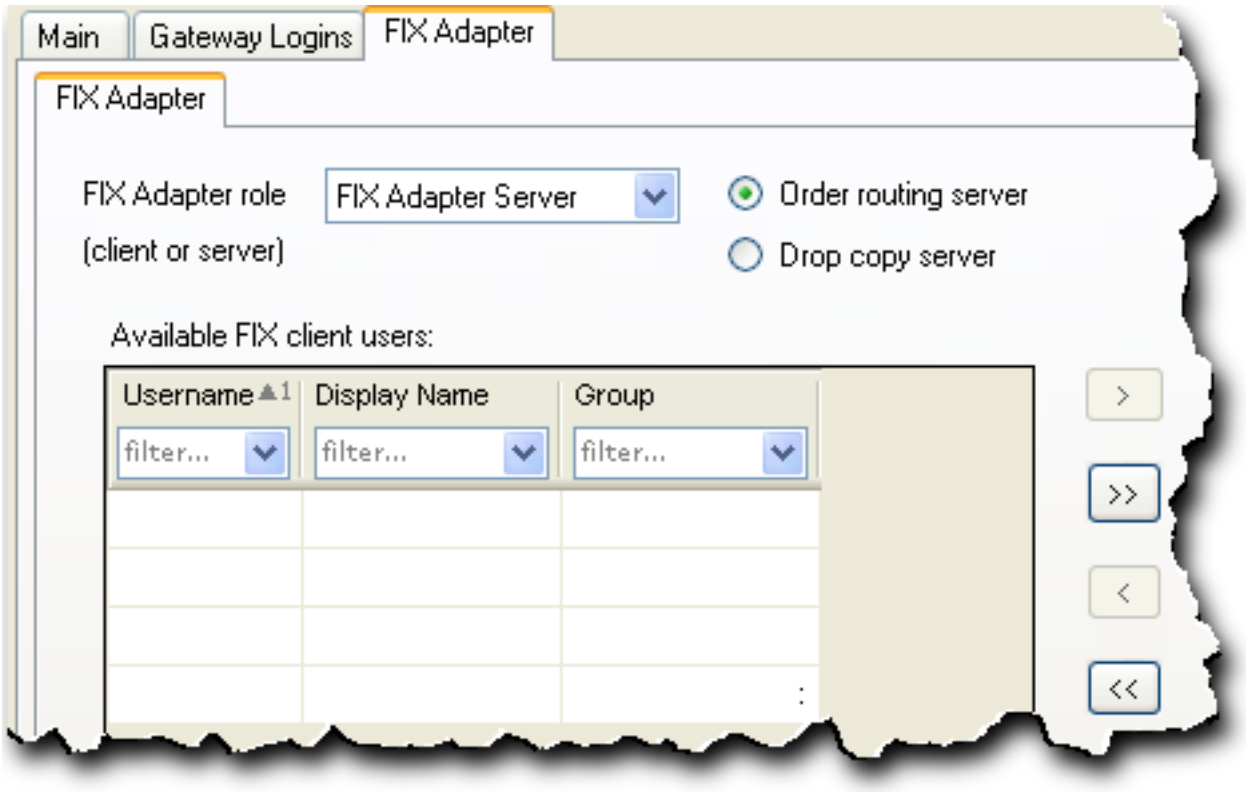
     The following figure shows the **Login** and **Contact** sections of **Main** tab for the new FIX Adapter Server, CCOR.



   TT recommends that you leave the **Password never expires** option checked.

5. On the **New User** window, click the **FIX Adapter** tab. If a version requirement message appears, click **OK**.

The **FIX Adapter Role** field automatically populates with **FIX Adapter Server**. If FIX client users have been created, they appear in the **Available FIX client users** grid. If FIX client users have not been created, this grid is empty.



6. Click the **Order routing server** radio button.
7. Continue to the next section.

Assigning TT Gateway Credentials

When creating an Order Routing TT FIX Adapter, you must designate the credentials (called gateway logins) used to login to the TT Gateways. TT FIX Adapter Server logs into each TT Gateway once and acts on behalf of all FIX Adapter client users. Thus, the gateway logins (MGTs) that the TT FIX Adapter Server uses to log into the TT Gateways must have the authority to act on behalf of all FIX Adapter client users. Specifically, the MGTs TT FIX Adapter Server uses to log into the TT Gateways must have permissions to view all orders and fills of all FIX Adapter client users.

In our example:

- TT FIX Adapter client user AB-BOB will route orders as TTORDAB/001/001 and will need to see all orders/fills for this MGT.
- TT FIX Adapter client user AB-BILL will route orders as TTORDAB/001/002 and will need to see all orders/fills for this MGT.

- TT FIX Adapter client user AB-MIKE will route orders as TTORDAB/002/001 and will need to see all orders/fills for this MGT.

The credentials that have permissions to view all of these orders and fills is TTORDAB/XXX/MGR

You could also use a higher-level MGT, such as TTADM/XXX/MGR, for the TT Gateway logins; however, TT does not recommend this approach because of its impact on performance. TT FIX Adapter could spend a considerable amount of time processing order and fill updates for which the FIX clients have neither interest nor permission to see.

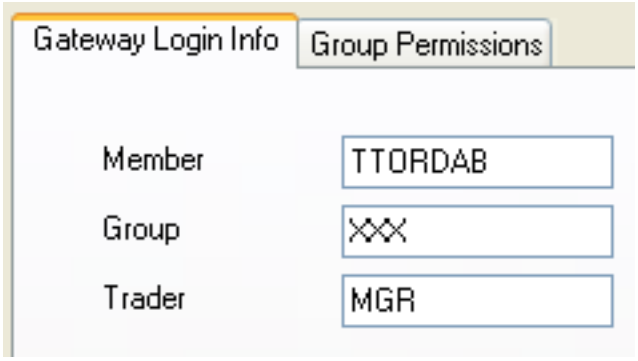
To assign credentials to the FIX Adapter Server user

1. On the **New User** or **Edit User** window for the CCDC user, click the **Gateway Logins** tab.
2. If the gateway login to which you want to map does not exist, click **New**.

   The **New Gateway Login** window appears.

   If the gateway login already exists, click the **Assign Existing Logins** button, and select the appropriate MGT(s).

3. On the **Gateway Login Info** tab, enter a **Member**, **Group**, and **Trader**. The following figure shows a new gateway login (TTORDAB/XXX/MGR) for the new TT FIX Adapter server user, CCOR.



   For a detailed description of the various types of logins used in a TT environment, refer to the *TT user Login and Risk Administration Reference Guide*.

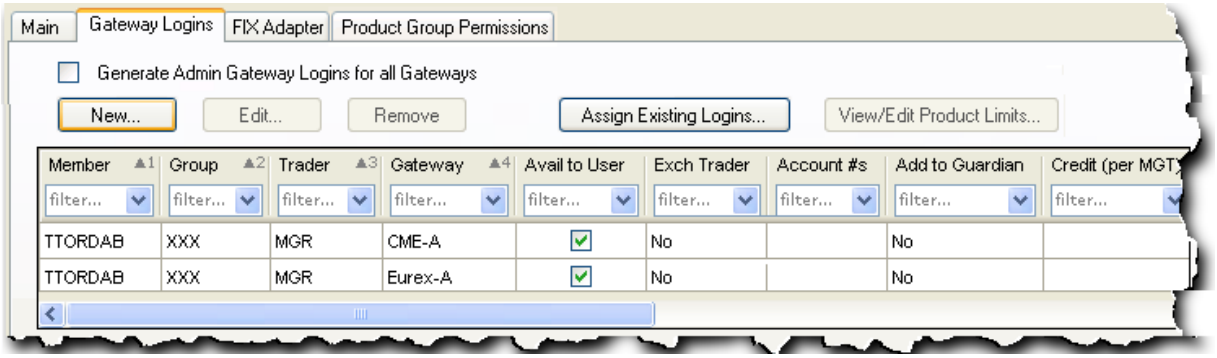
4. Click **Add Gateways**.

   The **Select Gateway** window appears.

   A TT FIX Adapter Server must be configured to connect to the TT Gateways from which the associated FIX Adapter client users will require fills.

5. Hold down the **Ctrl** key, click **CME-A**and **Eurex-A** gateway options, and click **Select**.
6. On the **New Gateway Login** window, click **Save**.

   TT user Setup returns to the **Gateway Login** tab of the **New User** or **Edit User** window.



7. Save and close the **New User** or **Edit User** window.
8. Continue to the next section.

Creating TT FIX Adapter Client users

Creating a TT FIX Adapter client user in TT user Setup that connects to an Order Routing TT FIX Adapter consists of the following tasks:

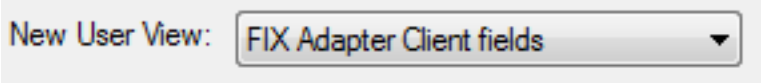
Creating a FIX Adapter Client username

▶ To create a client username

1. From the **TT user Setup Control Panel**, open the **user Admin** menu and click **users**.

   The **users** window appears.

2. From the **New user View** list select **FIX Adapter Client fields**.



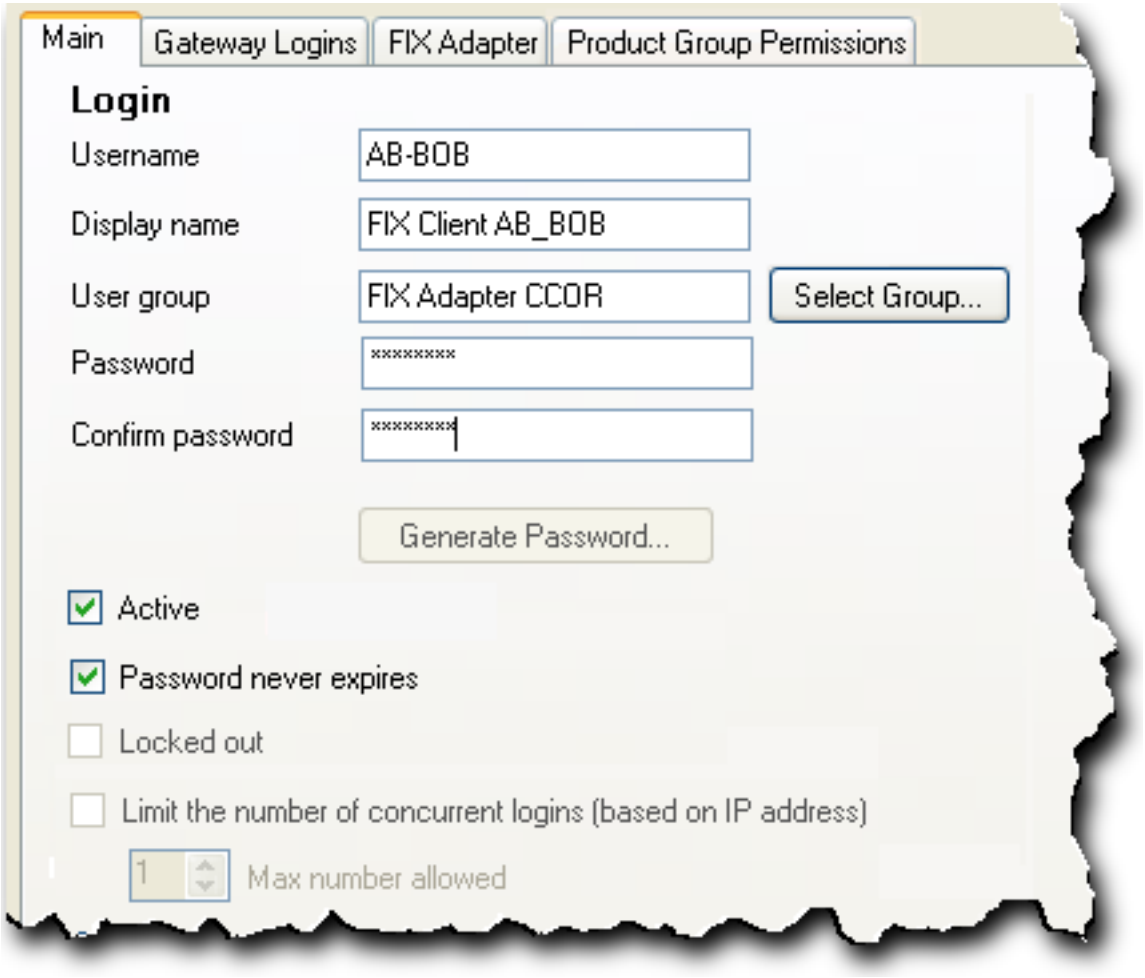
3. Click **New**.

   The **New User** window appears.

4. On the **Main** tab, enter data in the following fields:
5. **Username**: The name of the FIX Adapter Client user. In FIX, this is also known as RemoteCompId.
6. **Displayname**: A more detailed description of the TT FIX Adapter Client user (typically the full name of the client).
7. **User group**: An identifier used to categorize users (e.g., FIX Adapter CCOR). For a detailed description of user groups, refer to the *TT user Setup user Guide*.

8. **Password/Confirm Password**: The password associated with this username which is used to authenticate TT FIX Adapter Client users.

   The following shows the **Login** section of the **Main** tab for new TT FIX Adapter Client, AB-BOB.



   Because FIX Adapter Client users are unable to update an expired password using the same procedure as an **X_TRADER** user, TT recommends that you leave the **Password never expires** option checked.

   For information about the other user fields, refer to the *TT user Setup user Guide*.

9. Repeat this procedure to create users AB-BILL and AB-MIKE.
10. Continue to the next procedure.

Assigning TT Gateway Credentials

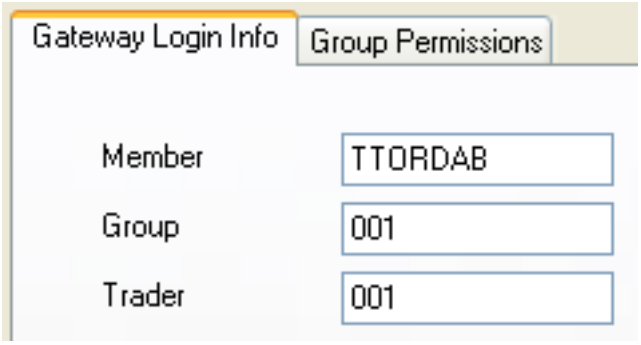
When creating a TT FIX Adapter Client user that connects to an Order Routing TT FIX Adapter, you must designate one or more sets of credentials (gateway logins) that will be used to route orders. This procedure is similar to setting up a TTORD in Guardian, except in TT user Setup you can create the TTORD and assign it to a FIX Adapter client in one step

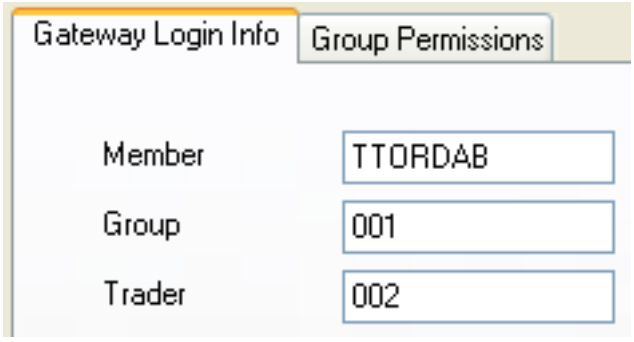
In our example:

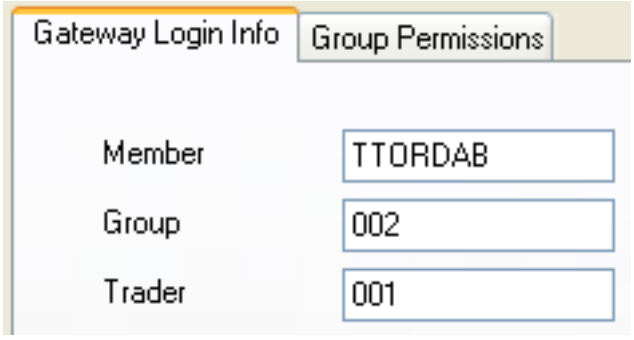
- TT FIX Adapter Client user AB-BOB will route orders as **TTORDAB/001/001**.
- TT FIX Adapter Client user AB-BILL will route orders as **TTORDAB/001/002**.
- TT FIX Adapter Client user AB-MIKE will route orders as **TTORDAB/002/001**.

To assign these credentials to each of the FIX Adapter client users:

1. On the **New User** or **Edit User** window, click the **Gateway Logins** tab.
2. For our example, Client user AB-BOB uses the **TTORDAB/001/001 MGT**, Client user AB-BILL uses the **TTORDAB/001/002 MGT**, and Client user AB-MIKE uses the **TTORDAB/002/001 MGT**. Because none of these MGTs have been created, you must add new gateway logins.
    1. Click **New** to open the **New Gateway** login where you can enter gateway login information as follows:







After creating one gateway login, you can use the **Save and Add New** button on the **New Gateway Login** window (or the **Copy** button on the **Gateway Logins** window) to quickly create another similar gateway login.

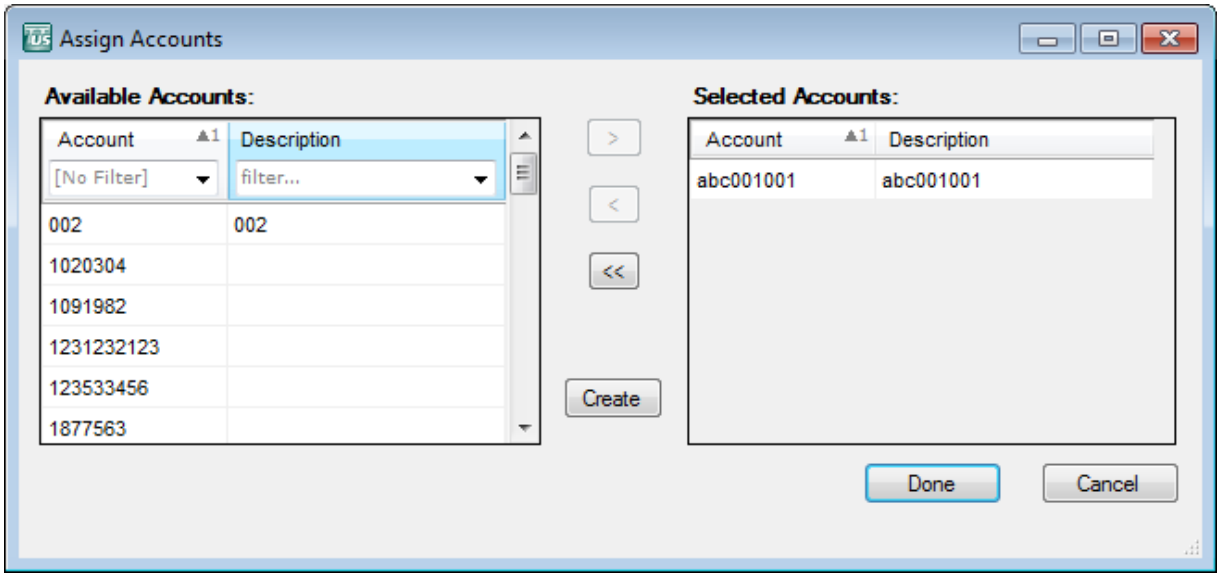
Because AB-BOB and AB-BILL use the same Member and Group, they will share an order book.

For a detailed description of the various types of logins used in a TT environment, refer to the **TT user Login and Risk Administration Reference Guide**

2. Click **Map to Exchange Traders** to open the **Map Exchange Traders** to window where you can select the CME-A and Eurex-A Exchange traders.
3. Use the transfer arrow buttons (>, <, >>, <<) to move the CME-A and Eurex-A Exchange Traders from the **Available Exchange Traders** table to the **Selected Exchange Traders** table. If the exchange traders do not exist, click **Create** and create them.

4. Click **Done**.
5. On the **New Gateway Login** window, click the **Assign Accounts** button.

The **Assign Accounts** window appears.

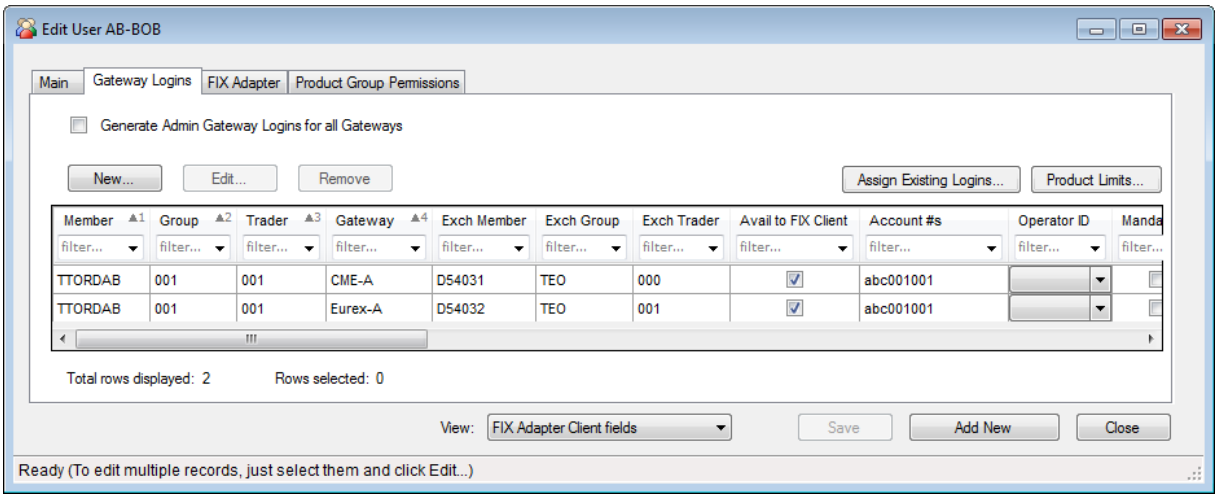


6. Use the transfer arrow buttons (>, <, >>, <<) to move the account(s) from the **Available Accounts** table to the **Selected Accounts** table. If the account does not exist, click **Create Accounts** to create it.

   The **Selected Accounts** are the account numbers that the FIX client must use to place orders using this TTORD.

7. Click **Done**.
8. From the **Gateway Login Info** tab, set the credit limits as needed, and then click **Save**.

   The following figure shows how the newly created gateway logins display in the **New User** or **Edit User** window.

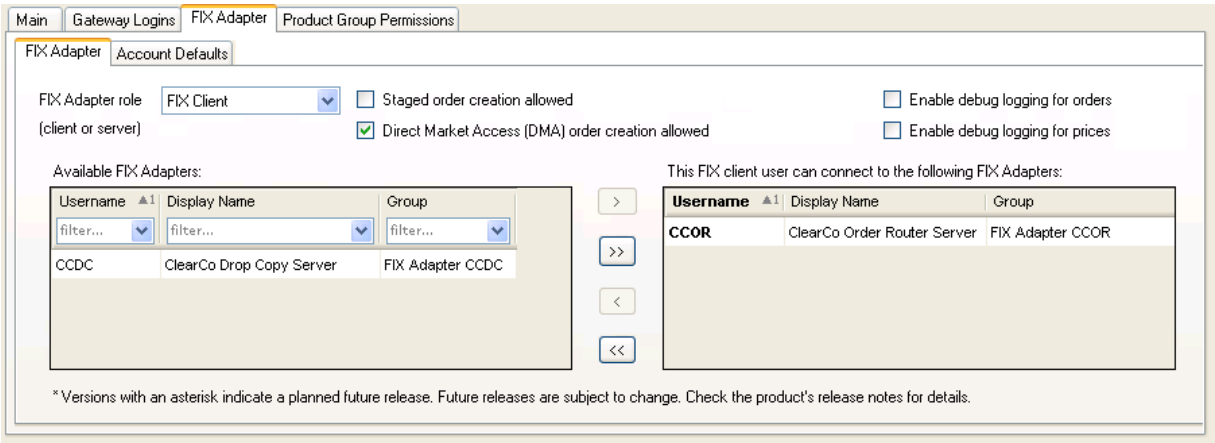


3. On the **New User** or **Edit User** window, click **Save**.
4. Continue to the next section.

Assigning a TT FIX Adapter Server to a FIX Adapter Client user

To assign the TT FIX Adapter Servers to which a FIX Adapter Client user can connect:

1. On the **New User** or **Edit User** window, click the **FIX Adapter** tab. If a version requirement message appears, click **OK**.



2. Use the transfer arrow buttons (>, <, >>, <<) to select the FIX Adapter Server users to which each client can connect. For our example, move the CCOR Server from the **Available Fix Adapters** list to the **This FIX Client user can connect to the following FIX Adapter Servers** list.
3. If checked, the **Enabling Debug Logging for Orders** and **Enabling Debug Logging for Prices** options prompt the selected TT FIX Adapter Server to generate verbose debugging information.

   Because a significant increase in the log file size will affect performance, only check these options when troubleshooting.

4. Save and close the **Users** window.
5. Repeat this procedure for each FIX Adapter Client user.
6. Continue to the next section.

Running the TT user Setup Diagnostic Checks

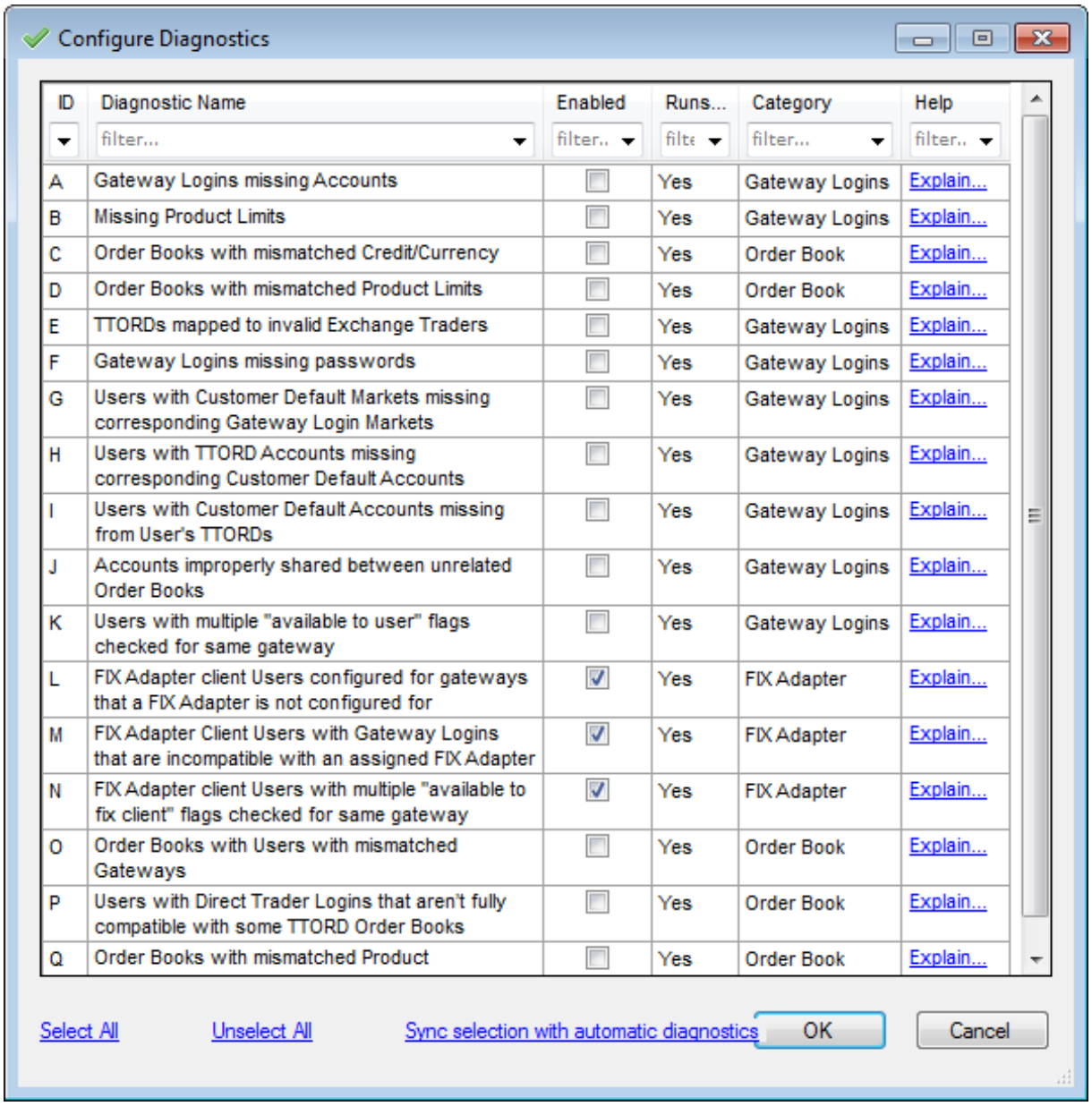
Use the Diagnostics Check utility after adding or modifying users to confirm that all of the data in TT user Setup is consistent and valid. Invalid data can cause FIX Adapter Client Logins to fail.

To run the Diagnostic Check:

1. From the **TT user Setup Control Panel**, open the **User Admin** menu and click **Diagnostic Checks**.

   The Diagnostic Checks window appears.

2. Click **Configure diagnostic check**.
3. From the **Configure Diagnostics** window, check any FIX Adapter-related options (**L**, **M**, and **N**), and then click **OK**.



4. From the **Diagnostics Checks** window, click the **Run/Refresh Diagnostic Checks** button. Any issues will be listed by issue type and will includes a summary of the issue.

   For a detailed explanation of an issue type, click **explain this**.

5. Resolve any issues discovered through the diagnostic check.
6. To run other diagnostic checks, re-open the **Configure Diagnostics** window and select your typical diagnostic checks (or click **Sync selection with automatic diagnostics** to select only the checks that are configured to run automatically). After the diagnostic checks are selected, click **OK** and then click **Run/Refresh Diagnostic Checks**.

When all the issues are resolved, you are finished with this tutorial.

How to Set up a User for Autospreader SE or Synthetic SE

Configuring a user to use Autospreader SE and Synthetic SE servers is almost identical to configuring a user to trade on any other TT Gateway.

- If a trader logs into all TT Gateways with the same TTORD gateway login, you can map the trader's TTORD to Autospreader SE or Synthetic SE.
- If a trader uses an Exchange Trader gateway login or uses multiple TTORD gateway logins to connect to a set of TT Gateways, you can assign new Autospreader SE or Synthetic SE gateway logins to the trader.

This tutorial will show you how to establish an Autospreader SE or Synthetic SE gateway login, and then how to configure a user to connect to the Autospreader SE or Synthetic SE using that gateway login. One procedure describes how to configure a user that has an existing TTORD, and the other procedure describes how to configure a user that does not have an existing TTORD.

To establish an Autospreader SE or Synthetic SE gateway login:

As an administrator you create Autospreader SE and Synthetic SE gateway logins. You can allow multiple traders to share an order book by assigning gateway logins that have the same Member and Group IDs.

Note: Traders who want to share, view, and modify orders working on an Autospreader SE or Synthetic SE Server must log onto the same Autospreader SE or Synthetic SE with the same Member and Group IDs, and log onto the same TT Gateway(s) with the same Member and Group IDs.

TT recommends establishing a naming convention so that you can quickly differentiate between gateway logins assigned by the exchange and synthetic gateway logins which can be made up for Autospreader SE or Synthetic SE. For example:

- TTSSE / SE1 / 001
- TTSSE / SE1 / 002
- TTSSE / SE2 / 001
- TTASE / SE1 / 001
- TTASE / SE1 / 002
- TTASE / SE2 / 001
- ...etc

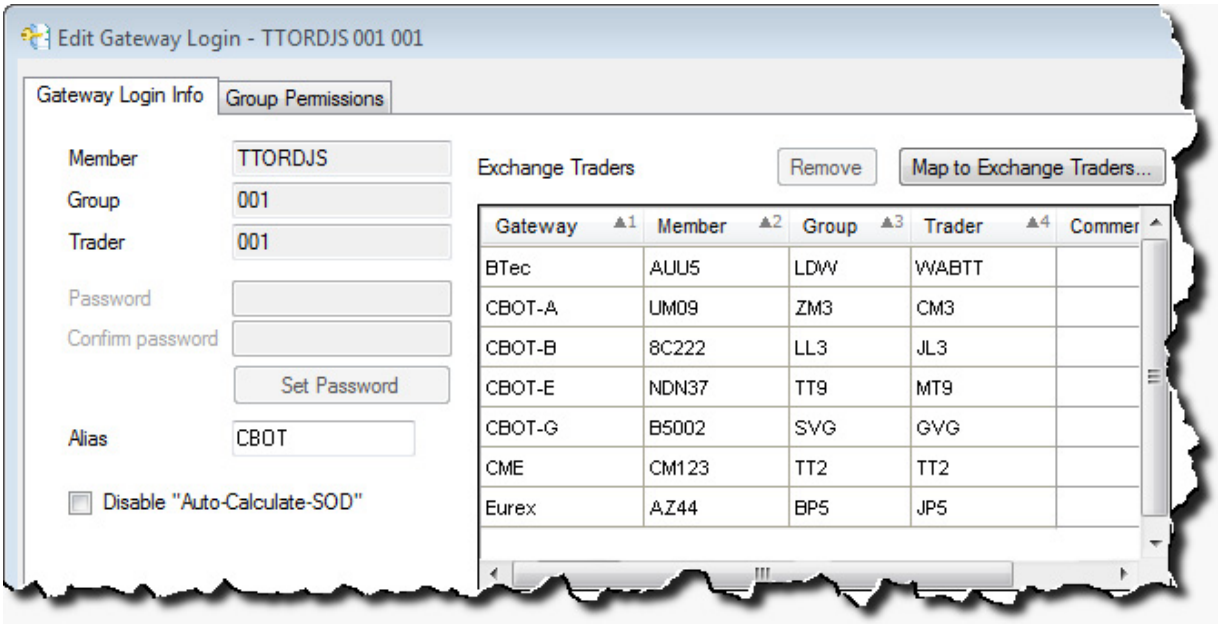
After you have determined your Autospreader SE and Synthetic SE gateway login naming convention, you can configure a user that either has an existing TTORD or does not have an existing TTORD to connect to the Autospreader SE or Synthetic SE.

Note: A trader who does not use a TTORD gateway login for Autospreader SE or Synthetic SE can see the working orders of any traders that do use TTORDs for Autospreader SE or Synthetic SE, provided

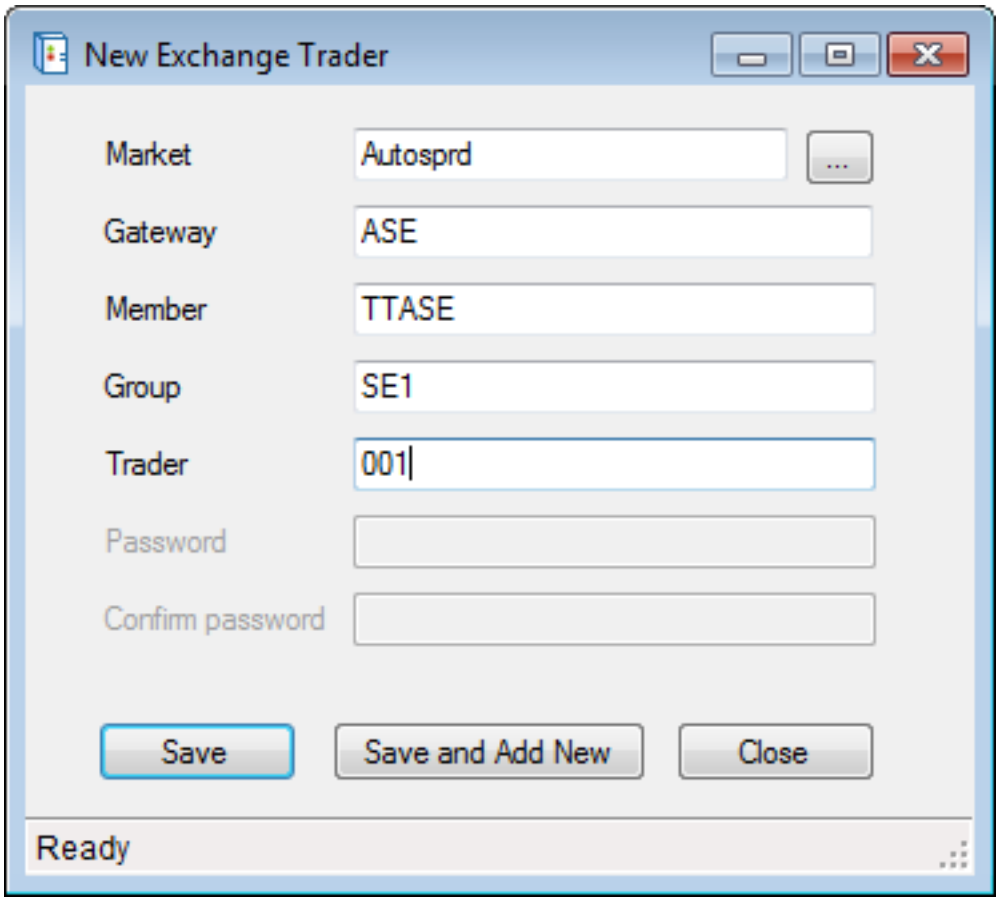
the TTORD is mapped to an exchange trader ID whose Member and Group IDs match the Member and Group IDs of the original trader.

To add an Autospreader SE or Synthetic SE gateway login to a user with an existing TTORD:

1. From the **Users** tab, select a user that logs into Gateways using a TTORD, and then click **Edit**.
2. From the **Edit User** window, select the **Gateway Logins** tab, select a TTORD gateway login, and then click **Edit**.



3. From the **Gateway Login Info** tab, click **Map to Exchange Traders**. If the Autospreader SE or Synthetic SE Exchange Trader does not exist, click **Create** to create a new Synthetic SE exchange trader. Otherwise, if the Autospreader SE or Synthetic SE Exchange Trader already exists, move it to the **Selected Exchange Traders** list and skip to step 6.



4. Select an Autospreader SE or Synthetic SE **Market** and **Gateway**, and then enter a unique gateway login created in the *To establish an Autospreader SE or Synthetic SE Gateway Login* procedure above.
5. Click **Save**.

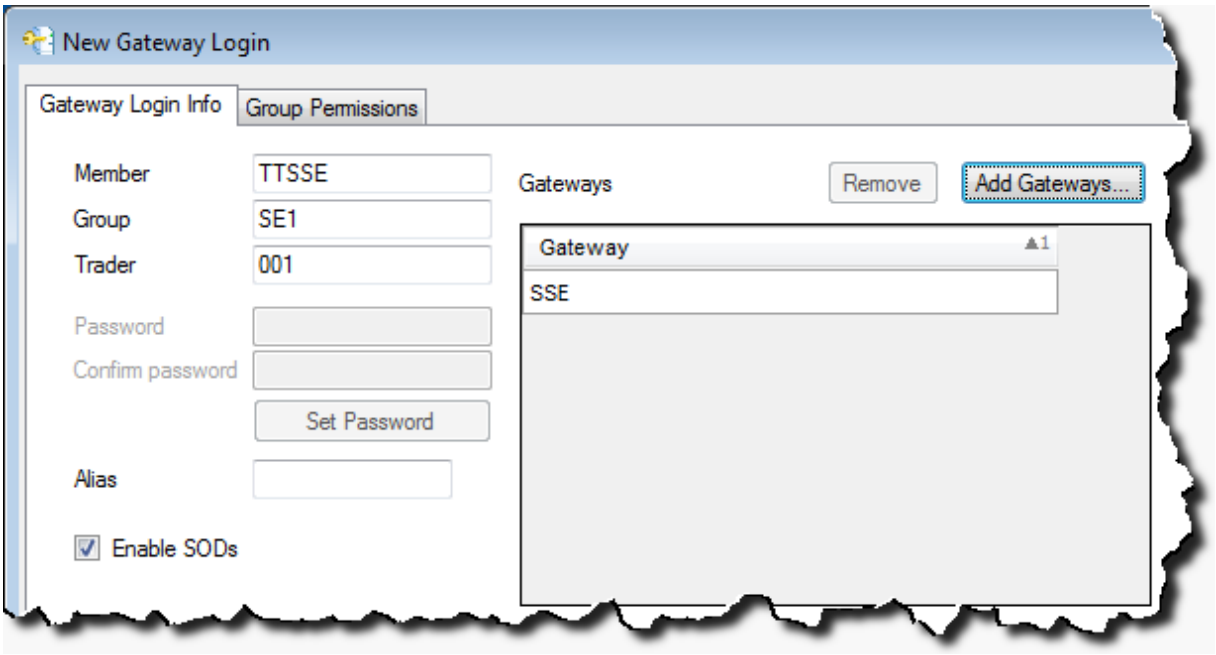
   The newly created Exchange Trader appears as a **Selected Exchange Trader** in the **Map Exchange Traders window**.

6. Click **Done**.

▶ To add an Autospreader SE or Synthetic SE Gateway login to a user without an existing TTORD:

1. From the **Users** window, select a user that does not log into Gateways using a TTORD, and then click **Edit**.
2. From the **Edit User** window, select the **Gateway Login** tab.
3. If the Autospreader SE or Synthetic SE gateway login does not exist, click **New**. Otherwise, if the Autospreader SE or Synthetic SE gateway login already exists, click **Assign Existing Logins**, select the gateway login, and then skip to step 5.
4. Enter a unique gateway login created in the *To establish an Autospreader SE or Synthetic SE Gateway Login* procedure above, click **Add Gateways**, and then select the appropriate Auto-

spreader SE or Synthetic SE server. Because risk is already configured for the Gateway to which Synthetic SE connects, there is no need to set up risk for the Synthetic SE gateway login.



5. Click **Save**.
6. The newly created gateway login can be assigned to other traders as needed.

Creating TT SIM Credit Limits and Product Limits

TT User Setup supports TT SIM mode trading using existing gateway logins and user profiles. Gateway logins and user profiles are configured as usual, with the following exceptions:

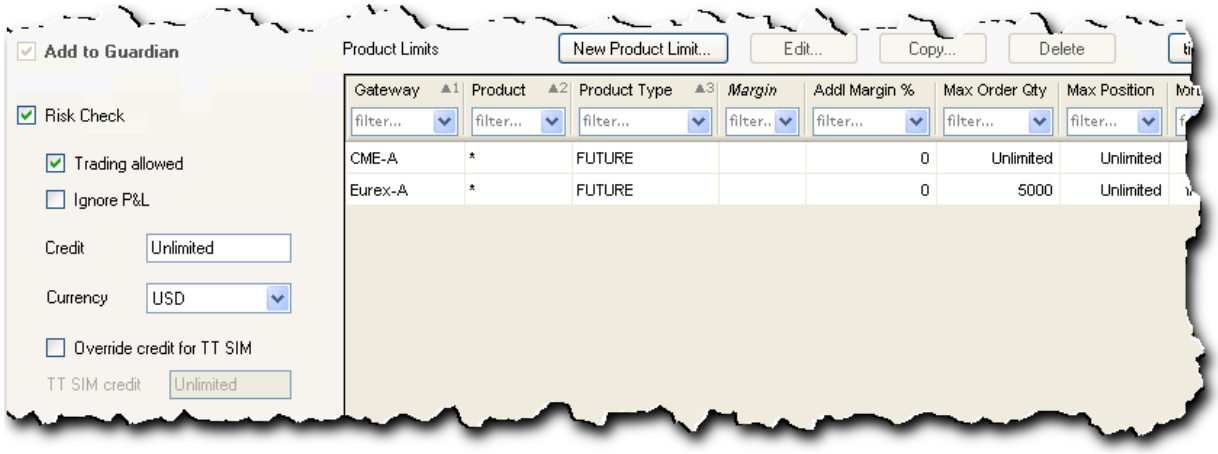
- If you want the credit limit to be higher or lower for TT SIM trading, you can set a different TT SIM credit limit for gateway logins and user profiles. If you do not set a TT SIM credit limit, then non-TT SIM credit limits are used.
- If your existing product limits are configured with wildcards (*), you must configure a new product limit that has a specific product type and product. Users trading in TT SIM mode will not be able to see instruments with product limits that are configured with wildcards.
- If you want the product limits to be different for TT SIM mode trading, you can create a new product limit and specify that it only applies to TT SIM trading. If you do not create a TT SIM Only product limit, TT User Setup will use the existing product limit settings for the instrument.

Allowing a User to Log onto X_TRADER using TT SIM mode

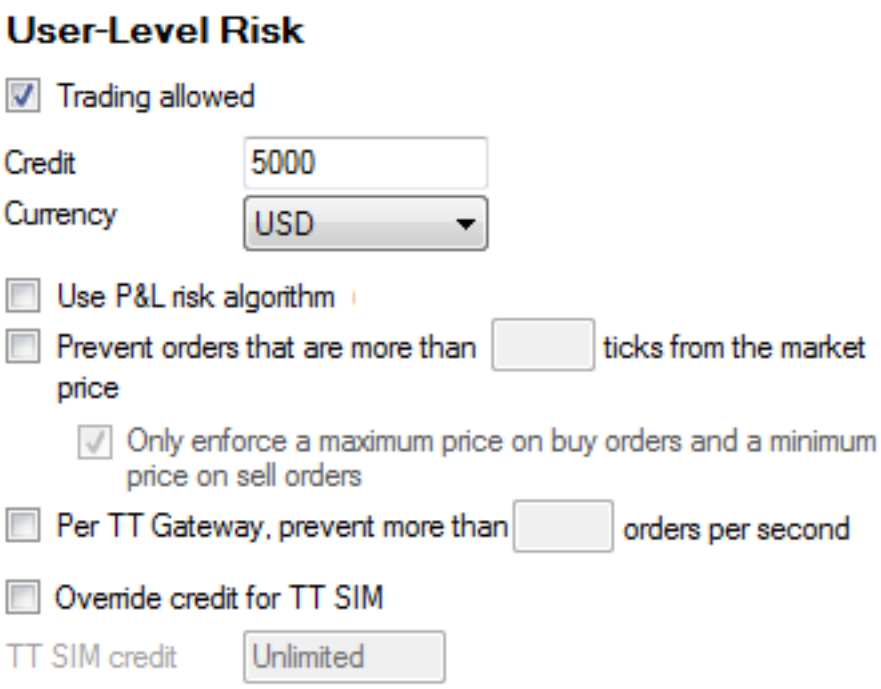
To allow a user to log onto X_TRADER using TT SIM Mode, open the user's profile in TT User Setup and check the **TT SIM login allowed** checkbox on the **X_TRADER Properties** tab.

Configuring TT SIM Credit Limits

1. To set a different gateway login credit limit for TT SIM trading:
    1. Create or edit a gateway login. Refer to “Creating a New Gateway Login” on page 135 if needed.
    2. On the **Gateway Login Info** tab, check the **Override credit for TT SIM** checkbox and then enter a new credit limit in the **TT SIM credit** field. Enter 0 to reset the credit to **unlimited**.



2. To set a different user profile credit limit for TT SIM trading:
    1. Create or edit a user profile. Refer to “Creating and Editing X_TRADER or X_RISK Users” on page 69 if needed.
    2. On the **Main** tab, check the **Override credit for TT SIM** checkbox and then enter a new credit limit in the **TT SIM credit** field. Enter 0 to reset the credit to **unlimited**.

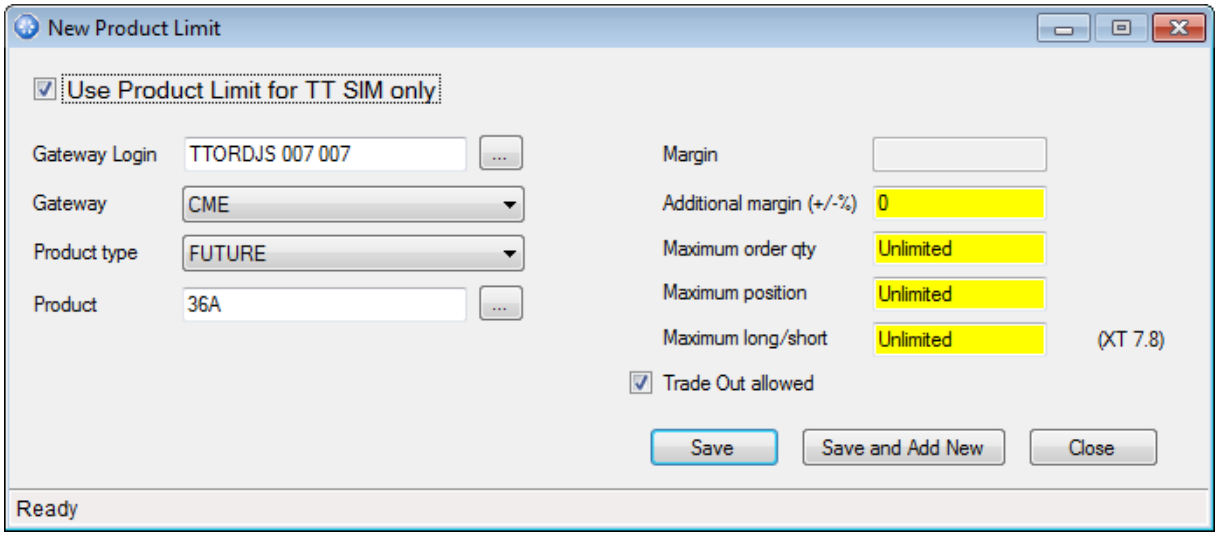


Note: If this user willonly be able to trade in TT SIM mode, uncheck the **Live (non-TT SIM) login allowed**Love checkbox on the **X_TRADER Properties** tab.

Configuring TT SIM Product Limits

To add a product limit that applies only to TT SIM trading:

1. Create a new product limit. Refer to “Creating Product Limits for Gateway Logins” on page 168 if needed.
2. Check the **Use Product Limit for TT SIM only** checkbox.



The **Additional margin**, **Maximum order qty**, **Maximum position**, and **Maximum long/short** fields are highlighted to indicate that the product limit is for TT SIM only.

3. Enter the **Additional margin**, **Maximum order qty**, **Maximum position**, and **Maximum long/short** values as needed. Enter 0 to reset the **Maximum...** fields to **unlimited**.

Appendix

Field Descriptions

When you open a window in TT User Setup, pre-selected default columns appear in that window. These default columns vary from window to window. Each window includes a customized Hide/Show window that lists all of the columns available in that window. You can hide or show columns in the various data grid windows by configuring the **Visible Columns** list in the **Show/Hide/Arrange Columns** dialog box.

The following table describes the columns available in TT User Setup and the window(s) in which the columns appear:

Column Title	Associated Windows	Description
Account Description	Accounts Window	An optional field that is associated with the gateway login and ordinarily consists of the login's MGT IDs, alias, and other applicable login data as needed.
Account Group	Accounts Window	A unique identifier to group multiple accounts.
Acct/Account #s	GW Logins tab, XT CD tab, XT FA Account Defaults tab, FA Account Defaults, GW Login, Assign Accounts, Accounts, User Groups	A unique identifier assigned to a login (TTORD or Exchange Trader) to be used by customer default records and when incorporating risk.
Account Changes Allowed	Users	Determines if this user is allowed to update the account number on a fill.
Account Type - see Default Account		

Column Title	Associated Windows	Description
Add to Guardian	GW Logins tab, GW Login Window	Designates whether risk parameters are applied to a gateway login.
Addl Mrgn%	Product Limits Window	Specifies an additional required margin above or below the amount in the **Margin** column.
Address	Users	Optional contact data for a particular user.
Admin Groups	Users	Identifies the user groups that this administrator can manage or view.
Admin Type	Users	The type of administrator.
Allow Trading	Account/Account Group Product Limits Window	Determines whether trades submitted with this account or an account in this account group will be allowed or rejected. **Note**: Users logging in with Gateway Logins that end in MGR (e.g., TTADM XXX MGR) can delete orders, regardless of whether or not "Allow Trading" is checked for a given account or account group.
Allowed	XT Product Group Permissions tab	Determines whether the product group is allowed or blocked.
Algo Deployment Allowed	GW Logins tab, User GWL Attributes, Assign to Available Users	Indicates whether the user is allowed to deploy strategies to an Algo SE Server. This setting is only valid when the Gateway is an Algo SE Server.

Column Title	Associated Windows	Description
Algo Sharing Allowed	GW Logins tab, User GWL Attributes, Assign to Available Users	Indicates whether the user is allowed to share algorithms with other users on Algo SE servers. This setting is only valid when the Gateway is an Algo SE Server and when the **Algo deployment allowed** option is checked.
Alias	GW Logins tab, GW Login Window, Accounts Window	An identifier associating Guardian data with a gateway login. Typically the proper name of the user assigned to the gateway login.
Assigned Accounts - see Accounts		
Assigned Gateway Logins - see Gateway Logins		
Assigned Users - see Users		
Auto Login	GW Logins tab, Selected Users, User GWL Attributes, Assign to Available Users	Specifies if a user of a specific gateway login will be automatically logged into the associated gateways.
Auto-Gen SOD Positions?	Gateway Logins window	Determines whether or not the gateways assigned to this gateway login will be prevented from generating Start-of-Day records. When **Auto-Gen SOD Positions** is *no*, gateways will not generate Start-of-Day records for the configured Gateway Login.
Available	Selected Users	Determines if you can log into your assigned gateway using your assigned MGT.

Column Title	Associated Windows	Description
Available to FIX Client/Avail to FIX Client	Assign to Available Users, User GWL Attributes, GW Logins tab	Indicates whether a FIX Client has access to a given gateway login after performing a universal login.
Available to User/Avail to User	GW Logins tab, User GWL Attributes, Assign to Available Users	Indicates whether a user has access to a given gateway login after performing a universal login.
City	Users	Optional contact data for a particular user.
Clearing Account - see Give up		
Clearing Members	GW Logins tab, Selected Users, User GWL Attributes, Assign to Available Users	Designates a member firm of a clearing house through which trades are settled.
Comments	GW Logins tab, GW Login Window, Product Limits Window	Displays an error description when a product being saved does not exist in the product table.
Country	Users	Optional contact data for a particular user.
Create Non-TTORD	Users	Identifies whether this administrator can create Direct Trader Gateway logins.
Created Date	Users	The date the user was created.
Credit (per MGT)	GW Logins tab, GW Login Window	The sum, available at the start of a trading session, against which a single MGT can entering orders, whereby only that trader's activity can affect the credit limit.
Currency	GW Logins tab, GW Login Window	The currency in which trades are calculated (e.g. USD = United States Dollar).

Column Title	Associated Windows	Description
Customer	XT CD tab	Ordinarily the proper name of a user, which is used to define customer default records.
DB Location	TT User Setup Servers	The location of your TT User Setup database files on your machine.
Default Account	GW Logins tab, Selected Users, User GWL Attributes, Assign to Available Users, FA Account Defaults, XT FA Account Defaults tab	Specifies the default account type as defined by the exchange (**A1**-**A9**, **G1**, **G2**, **M1**-**M3**, **P1**-**P3**, or **U1**-**U3**.
Description	Assign Accounts/Account Groups	Assign Accounts: Text describing what an account is used for (e.g. proprietary trading, customer account, broker error account, etc). Account Groups: An optional description of the account group.
Display Name	Users, Selected Users, Assign to Available Users, UserGWL Attributes, FA tab	An identifier associated with the username that appears in grid displays to help identify a gateway login.
Directly Assignable to Users	Gateway Logins	Determines if group administrators can assign the gateway login directly to users without using a TTORD (direct traders).

Column Title	Associated Windows	Description
Directional Price Range	Users	When Price Controls are enabled, this setting determines if the trader can only place buy and sell orders that are within the configured price band (static), or if the trader can place buy orders below the minimum price limit, and above the maximum price limit (directional).
DMA Order Creation	Users	Determines whether the user is allowed to create Direct Market Access (DMA) orders.
Edit Gateway Logins	Users	Identifies whether the administrator can manage gateway logins.
Email	Users	The email address used when generating a user's password.
Exch Group	GW Logins tab, Gateway Logins, User GWL Attributes	The exchange trader's group ID mapped to the TTORD.
Exch Member	GW Logins tab, Gateway Logins, User GWL Attributes	The exchange trader's member ID mapped to the TTORD.
Exch Trader	GW Logins tab, Gateway Logins,User GWL Attributes	The exchange trader's trader ID mapped to the TTORD.
Exchange ID	Select Gateway	The Exchange ID listed in the AConfig file.
Exchange License	Environment Server Status	Monitors active servers within your environment and determines and displays which have an appropriate license.
EXE file	TT User Setup Servers	The location of your TTUserSetupServer.exe file on your machine.

Column Title	Associated Windows	Description
FA DMA Order Creation	Users	Determines whether the user is allowed to claim and work staged orders.
FA Order Logging	Users	Determines if debug messages generated by the Order Server are logged to the log files
FA Price Logging	Users	Determines if debug messages generated by the Price Server are logged to the log files
FA Role	User GWL Attributes, Users	The Fix Adapter role (client or server)
FA Staged Order Creation	Users	Determines whether the user is allowed to create staged orders.
FFT 2-3	XT CD tab, FA Account Defaults, XT FA Account Defaults tab,	Free Form Text Field #2. A value assigned by a user of TT's **X_TRADER** application, and displayed in X_RISK for annotation purposes by the trader or back office (sub-account).
First <DEFAULT>	XT CD tab	Specifies whether a <DEFAULT> customer default entry was the first such default created for that user.
FMDS Primary/Secondary IP Addr	Users	Specifies the IP address setting for the primary and secondary FMDS server.
FMDS Primary/Secondary Port	Users	Specifies the port setting for the primary and secondary FMDS server.
FMDS Primary/Secondary Service	Users	Specifies the service setting for the primary and secondary FMDS server.
FMDS Primary/Secondary Timeout	Users	Specifies the timeout setting for the primary and secondary FMDS server.

Column Title	Associated Windows	Description
Force logoff	Users	Whether or not the user has been forced to log off.
Gateway	GW Logins tab, XT FA Account Defaults tab, FA Account Defaults, GW Login, Product Limits, User GWL Attributes, Select Gateway,Assign to Available Users	Specifies the gateway a user is able to log into and trade on using their assigned gateway login (e.g. CME). **Note:** If a gateway alias is defined in aconfig, the **Gateway** column displays **<gateway>** to represent the alias.
Gateway Logins	User Groups	The gateway logins assigned to a given group.
Generated Group - see Group		
Generated Member - see Member		
Generated Trader - see Trader		
Give Up /Clearing Account	XT CD tab, FA Account Defaults, XT FA Account Defaults tab,	Give Up Member. The member for whom a separate party completes a transaction.

Column Title	Associated Windows	Description
Group /Group Permissions	Users, Selected Users, GW Logins tab, GW Login, Product Limits, Accounts, Account Groups, User GWL Attributes, Assign to Available Users, User Groups, FA Account Defaults, FA tab	**Gateway Login:** The unique Group ID used to identify an exchange trader or TTORD as part of their MGT. **User:** Identifies the group name for multiple exchange traders and/or TTORDs, and may reflect some aspect of those traders (e.g. Energy Traders).
Group Admins	User Groups	The group administrators assigned to a given group
GTC Allowed	Users	Determines if the user is allowed to enter Good Till Cancel and Good Till Date orders.
GUI View	Users	The user view that determines which fields are visible when creating or editing a user (All, X_TRADER/X_RISK, FIX Adapter Server, FIX Adapter Client, or TT User Setup Admin)
Handling Cross Orders	Users	The default crossed order behavior.
ID	Product Limits Window	A unique identifier of a product limit that is reflected in the Audit Trail where it's used to distinguish product limit changes.
Ignore P&L	GW Logins tab, GW Login Window	Determines if P&L is used in margin, credit, and position calculations.
IP Address	TT User Setup Servers, Environment Server Status	The IP Address of the machine where your server has been set up.

Column Title	Associated Windows	Description
Last Changed	Users, GW Logins tab, GW Login Window, Product Limits Window, Accounts Window, User GWL Attributes	The date of the most recent update to the applicable TT User Setup data.
Last Changed By	Users, GW Logins tab, GW Login Window, Product Limits Window, Accounts Window, User GWL Attributes	The login ID used to make the most recent update to the applicable TT User Setup data.
Last Failed Login Attempt	Users	The most recent time that a particular user has attempted and failed to log into TT User Setup.
Last Logged In	Users	The most recent time that a particular user logged into TT User Setup.
Limited Login	Users	Limits the number of concurrent logins.
Locked Out	Users	Indicates whether a user has surpassed defined limits for the number of times an incorrect password is entered or the amount of time that has passed since the user's last login attempt.
Mandatory Login	Assign to Available Users, User GWL Attributes, GW Logins tab	Specifies whether a user of a specific gateway login will be automatically logged into a given gateway.
Margin	Product Limits Window	Amount required for collateral on a position.
Market	XT CD tab, XT FA Account Defaults tab, FA Account Defaults tab, FA Account Defaults, XT Product Group Permissions tab, Select Gateway window	The exchange (e.g. CME) where the account is allowed to trade.
Master/Slave	TT User Setup Servers	Indicates whether each running server is a Master server or a Slave server.

Column Title	Associated Windows	Description
Max Login Allowed	Users	Specifies the limit on the number of concurrent logins allowed.
Max Long/Short	Product Limits Window	Specifies the limits on a long or short position.
Max Ord Qty	Product Limits Window, XT CD tab	A limit on the maximum order size for the selected trader/product.
Max Orders/Sec	The maximum rate of orders allowed per TT Gateway. This value overrides the user-level **Per TT Gateway, prevent more than X orders per second** setting. The value entered in the **Prevent more than X orders per second (overrides the User-Level setting)** field displays in **Max Orders/Sec.** You can edit the maximum orders per second in this column per TT Gateway for the selected user.	Max Orders/Sec
Max Pos	Product Limits Window	A limit on the position for the selected trader/product to the specified number of contracts.
Member	GW Logins tab, GW Login Window, Product Limits Window, Accounts Window, User GWL Attributes	The unique Member ID used to identify an exchange trader or TTORD as part of their MGT.
MF/SOD Group Restrictions	Users	When **XR MF Access** and/or **XR SOD Access** is *yes*, this specifies if the user is limited to accounts in specified user groups when publishing manual fills and/or Start of Day records in X_RISK.

Column Title	Associated Windows	Description
Most Recent Heartbeat	Environment Server Status	Dynamically updated time a signal is submitted by the active servers in your environment.
O/C	XT CD tab	Designates whether the trader's position is Open or Closed.
Orders Per Second	Users	Determines the allowed number of orders, per second, per TT Gateway. This value is enforced when the Restrict Order Throughput option is checked.
Organization	Users	Contact information for a user. This field is required if you want the ICE Product Groups report to list the product permissions per customer. Otherwise this field is optional.
Other Users	GW Logins tab	Lists the users that share a particular gateway login.
Operator ID	GW Logins tab, User GWL Attributes, Assign to Available Users	Specifies the Operator ID that is used to identify the trader or operator to the exchange.
Password Admins	User Groups	The password administrators assigned to a given group.
Phone Number	Users	Optional contact data for a particular user.
Preferred IP	GW Logins tab, Selected Users, User GWL Attributes, Assign to Available Users	Specifies the IP address of the gateway through which you want the user's first login attempt to be made.
Price Controls Enabled	Users	Determines if the user is restricted to entering orders within a specified number of ticks from the market price.

Column Title	Associated Windows	Description
Priority	XT FA Account Defaults tab, FA Account Defaults	Specifies the priority of the FIX adapter account default. When an order matches more than one account default (based on key values), TT FIX Adapter server uses the match with the highest priority.
Product	XT CD tab, Product Limits Window	**Defines the product (e.g. FGBL ODAX, etc.) that a trader can trade.**
Product Group	XT Product Group Permissions tab	The product group (e.g. CA Futures).
Product Type	XT CD tab, XT FA Account Defaults tab, FA Account Defaults, Product Limits Window	Defines the product type (e.g. futures, options, spreads, etc.) that a trader can trade.
Pwd Never Expires	Users	Indicates whether there is a time limit enabled on a users' login password.
Restrict	XT CD tab	Specifies if the user has an order restriction, such as FOK, IOC, or LSM.
Restrict Order Throughput	Users	Determines if the user is limited to a specified number of orders per second, per TT Gateway.
Restrict FA Account Defaults	Users	Identifies whether or not this user is restricted from overriding Fix Adapter account defaults.
Restrict XT Cust Defaults	Users	Identifies whether or not this user is restricted from overriding X_TRADER customer defaults.
Risk Check	GW Logins tab, GW Login Window	Specifies whether Guardian-related risk checking is enabled.

Column Title	Associated Windows	Description
Running Since	TT User Setup Servers	Specifies the date and time that a particular server was started.
Sel	XT CD tab	Specifies if a customer default has been enabled.
Server Name	Environment Server Status	Identifies an active server in your environment (e.g. Login Server).
Staged Order Creation	Users	Determines whether the user is allowed to create staged orders.
Staged Order Mgmt	Users	Determines whether the user is allowed to claim and work staged orders.
State	Users	Optional contact data for a particular user.
Status	Users, Environment Server Status, FA Account Defaults	Indicates whether a user and/ or server is active.
SMTP From Address	Users	Specifies the string that appears in the From field of the email sent to the recipient.
Smtp Host	Users	Specifies the email server used for sending email.
Smtp Port	Users	Specifies the port used for sending email
SMTP Requires Authentication	Users	Enables SMTP server authentication.
SMTP Use SSL	Users	Enables SSL.
SMTP Username	Users	Determines if the email recipients username is included in the email.
Ticks	Users	The number of ticks from the market the user is allowed to trade. This value is enforced when Price Controls Enabled is checked.

Column Title	Associated Windows	Description
TIF	XT CD tab	Time in Force (e.g. GTD, GTC).
Time On Server	TT User Setup Servers	Amount of time since the server was started.
Trader	GW Logins tab, GW Login Window, Product Limits Window, Accounts Window, User GWL Attributes	The unique Trader ID used to identify an exchange trader or TTORD as part of their MGT.
Trade Out allowed	Product Limits Window	Designates whether you can exceed maximum order quantity, maximum position, and/or available credit limits to get closer to a flat (safe) position.
Trading allowed	GW Logins tab, GW Login Window	Determines if a gateway login can be used to actively trade.
Trading allowed	User Window Main tab	Determines if a user can add, modify, or delete orders. **Note**: Non-tradable administrator logins (e.g. TTADMXXX100 or TTORDTSXXXMGR) must have **Trading Allowed** option checked to delete orders, even though they are unable to trade.
Type	XT CD tab	Type of order (limit, market, etc.).

Column Title	Associated Windows	Description
Undefined Accounts Allowed	Users	Determines if orders submitted by this user will be rejected if they are sent with an account that is not defined in TT User Setup.
Use Max	XT CD tab	Indicates that the option to enforce a maximum order quantity has or has not been enabled.
Use P&L Risk Algo	Users	Determines if the P&L risk algorithm is used to risk check this user. When **Use P&L Risk Algo** is set to *yes*, the P&L risk algorithm is used for risk checking. In X_TRADER, the **P/L based on** setting defaults to *Risk Algorithm* and is uneditable. When **Use P&L Risk Algo** is set to *no*, risk checking uses the Last Traded Price. The **P/L based on** X_TRADER setting remains editable.
User Defined 1-6	Users	Displays optional user information such as MGT, account number, or any information you choose to enter.
User FMDS Settings	Users	Overrides the FMDS server system settings with settings for this user.
Username/Users	Users, Selected Users, GW Login , Product Limits, Accounts, Account Groups, User GWL Attributes, Assign to Available Users, FA tab	Universal Login ID used to log into one or more TT Gateways (e.g., JDOE).

Column Title	Associated Windows	Description
User Group - see Group		
User Status - see Status		
Version	TT User Setup Servers	The version of TT User Setup associated with an active server.
X_RISK Access	Users	Specifies whether you have permission to use X_RISK.
X_STUDY/FMDS	Users	Determines if the user has X_STUDY/FMDS enabled.
X_TRADER Mode	Users	Specifies whether X_TRADER will start up (as **X_TRADER** or **X_TRADER** Pro).
XR CSP Access	Users	Specifies whether you have permission to use X_RISK's Contract Session Prices functionality.
XR IM Access	Users	Specifies whether you have permission to use X_RISK's Instant Message functionality.
XR MF Access	Users	Specifies whether you have permission to use X_RISK's Manual Fill functionality.
XR SOD Access	Users	Specifies whether you have permission to use X_RISK's Start of Day functionality.
XT Avoid Orders that Cross	Users	Determines whether the user can configure the Avoid orders that cross setting in X_TRADER. If **XT Avoid Orders that i**s set to *yes*, the user can configure the Avoid orders that cross option in X_TRADER as needed.

Column Title	Associated Windows	Description
XT Quoting/RFQ	Users	Determines whether the user can configure the Quoting option in X_TRADER. If **XT Quoting/RFQ** is set to *yes*, the user can turn the X_TRADER Quoting functionality on or off. Otherwise, the user cannot enable Quoting in X_TRADER.
XT Restrict Client Override	Users	Restricts users from editing their customer defaults.
XT Wholesale Trades	Users	Determines whether the user can configure the Wholesale Trades option in X_TRADER. If **XT Wholesale Trades** is set to *yes*, the user can turn X_TRADER's Wholesale Trades option on or off. Otherwise, the user cannot enable Wholesale Trades in X_TRADER.
Zip	Users	Optional contact data for a particular user.

Context Menus

You use a context menu to access various TT User Setup functionality.

To access a context menu:

Right-click anywhere in the related window.

Users Window

The options available from the **Users** window context menu include:

Option	Function
New	Accesses the **New User** window, which allows you to create a user by applying values such as username, display name, password, and user group.
Edit	Accesses the **Edit User** window, which allows you to change login, contact, and miscellaneous user defined data.
Copy	Accesses the **New User** window, which allows you to create a user who has login, location, permissions, or gateway login information similar or identical to that of an existing user.
Delete	Permanently removes the selected user.
Export to HTML	Exports data to an HTML file, which you can use to generate a report.
Export to CSV	Exports data to a CSV file, which you can use to generate a report.
Specify sort criteria	Opens the **Sort** dialog box that you can use to determine the order in which data is displayed.
Show/Hide/Arrange columns	Accesses the **Show/Hide/Arrange Columns** dialog box for you to select which columns to display.
Find Control Panel	Brings the control panel into focus. This is useful when other screens have overlapped the control panel.

Gateway Logins Window

The options available from the **Gateway Logins** window context menu include:

Option	Function
New	Accesses the **New Gateway Login** window, which allows you to create a login by applying values such as Member, Group, and Trader ID.

Option	Function
Edit	Accesses the **Edit Gateway Login** window, which allows you to change MGT, gateway, and account data.
Copy	Accesses the **New Gateway Login** window, which allows you to create a gateway login that has for example, credit, product limit, and gateway information similar or identical to that of an existing gateway login.
Delete	Permanently removes the selected gateway login.
Export to HTML	Exports data to an HTML file, which you can use to generate a report.
Export to CSV	Exports data to a CSV file, which you can use to generate a report.
Specify sort criteria	Opens the **Sort** dialog box that you can use to determine the order in which data is displayed.
Show/Hide/Arrange columns	Accesses the **Show/Hide/Arrange Columns** dialog box for you to select which columns to display.
Find Control Panel	Brings the control panel into focus. This is useful when other screens have overlapped the control panel.

Product Limits Window

The options available from the **Product Limits** window context menu include:

Option	Function
New	Accesses the **New Product Limit** window, which allows you to create a product limit by applying values such as Product, Additional margin, and Maximum order quantity.
Edit	Accesses the **Edit Product Limit** window, which allows you to change gateway, product, margin, quantity, and position values.

Option	Function
Copy	Accesses the **New Product Limit** window, which allows you to create a product limit that has for example, gateway, product, and product type information similar or identical to that of an existing gateway login.
Delete	Permanently removes the selected product limit.
Export to HTML	Exports data to an HTML file, which you can use to generate a report.
Export to CSV	Exports data to an CSV file, which you can use to generate a report.
Specify sort criteria	Opens the **Sort** dialog box that you can use to determine the order in which data is displayed.
Show/Hide/Arrange columns	Accesses the **Show/Hide/Arrange Columns** dialog box for you to select which columns to display.
Find Control Panel	Brings the control panel into focus. This is useful when other screens have overlapped the control panel.

X_TRADER Customer Defaults Window

The options available from the **X_TRADER Customer Defaults** window context menu include:

Option	Function
New	Accesses the **New Customer Default** window, which allows you to create a customer default by applying values such as username, customer, market, and product.
Edit	Accesses the **Edit Customer Default** window, which allows you to change Customer, account #, and TIF values for example.

Option	Function
Copy	Accesses the **New Customer Default** window, which allows you to create a customer default that has for example, Market, Product, and account type information similar or identical to that of an existing customer default.
Delete	Permanently removes the selected customer default.
Replace Account Numbers	Replaces one or more customer default account numbers with similar account numbers based on selected pattern-matching rules.
Export to HTML	Exports data to an HTML file, which you can use to generate a report.
Export to CSV	Exports data to an CSV file, which you can use to generate a report.
Specify sort criteria	Opens the **Sort** dialog box that you can use to determine the order in which data is displayed.
Show/Hide/Arrange columns	Accesses the **Show/Hide/Arrange Columns** dialog box for you to select which columns to display.
Find Control Panel	Brings the control panel into focus. This is useful when other screens have overlapped the control panel.

Product Group Permissions Window

The options available from the **Product Group Permissions** window context menu include:

Option	Function
Export to HTML	Exports data to an HTML file, which you can use to generate a report.
Export to CSV	Exports data to an CSV file, which you can use to generate a report.
Specify sort criteria	Opens the **Sort** dialog box that you can use to determine the order in which data is displayed.

Option	Function
Show/Hide/Arrange columns	Accesses the **Show/Hide/Arrange Columns** dialog box for you to select which columns to display.
Find Control Panel	Brings the control panel into focus. This is useful when other screens have overlapped the control panel.

User's Gateway Login Attributes Window

The options available from the **User's Gateway Login Attributes** window context menu include:

Option	Function
Edit	Accesses the **Edit User Gateway Login Attributes** window, which allows you to change values such as default account, clearing member, and preferred IP.
Export to HTML	Exports data to an HTML file, which you can use to generate a report.
Export to CSV	Exports data to an CSV file, which you can use to generate a report.
Specify sort criteria	Opens the **Sort** dialog box that you can use to determine the order in which data is displayed.
Show/Hide/Arrange columns	Accesses the **Show/Hide/Arrange Columns** dialog box for you to select which columns to display.
Find Control Panel	Brings the control panel into focus. This is useful when other screens have overlapped the control panel.

Accounts Window

The options available from the **Accounts** window context menu include:

Option	Function
New	Accesses the **New Account** window, which allows you to create an account by applying values such as account number and account description.

Option	Function
Edit	Accesses the **Edit Account** window, which allows you to change account number and account description values.
Delete	Permanently removes the selected account.
Export to HTML	Exports data to an HTML file, which you can use to generate a report.
Export to CSV	Exports data to an CSV file, which you can use to generate a report.
Specify sort criteria	Opens the **Sort** dialog box that you can use to determine the order in which data is displayed.
Show/Hide/Arrange columns	Accesses the **Show/Hide/Arrange Columns** dialog box for you to select which columns to display.
Find Control Panel	Brings the control panel into focus. This is useful when other screens have overlapped the control panel.

User Groups Window

The options available from the **User Groups** window context menu include:

Option	Function
New	Accesses the **New User Group** window, which allows you to create a user group.
Edit	Accesses the **Edit User Group** window, which allows you to change the name of the user group.
Delete	Permanently removes the selected user group.
Export to HTML	Exports data to an HTML file, which you can use to generate a report.
Export to CSV	Exports data to an CSV file, which you can use to generate a report.
Specify sort criteria	Opens the **Sort** dialog box that you can use to determine the order in which data is displayed.

Option	Function
Show/Hide/Arrange columns	Accesses the **Show/Hide/Arrange Columns** dialog box for you to select which columns to display.
Assign Gateway Logins	Opens the **Assign Gateway Logins to User Group** window, which allows you to move multiple gateway logins to and from a given user group.
Find Control Panel	Brings the control panel into focus. This is useful when other screens have overlapped the control panel.

FIX Adapter Account Defaults

The options available from the **Account Default List** window context menu include:

Option	Function
New	Accesses the **New Account Default** window, which allows you to create a FIX Adapter account default by applying values such as Username, Account #, Market, Gateway, and Product type.
Edit	Accesses the **Edit Account Default** window, which allows you to edit a FIX Adapter account default.
Copy	Accesses the **New Account Default** window, which allows you to create a new FIX Adapter account default based off an existing account default.
Delete	Permanently removes the selected FIX Adapter account default.
Export to HTML	Exports data to an HTML file, which you can use to generate a report.
Export to CSV	Exports data to an CSV file, which you can use to generate a report.
Specify sort criteria	Opens the **Sort** dialog box that you can use to determine the order in which data is displayed.

Option	Function
Show/Hide/Arrange columns	Accesses the **Show/Hide/Arrange Columns** dialog box for you to select which columns to display.
Find Control Panel	Brings the control panel into focus. This is useful when other screens have overlapped the control panel.

Unlock Users/Reset Passwords Window

The options available from the **Unlock Users/Reset Passwords** window context menu include:

Option	Function
Unlock	Unlocks users either in all available user groups or in a restricted number of groups..
Reset Password	Reset a password(s) either in all available user groups or in a restricted number of user groups.
Refresh	Updates the **Unlock Users/Reset Passwords** window to reflect any changes in the lock or password status.
Export to HTML	Exports data to an HTML file, which you can use to generate a report.
Export to CSV	Exports data to an CSV file, which you can use to generate a report.
Specify sort criteria	Opens the **Sort** dialog box that you can use to determine the order in which data is displayed.
Show/Hide/Arrange columns	Accesses the **Show/Hide/Arrange Columns** dialog box for you to select which columns to display.
Find Control Panel	Brings the control panel into focus. This is useful when other screens have overlapped the control panel.

Audit Trail, Environment Server Status, Reports, TT User Setup Servers, and View Connected Clients Windows

The options available from each window's context menu include:

Option	Function
Export to HTML	Exports data to an HTML file, which you can use to generate a report.
Export to CSV	Exports data to a CSV file, which you can use to generate a report.
Specify sort criteria	Opens the **Sort** dialog box that you can use to determine the order in which data is displayed.
Show/Hide/Arrange columns	Accesses the **Show/Hide/Arrange Columns** dialog box for you to select which columns to display.

Shortcut Keys

You use the shortcut keys as an alternative to choosing commands from the various TT User Setup menus.

To use the shortcut keys:

Click the button combinations as listed in the table below to access the related menu or window.

The available shortcuts include:

File Menu

File Menu	Shortcut
File Menu	ALT, F
Login	ALT, F, L
Logout	ALT, F, O
Publish to Guardian	ALT, F, P
Exit	ALT, F, X

User Admin Menu

User Admin Menu	Shortcut
User Admin Menu	ALT, U
Users	ALT, U, U
Gateway Logins	ALT, U, L
Accounts	ALT, U, A
Product Limits	ALT, U, P
X_TRADER Customer Defaults	ALT, U, C
Product Group Permissions	ALT, U, R
User's Gateway Login Attributes	ALT, U, W
User Groups	ALT, U, G
Account Groups	ALT, U, O
FIX Adapter Account Defaults	ALT, U, F
Unlock Users/Reset Passwords	ALT, U, K
Diagnostic Checks	ALT, U, D

Server Admin Menu

Server Admin Menu	Shortcut
Server Admin Menu	ALT, S
System Settings	ALT, S, Y
Version Rules	ALT, S, V
Collect Log Files	ALT, S, C
Reset Exchange Tree	ALT, S, R
Currency Exchange Rates	ALT, S, E
Add Remove Currencies	ALT, S, C

Server Admin Menu	Shortcut
Product Margins	ALT, S, P
License Setup	ALT, S, L
Migrate Users to New Gateway	ALT, S, M

Reports Menu

Reports Menu	Shortcut
Reports Menu	ALT, R
Logged in Users	ALT, R, L
Audit Trail	ALT, R, A
Run Reports	ALT, R, R
Server Messages	ALT, R, M
TT User Setup Servers	ALT, R, S
Environment Server Status	ALT, R, E
ICE Product Group Reports	ALT, R, I

Help Menu

Help Menu	Shortcut
Help Menu	ALT, H
Help Topics	ALT, H, H
What's New	ALT, H, W
TT Remote Help Center	ALT, H, T
About TT User Setup	ALT, H, A

TT User Setup Feature and TT Product Compatibility

Field	Feature	Location	Minimum Version Supported
Force logoff	Force a user logoff	New User/Edit User Main tab	X_TRADER 7.7.6 FIX Adapter 7.8
GTC/GTDate orders allowed	Allow or Prevent Good Till Cancel and Good Till Date orders	New User/Edit User Main tab	X_TRADER 7.12 Algo SE 7.3 Autospeader SE 7.3 Synthetic SE 7.3 FIX Adapter 7.8.1
Trading allowed	Allow or prevent trading, adding, modifying, or deleting orders	New User/Edit User Main tab	X_TRADER 7.8 FIX Adapter 7.6
Credit	Configure user credit limit	New User/Edit User Main tab	X_TRADER 7.8 FIX Adapter 7.6
Currency	Configure credit currency	New User/Edit User Main tab	X_TRADER 7.8 FIX Adapter 7.6
Use P&L risk algorithm	Use the P&L risk algorithm to risk check a user.	New User/Edit User Main tab	X_TRADER 7.11 FIX Adapter 7.7.1
Prevent orders that are more than X ticks from the market price Only enforce a maximum price on buy orders and a minimum price on sell orders	Set how far from the market price a user may enter an order (in ticks)	Both controls are available in two locations: New User/Edit User Main tab Account Group/New or Edit Account Group/New or Edit Product Limit	X_TRADER 7.12 Algo SE 7.3 Autospeader SE 7.3 Synthetic SE 7.3 FIX Adapter 7.8.1

Field	Feature	Location	Minimum Version Supported
Per TT Gateway, prevent more than X orders per second	Prevent more than X orders per second	New User/Edit User Main tab	TT Gateways 7.16.1
Submitting orders with undefined accounts allowed (if applicable)	Allow an order to be submitted with an account number that is not defined in TT User Setup.	New User/Edit User Main tab	TT Gateways 7.16.8
Account changes on fills allowed	Allows traders to update the account number on a fill	New User/Edit User Main tab	X_TRADER 7.12.2 X_RISK 7.12.2
Generate Admin Gateway Logins for all Gateways	Generate Admin Gateway Logins for all Gateways	New User/Edit User Gateway Logins tab	HFS 7.X X_TRADER 7.X TT API 7.2 X_RISK 7.10
Disable "Auto-Calculate-SOD"	Determines whether or not the gateways assigned to this gateway login should automatically generate Start-of-Day records.	New Gateway Login window	TT Gateways 7.16.8
X_TRADER® mode	Set X_TRADER Mode to X_TRADER or X_TRADER Pro	New User/Edit User X_TRADER Properties tab	X_TRADER 7.6.0

Field	Feature	Location	Minimum Version Supported
Avoid orders that cross	Allows the user to toggle the Avoid Orders That Cross option in X_TRADER	New User/Edit User X_TRADER Properties tab	X_TRADER 7.7.0
Quoting/RFQ allowed	Allows the user to toggle the Quoting option in X_TRADER	New User/Edit User X_TRADER Properties tab	X_TRADER 7.8.0
Wholesale trades allowed	Allows the user to toggle the Wholesale option in X_TRADER	New User/Edit User X_TRADER Properties tab	X_TRADER 7.8.0
Staged order creation allowed	Allows the user to create staged orders.	New User/Edit User X_TRADER Properties tab	X_TRADER 7.11 Synthetic SE 7.2
Staged order management allowed	Allows the user to claim and work staged orders	New User/Edit User X_TRADER Properties tab	X_TRADER 7.11 Synthetic SE 7.2
Direct Market Access (DMA) order creation allowed	Allows the user to create DMA orders	New User/Edit User X_TRADER Properties tab	X_TRADER 7.11
Machine gun orders allowed	Allows the user to toggle the Machine Gun option in X_TRADER	New User/Edit User X_TRADER Properties tab	X_TRADER 7.11

Field	Feature	Location	Minimum Version Supported
Eurex - Persist orders	Determines whether Eurex orders sent from X_TRADER are automatically set to persist, or whether the user can configure the Persist orders and Only GTC options in X_TRADER	New User/Edit User X_TRADER Properties tab	X_TRADER 7.X
Restrict user from editing their local Customer Defaults	Forces the user to use only the specified customer defaults.	New User/Edit User X_TRADER Properties tab	X_TRADER 7.6.0
Manual Fill (MF) access allowed	Allows the user to publish manual fills in X_RISK	New User/Edit User X_RISK Properties tab	X_RISK 7.4.2
Start of Day (SOD) access allowed)	Allows the user to publish Start of Day records in X_RISK	New User/Edit User X_RISK Properties tab	X_RISK 7.4.2
Contract Session Prices (CSP) access allowed	Allows the user to publish Contract Session Prices in X_RISK	New User/Edit User X_RISK Properties tab	X_RISK 7.4.2
Instant Messages (IM) access allowed	Allows the user to send instant messages in X_RISK	New User/Edit User X_RISK Properties tab	X_RISK 7.4.2

Field	Feature	Location	Minimum Version Supported
X_STUDY® / FMDS allowed for this user	Enables X_STUDY/ FMDS for the user when X_STUDY/ FMDS is enabled for the system	New User/Edit User X_STUDY/FMDS tab	X_TRADER 7.7.3 X_STUDY 7.3.0
Override system settings with user settings	Overrides the FMDS system settings with the FMDS user settings	New User/Edit User X_STUDY/FMDS tab	X_TRADER 7.7.3 X_STUDY 7.3.0
X_STUDY/FMDS Allowed	Enables X_STUDY/ FMDS for the system	System Settings X_STUDY/FMDS Settings tab	X_TRADER 7.7.3 X_STUDY 7.3.0
Staged order creation allowed	Allows the FIX client to claim and work staged orders	New User/Edit User FIX Adapter tab (client role)	FIX Adapter 7.8 Synthetic SE 7.2
Direct Market Access (DMA) order creation allowed	Allows the FIX client to create DMA orders	New User/Edit User FIX Adapter tab (client role)	FIX Adapter 7.8 Synthetic SE 7.2
Enable debug logging for orders	Adds debug messages generated by the Order Server to the log files	New User/Edit User FIX Adapter tab (client role)	FIX Adapter 7.6 (note: FIX Adapter 7.8 and later ignore this setting)
Enable debug logging for prices	Adds debug messages generated by the Price Server to the log files	New User/Edit User FIX Adapter tab (client role)	FIX Adapter 7.6 (note: FIX Adapter 7.8 and later ignore this setting)

Field	Feature	Location	Minimum Version Supported
Maximum long short	Sets the maximum number of contracts the trader can be long or short for a given product	New/Edit Product Limit window	X_TRADER 7.8
Mandatory Login	Automatically logs a user of a specific gateway login into a given gateway	Assign to available users tab New User/Edit User Gateway Logins tab User's Gateway Login Attributes window	X_TRADER 7.17
Time in force	Indicates the time the order is in force	New/Edit Customer Default window	* These fields do not apply to X_TRADER® versions 7.8 or later
Order type	Indicates the order type and determines whether the order is sent as a Limit or Market order	New/Edit Customer Default window	* These fields do not apply to X_TRADER® versions 7.8 or later
Order restriction	Specifies if the user has an order restriction, such as FOK, IOC, or LSM	New/Edit Customer Default window	* These fields do not apply to X_TRADER® versions 7.8 or later
Open/Close	Indicates the type of position the user can establish with the order	New/Edit Customer Default window	* These fields do not apply to X_TRADER® versions 7.8 or later

Field	Feature	Location	Minimum Version Supported
Enforce max order qty Max order qty	Specifies the maximum quantity allowed per trade for the specified account	New/Edit Customer Default window	* These fields do not apply to X_TRADER® versions 7.8 or later
Account Info	Adds risk checking to accounts.	New/Edit Account window	TT Gateways 7.16.8
Account Group Info	Adds risk checking to account groups	New/Edit Account Group window	TT Gateways 7.16.8
Account and Account Group Info	Adds risk checking to accounts and account groups.	Edit Account and Account Group window	TT Gateways 7.16.8